

TASKalfa 3011i TASKalfa 3511i



Published in Febuary 2017 842RH113 2RHSM063 Rev.3

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACEE PAR UN MODELE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISEES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNEES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Notation of products in the manual

For the purpose of this service manual, products are identified by print speed at A4 and black and white modes.

TASKalfa 3011i : 30 ppm model TASKalfa 3511i : 35 ppm model

Revision history

Revision	Date	Pages	Revised contents	
1	1 26 August 2016 CONTENTS		Chenge: Item and Page number	
		1-2-10	Correction: Representation of procedure	
		1-2-23	Change: Add the connector holder	
		1-3-15, 1-3-17	Correction: Option Description Modify (hard disk added)	
		1-3-33	Correction: Change the description of switch in U031	
		1-3-181	Correction: U671 (DIMM \rightarrow STORAGE)	
		1-5-57, 1-5-58	Correction: Notes when replacing the main PWB	
		1-5-63	Added: Notes when replacing the engine PWB	
		1-5-77 to 79	Added: Detaching and reattaching the SSD	
2	26 December 2016	1-2-54 to 82	Added: Key counter/Key card :(Reference)	
		1-3-14	Correction: Description of Toner Log	
		1-3-88	Added: U222 Description of SSFC	
		1-4-28	Correction: C3300 4.LED PWB→Lamp unit	
		1-5-78	Added: Explanation of SSD exclusive use screw	
		2-3-20, 2-3-21 2-4-29	Correction: YC23(Key counter)/YC24(Key Card) :Reference	
3	27 January 2017	1-3-110	Correction: U253 Initial Setting: DBL(A3/Ledger)	
		1-3-205	Added: U964 Contents (Description of transfer files) Correction: U964 Procedures of Supplement	

This page is intentionally left blank.

КУОСЕКА

Safety precautions

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

- **ADANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.
- **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.
- **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle (\triangle) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



varning.

Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

⊘indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.



Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.



Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions

WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current.
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities.



A CAUTION:

•	Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury	\bigcirc
•	Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock	\bigcirc
•	Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material. This may cause fire.	\bigcirc
•	Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance	\bigcirc
•	Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it.	0
•	Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury.	0
•	Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention.	0
•	Advice customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook.	0

2. Precautions for Maintenance

Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly	
Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures.	\bigcirc
Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits.	\bigcirc
Always use parts having the correct specifications.	\bigcirc
• Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident.	0
• When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully.	0
Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection	ļ
Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock.	0
Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight.	
Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly.	

•	Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections.	\triangle
•	Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts	
•	Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot.	
•	Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures.	0

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement.	\bigcirc
 Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. 	\bigcirc
• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item.	\bigcirc
• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks	
Remove toner completely from electronic components.	
Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged	0
• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws.	0
Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary.	0
 Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below:	0
Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc.	\bigcirc
Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immedi- ately.	0 5

3. Miscellaneous

WARNING

•	Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the	е
	specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas.	

• Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur.

This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1	Specifications	
	1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
	1-1-2 Part Names	1-1-9
	(1) The main unit(Front side)	1-1-9
	(2) The main unit (Rear side)	1-1-11
	(3) Operation Panel	1-1-12
	1-1-3 Machine sectional plan	1-1-13
4 0		
1-2	Installation	
	1-2-1 Installation environment	1-2-1
	1-2-2 Unpacking and setting of the machine	1-2-2
	(1) Installation procedures	1-2-2
	(2) Default setting of the copy mode	1-2-13
	1-2-3 Optional configuration	1-2-14
	1-2-4 Installing the optional equipment	1-2-16
	(1) SD/SDHC memory card	1-2-16
	(2) Hard Disk (HD-12): KDA standard	1-2-17
	(3) Installation of attaching Gigabit Ethernet extension kit	1-2-20
	(4) Wireless LAN interface installation	1-2-20
	(5) Wireless LAN interface (IB-35)	1-2-22
	(6) Document table (DT-730(B))	1-2-24
	(7) Numeric Keypad (NK-7100 / NK-7110)	
	(8) USB keyboard (Except 100V model)	1-2-30
	(9) Coin Vendor installation(100V model only)	1-2-35
	(10) card reader installation	1-2-38
	(11) Handset attaching	1-2-41
	(11-1) When attaching the main unit directly	1_2_41
	(11-1) When all defining the main unit directly	1 2 45
	(11-2) In case installing the document table	1 2 54
	1-2-5 About Optional Applications	1-2-04
	1-2-6 Initializing procedures after installing the FAX system	1-2-99
4.0		
1-3	Maintenance mode	
	1-3-1 Maintenance mode	1-3-1
	(1) Executing the maintenance mode	1-3-1
	(2) Maintenance modes list	1-3-2
	(2-1) Content of each maintenance mode	1-3-8
1-4	Troubleshooting	
	1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection	1_4_1
	(1) Paper misfeed indication	1_4_1
	(2) Paper misfeed detection component	1 4 2
	(2) Faper misleed detection component	1 4 12
	(1) Solf diagnostic function	1-4-12
	(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-4-12
	(2) Jell uldyhushi coues	1-4-12
	(1) No image appears (antiral-u-kite)	1-4-69
	(1) No image appears (entirely white).	1-4-70
	(2) No image appears (entirely black).	1-4-/1
	(3) Image is too light.	1-4-71
	(4) The background is colored.	1-4-72
	(5) White streaks are printed vertically	1-4-72

2RG/2RH

(6) Black streaks are printed vertically.	
(7) Streaks are printed horizontally.	
(8) A part of image is dark or light.	
(9) Spots are printed.	
(10) Image is blurred	
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original	
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original	
(13) Paper is wrinkled.	
(14) Offset occurs.	
(15) Part of image is missing.	
(16) Fusing is loose	1-4-75
(17) Image is out of focus.	
(18) Image center does not align with the original center.	
1-4-4 Electric problems	
1-4-5 Mechanical problems	
1-4-6 Send error code	
(1) Scan to SMB error codes	
(2) Scan to FTP error codes	
(3) Scan to E-mail error codes	
1-4-7 Error codes	
(1) Error code	
(2) Table of general classification	
(2-1) U004XX error code table: Interrupted phase B	
(2-2) U006XX error code table: Problems with the unit	1-4-92
(2-3) LI008XX error code table. Page transmission error	1_4_92
(2-3) U000XX error code table: Page recention error	1 / 02
(2-4) 0009XX error code table: P age reception error	1-4-92
(2-5) U010XX error code table. G5 transmission	
(2-6) UUTIXX error code table: G3 reception	
(2-7) U017XX error code table: V.34 transmission	
(2-8) U018XX error code table: V.34 reception	1-4-97
(2-9) U023XX error code table: Relay command abnormal reception	1-4-97
(2-10) U044XX error code table: Encrypted transmission	1-4-97
1-5 Assembly and disassembly	
1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	
(1) Precautions	1-5-1
(2) Storage and handling of the drum	
(3) Storage of the toner container	
(4) How to tell a genuine Kvocera toner container	
1-5-2 OUTER COVERS	
(1) Detaching and attaching the front cover	1-5-3
(2) Detaching and attaching the rear upper cover	1-5-5
(3) Detaching and attaching the rear lower cover	1-5-5
(4) Detaching and attaching the inner tray	1-5-6
(5) Detaching and attaching the front upper cover	
(6) Detaching and attaching the eject rear cover	
(7) Detaching and refitting the elect rear cover	
1-5-3 Paper feed section	
(1) Detaching and attaching the primary paper feed unit	
(2) Detaching and attaching the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad	
(3) Detaching and attaching the registration cleaner	
(4) Detaching and attaching the MP tray	1-5-16

1-5-4 Developer section		
(1) Detaching and reattacl	ning the developer unit	
1-5-5 Drum section		
(1) Detaching and reattacl	ning the drum unit	
(2) Detaching and attachir	g the charger roller unit	
1-5-6 Transfer/separation section	n	
(1) Detaching and attachir	g the transfer roller unit	
1-5-7 Fuser section	~	
(1) Detaching and attachir	g the fuser unit	
1-5-8 Drive section	~ 	
(1) Detaching and attachir	g the drive unit 1	
(2) Detaching and attachir	g the drive unit 2	
1-5-9 Optical section	•	
(1) Detaching and attachir	ig the Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)	
(2) Detaching and attaching	o the image scanner unit	
(3) Detaching and attaching	a the LED unit	
(4) Detaching and reattach	ning the scanner wires	
(4-1) Detaching the sc	anner wires	
(4-2) Fitting the scann	er wires	1-5-51
1-5-10 PWBs		1-5-54
(1) Detaching and reattach	ning the main PWB	1-5-54
(1-1) Notes when rent	acing the main PWB	1-5-57
(2) Detaching and reattact	and the engine PW/B	1-5-59
(2-1) Notes when real	acing the engine PWB	1-5-63
(3) Detaching and reattach	ping the power source PWB	1 5 64
(4) Detaching and reattach	and the high voltage PW/B	1 5 66
(4) Detaching and reattach	and the operation papel DWR 1	1.5.70
1-5-11 Others		1-5-70 1-5-77
(1) Detaching and reattact	ning the SSD	1-5-77
(2) Detaching and reattach	ning the conveying unit	1-5-80
(3) Direction of installing the	ne principal fan motors	1-5-83
1-6 Firmware		
1-6-1 Firmware update		
2-1 Mechanical Construction		
2-1-1 Paper feed/conveying sec	tion	2-1-1
 Cassette paper feed se 	ection	2-1-1
(2) MP tray paper feed see	ction	
(3) Conveying section		
2-1-2 Drum section		
2-1-3 Developing section		2-1-7
2-1-4 Optical section		2-1-9
(1) Image scanner section		2-1-9
(2) Laser scanner section		2-1-11
2-1-5 Transfer/Separation section	on	
2-1-6 Fuser section		
2-1-7 Eject/Feedshift section		
2-1-8 Duplex conveying section		

2-2	Electrical Parts Layout	
	2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
	(1) PWBs	2-2-1
	(2) Switches and sensors	
	(3) Others	

2-3 PWBs

2-3-1 Main PWB	2-3-1
2-3-2 Engine PWB	2-3-11
2-3-3 Operation panel PWB 1	2-3-27
2-3-4 Power supply PWB	2-3-33

2-4 Appendixes

2-4-1 Appendixes	2-4-1
(1) List of maintenance parts	2-4-1
(2) Maintenance kits	2-4-2
(3) Periodic maintenance procedures	2-4-3
(4) Repetitive defects gauge	2-4-6
(5) Firmware environment commands	2-4-7
(6) System Error (Fxxxx) Outline	2-4-18
(7) Chart of image adjustment procedures	2-4-25
(8) Wiring diagram	2-4-28

Installation Guide

DP-7100 / (Document processor) DP-7110 / (Document processor) DP-7120 / (Document processor) PF-791 / (500 x 2 Paper feeder) PF-810 / (3000-sheet deck) DF-791 / (3000-sheet finisher) DF-7120 / (1000-sheet finisher) AK-740 / (Bridge unit) MT-730 / (Mailbox) PH-7A/C/D / (Punch unit) DT-730(B) / (Document tray) FAX System 12

1-1-1 Specifications

Main unit

Items		Specifications	
		30 ppm model	35 ppm model
Туре		Desktop	
Printing Method		Dry static electric transfer (laser)	
Cassette		52 to 163 g/m ²	
Weight	Multi Pur- pose Tray	Pur-45 to 256 g/m² (Less than A4/Letter), 230 μm(Postal card)Tray52 to 163 g/m² (lager than A4/Letter)	
Cassette		Plain, Thin, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Let- terhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom, (Duplex:Same as Simplex)	
Media type	Multi Pur- pose Tray	Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Thin, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Custom	
Cassette		A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, 21 Legal, Statement-R, Oficio II, Folio, 8	I6×340 mm, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, K, 16K-R, 16K
Paper Size	Multi Pur- pose Tray	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K,ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelop C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom 1 to 4(98 × 148 mm to 297 × 432 mm)	
Printable Area		The point 3±2.5 mm, The back point 3±2.5 mm, left/right less than 4 mm	
Warm-up Power on		18 seconds or less	
Time (23°C.	Low Power	15 seconds or less	
60%RH)	Sleep	15 seconds or less	
Paper	Cassette	550 sheets (64 g/m²) *1 500 sheets (80 g/m²) *1	
Capacity	Multi Pur- pose Tray	100 sheets (A4/Letter or smaller)(80 g 25 sheets (lager size than A4/Letter)(g/m²) 80 g/m²)
Output paper	Inner Tray	250 sheets (80 g/m²)	
tray Job separa- Capacity tor		50 sheets (80 g/m²)	
Light source		White LED	
Scanning method		Flat surface scanning by the CCD image sensor	
Photoconductor		a-Si drum (diameter 30 mm)	
Image Write System		Semiconductor laser system	
Charging system		AC+DC charger roller system	
Developer system		Monocomponent jumping developer system Toner supply system: Automatic replenishing from the toner container	
Transfer system		Transfer roller system	

ltems		Specifications	
		30 ppm model	35 ppm model
Separation system		Small diameter separation and separation needle (Impressing DC voltage)	
Cleaning system		Counter blade system	
Charge erasing system		Exposure by cleaning lamp (LED)	
Fusing system		Heat and pressure fusing with the heat roller and the press roller Heat source: halogen heater Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostat	
Memory		2.0GB	
Large capacity	y storage	SSD 32GB:	SSD 8 GB / Hard Disk 320GB
Inter	Standard	JSB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB) *3 Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T) Hi-Speed USB: 4 (USB Flash memory slot)	
Interface	Option	eKUIO: 2 *2 Fax: 2 *3 Wireless LAN: 1	
	Temperature	10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F	
Operating	Humidity	15 to 80%RH	
Environment	Above the sea level	2,500m/11,482 ft maximum	
	Brightness	1,500 lux maximum	
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)		594 × 696 × 680mm	
Weight		Approx. 58kg (without toner container)	
Space Required (W × D)		31.82" × 19.97" 873 × 696mm (Using	multi purpose tray)
Power source		100V AC,50/60Hz,13.0A 120V AC,60Hz,11.6A 220-240V AC,50/60Hz,6.5A	

*1: *1: Up to upper limit height line in the cassette.

*2: *2: When two optional interface are installed, a fax line can not be installed.

*3: When IB-50 or IB-51 is installed, only one fax line can be installed.

Copy Functions

ltems		Specifications	
		30 ppm model	35 ppm model
	A4/Letter	30 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
	A4R/Letter R	22 sheets/min	26 sheets/min
	A3/Ledger	15 sheets/min	17 sheets/min
Copy Speed	B4/Legal	15 sheets/min	17 sheets/min
	B5	30 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
	B5R	20 sheets/min	24 sheets/min
	A5R	15 sheets/min	17 sheets/min
First Copy Time (The main unit cassette paper feed, A4)		Less than 3.6 seconds (Except the system safety time after the main power switches on)	
Zoom Level		Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments Fixed zoom rate: 400%, 200%, 141%, 122%, 115%, 100%, 86%, 81%, 70%, 50%, 25%	
Continuous Copying		1 to 999 sheets	
Resolution		600 × 600 dpi, 9600 dpi equivalent × 600 dpi	
Supported Original Types		Sheet, Book, 3-dimensional objects (maximum original size: A3/Ledger)	
Original Feed System		Fixed	

Printer Functions

Itoms	Specifications	
nems	30 ppm model	35 ppm model
Printing Speed	Same as Copying Speed.	
First Print Time (The main unit cassette paper feed, A4)	Less than 4.2 seconds (Except the system safety time after the main power switches on)	
Resolution	600×600dpi	
Operating System	Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server 2008/R2, Windows Server 2012/R2?Mac OS 10.5 or later	
Interface	USB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB) Network interface: 1 (1000 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/10 BASE-T (IPv6, IPv4, IPSec), 302.3az sup ported) Optional Interface (Option): 2 (For IB-50/IB-51 mounting) Wireless LAN (Option): 1 (For IB-35 mounting)	
Page Description Language	PRESCRIBE	
Emulations	PCL6 (PCL-XL/PCL-5c), KPDL3 (Pos Open XPS	tScript3 compatible), PDF, XPS,

Scanner Functions

Items	Specifications
Resolution	600 dpi × 600 dpi, 400 dpi × 400 dpi, 200 dpi × 400 dpi, 300 dpi × 300 dpi, 200 dpi × 200 dpi, 200 dpi × 100 dpi
File Format	TIFF, JPEG, XPS, Open XPS, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression/High com- pressive PDF/OCR Text Recognition PDF(Option))
The consecutive originals Reading velocity (A4, 300 dpi, Image quality Text/Photo mode)	1-side: B/W 80 images/min, Color 80 Images/min 2-sided: B/W 160 Images/min, Color 160 Images/min
Interface	Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T)
Network protocol	TCP/IP
Transmission Protocol	SMB, SMTP, FTP, FTP over SSL, TWAIN*2, WIA*3, WSD

*1 When using the document processor (Dual Scan DP) (except TWAIN scanning)

*2 Available OS: Windows XP/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 8.1/Windows 10/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2012 R2 *3 Supported OS: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008//Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 8.1/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2012 R2

Document Processor

Itoms	Specifications		
nems	Automatic 2-Sided		dual scan
Туре	DP-7100	DP-7120	DP-7110
Document feed method Automatic feed			·
Supported Original Types	Sheet originals		
	Maximum: A3/Ledger (297 × 432 mm) (Long-sized: 297 × 1,900 mm)		
Paper Size	Minimum: A6-R/Statement-R (105 × 148 mm)	Minimum: A5-R/Statement-R (140 × 182 mm)	Minimum: A6-R/Statement-R (105 × 148 mm)
Paper Weight	1-sided: 35 to 160 g/m ² 2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m ²	1-sided: 45 to 160 g/m ² 2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m ²	1-sided: 35 to 220 g/m ² 2-sided: 50 to 220 g/m ²
Loading Capacity	140 sheets maximum (50 to 80 g/m²)*1	50 sheets maximum (50 to 80 g/m²)*1	270 sheets maximum (50 to 80 g/m²)*1
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)	593 × 531 × 138.5 mm / 23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"	600 × 502 × 128 mm / 23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"	600 × 513 × 170 mm / 23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"
Weight	Approx. 9 kg	Approx. 7.5 kg	Approx. 14.5 kg

Paper Feeder (500-sheet × 2)

Items	Specifications
Paper Supply system	Feed & reverse roller system (Store Sheets: 550 sheets(64 g/m ²)×2 cassettes / 500 sheets(80g/m ²)× 2 cassettes)
Paper Size	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Oficio II,Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Thick
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)	590 × 589 × 332 mm
Weight	Approx. 20 kg

Items	Specifications
Paper Supply Method	Feed & reverse roller system (Store Sheets: 3,500 sheets(64 g/m²) / 3.000 sheets(80g/m²))
Paper Size	A4, B5, Letter
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Thick
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)	590 × 626.9 × 332 mm
Weight	Approx. 29 kg

Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet × 2)

1,000-Sheet Finisher

Items		Specifications	
Number of Trays		1 tray	
Paper Size (80 g/m2)	Finisher Tray (When no stapling)	A3, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B6-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, Statement-R Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R: 500 sheets A4-R, A4, B5, B6-R, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 1,000 sheets	
Paper thickne	ss	When stapling: 90 g/m ² or less	
Stapling	Number of sheets to limit	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger Legal, Oficio II, 16K-R, 8K	30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheets only (106 to 300 g/ m ²)
		A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheets only (106 to 300 g/ m ²)
	Media type	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom	
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)		548 × 618.5 × 1,050 mm	
Weight		Approx. 30 kg or less	
Machine space measure (W × D)		666 × 618.5 mm (with the tray pulled	out)

3,000-Sheet Finisher

Items		Specifi	cations		
Number of Trays		2 tray			
Paper Size (80 g/m2)	Tray A (Non-Sta- pling)	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, I 16K-R: 1,500 sheets A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 3 A5-R, B6-R, Statement-R: 500 sheets	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R: 1,500 sheets A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 3,000 sheets A5-R, B6-R, Statement-R: 500 sheets		
	Tray B	A3, A4-R, A4. A5-R, A6, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340mm, Ledger, Letter- R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K,ISO B5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Cus- tom (98 × 148 mm to 297 × 432 mm)?200 sheets			
Paper thickness		When stapling: 90 g/m² or less			
	Number of sheets to limit	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340mm, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8K, 16K-R	30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 256 g/m ²)		
Stapling		A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K	70 sheets (52 to 74 g/m ²) 65 sheets (75 to 90 g/m ²) 55 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 256 g/m ²)		
	Media type	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom			
Dimensions Dimension (W × D × H)		607.2 × 668.5 × 951.3 mm			
Weight		Approx. 40 kg or less			
Machine space measure (W × D)		725 × 668.5 mm (with the tray pulled	out)		

Items	Specifications
Utilized possible paper size	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, State- ment-R, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K
Paper thickness	45 to 300 g/m ²
Media type	Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8

Punch Unit (For 1,000-Sheet/3,000-Sheet Finisher option)

Mailbox (3,000-Sheet Finisher option)

Items	Specifications
Number of Trays	7 trays
Paper Size(80 g/m²)	A3, B4, Ledger, Legal: 50 sheets A4-R, A4, A5-R, B5-R, B5, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Letter-R, Letter, State- ment-R, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K
Dimensions (W × D × H)	510 × 400 × 470 mm / 20.08" × 15.75" × 18.51"
Weight	Approx. 10 kg

(The specification is to change for efficiency improvement without notice.)

1-1-2 Part Names

(1) The main unit(Front side)





- Cassette
 Paper Width Guides
 Paper Length Guide
 MP Tray
 MP sub tray
 MP Paper Width Guides
- 7. Inner Tray
- 8. Operation Panel
- 9. USB Memory Slot
- 10. Main Power Switch
- 11. Power switch





- 12. Toner waste box
- 13. Toner waste box (Spare)
- 14. Front Cover
- 15. Right Cover 1
- 16. Right Cover 2
- 17. Transfer roller
- 18. Diverge guide
- 19. Fuser unit

- 20. Toner Container
- 21. Drum unit
- 22. Developer unit
- 23. Toner Container lever
- 24. Developer Stopper
- 25. Developer lever

(2) The main unit(Rear side)



Figure 1-1-3

- 26. DP link connector cover
- 27. Scanner lock cover
- 28. Coin vendor connector
- 29. Cassette heater switch
- 30. Inlet connector
- 31. Option Interface Slot 2

- 32. Option Interface Slot Slot 1
- 33. Network interface Connectors
- 34. USB port
- 35. USB Interface Connector
- 36. SD card slot

2RG/2RH

(3) Operation Panel



Figure 1-1-4

- 1. [Home] key: Displays the Home screen.
- 2. [Numeric Keypad] key: Displays numeric keys on the touch panel.
- 3. Function Key: These keys enable various functions and applications, including copy and scan, to be registered.
- 4. [Job Separator] indicator: Lights when there is paper in the job separator tray.
- 5. [Accessibility Display] key: Switches the touch panel display on the Copy screen and the Send screen to a magnified view.
- 6. [Status/Job Cancel] key: Displays the Status/Job Cancel screen.
- 7. [System Menu/Counter] key: Displays the System Menu screen.
- 8. [Reset] key: Returns settings to their default states.
- 9. [Stop] key: Cancels or pauses the job in progress.
- 10. [Start] key: Starts copying and scanning operations and processing for setting operations.
- 11. [Interrupt] key: Displays the Interrupt Copy screen.
- 12. [Authentication/Logout] key: Authenticates user switching, and exits the operation for the current user (i.e. log out).
- 13. [Energy Saver] key: Puts the machine into Sleep Mode. Recovers from Sleep if in Sleep Mode. Recovers from Sleep if in Sleep Mode.
- 14. [Attention] indicator: Lights or blinks when an error occurs and a job is stopped.
- 15. [Memory] indicator: Blinks while the machine is accessing the hard disk, fax memory or USB memory (general purpose item).
- 16. [Processing] indicator: Blinks while printing or sending/receiving.
- 17. Touch Panel: Displays the icons here and configures machine settings.



1-1-3 Machine sectional plan

Figure 1-1-5

- 1. Cassette 1
- 2. Cassette 1 paper feed section
- 3. Cassette 2
- 4. Cassette 2 paper feed section
- 5. Multi Purpose paper feed section
- 6. Conveying section
- 7. Transfer/ Separate section
- 8. Charger roller unit
- 9. Drum unit
- 10. Developer unit

- 11. Toner Container
- 12. Fuser unit
- 13. Eject section
- 14. Dual conveying section
- 15. Image Scanner Unit (ISU)
- 16. Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)

1-2-1 Installation environment

- 1. Temperature: 50 to 90.5°F (10 to 32.5 °C)
- 2. Humidity: 15 to 80%RH
- 3. Usable power source: 100V AC, 13.0A

120V AC, 11.6A

220-240V AC, 6.3A

- 4. Frequency fluctuation: 50Hz+/-2% or 60Hz+/-2%
- 5. Installation location

Avoid the place exposed direct sunlight and the strong lightning. Don't expose the photoreceptor to the direct sunlight and the strong lightning in case of the paper jam.

Avoid the locations where high temperature and humidity, low temperature and humidity and the surrounding temperature of the machine rapidly change or the locations where cool wind and hot wind expose directly.

Avoid the locations with dust and much vibration.

When setting on the stand, use the stand which can sufficiently endure in the machine weight. Set the horizontal location. (Horizontal degree: Left and right front and rear are 5mm or less, Twisting is 3mm or less.)

Avoid the locations where the substances which can be transformed the machine and the photoreceptor (the gas and the chlorine-based organic solvents that the vapor which the mercury, acid and alkali are, the inorganic gas, NOx and SOx) are drifting.

Select the good ventilated location.

6. Set the space which needed for the operation and the maintenance of the machine as following.



Figure 1-2-1 Setting dimensions

1-2-2 Unpacking and setting of the machine

(1) Installation procedures





Note: Make sure to install the main unit on a horizontal locations.

Removal of the fixed tape and the spacer.

- 1. Peel off two tapes and remove the protective PAD.
- 2. Peel off two tapes and remove the paper.
- 3. Peel off four tapes and two protective sheets of the main unit.



Figure 1-2-3

- 4. Peel off two tapes and remove the protective operation cover.
- 5. Peel off the protective panel sheet.
- 6. Peel off the tape of the scanner lock section.



Figure 1-2-4

Paper Feeder installment

- 1. In case of attaching the operational paper feed, install it.
 - * : Refer the setting procedure of paper feed if you want to see the detail.





Loading Paper

- 1. Pull out the paper storage bag.
- 2. Hold the switch knob of the wide size, adjust the paper width guide on the paper width.



Figure 1-2-6

3. Adjust the paper length guide on the paper length.





- 4. Set the paper in the cassette
- 5. Insert the cassette size plate.
- 6. Push in quietly the cassette.



Figure 1-2-8

Toner Container installment

- 1.Open the front cover.
- 2. Turn the toner container vertically, beat the upper section more than five times. Reverse high and low, beat the upper section more than five times.





3. Turn the toner container vertically, shake the upper section more than five times. Reverse high and low, shake the upper section more than five times.



Figure 1-2-10

4. Shake the toner container in sideways five or six times.





- 5. Push in the toner container along the guide of the main unit.
 - * Push in the back till being locked.







The other optional equipment

1. In case of installing the other optional equipment (finisher, fax kit, etc), install respectively.


Figure 1-2-15

The execution of toner installment

1. Turn the main power switch ON. The toner install is started.

* It takes about ten minutes till the state which is to be able to copy in the initial power ON. 2. If the toner installation completes, the drive stops.

The execution of Maintenance mode U952

- 1. Input "10871087" using the numeric keys and set the maintenance mode.
- 2. Input "952" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 3. Select the [Execute] function.
- 4. Select [Full] and press the [Start] key.
 - * : When executing this simulation, the execution history is recorded.
 - * : Include the following clause in the maintenance mode U952 [SETUP]. If not executing the U952, set it in the following procedures.

[Cassette heater control setting(the execution of the maintenance mode U327)]

- 1. Input "10871087" using the numeric keys and set the maintenance mode.
- 2. Input "327" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 3. Select "On".
- 4. Press the [Start] key and determine the setting.
- 5. Press the [Stop] key.

[Setting the machine delivery date (Execution of the maintenance mode U278)]

- 1. Input "278" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2. Select "Today".
- 3. Press the [Start] key and set the machine delivery date.
- 4. Press the [Stop] key.

[Output the status report (Execution of the maintenance mode U000)]

- 1. Input "000" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2. Select [Maintenance], press the [Start] key and output the status report.
- 3. Press the [Stop] key.

[Clearing the counts (Execution of the maintenance mode U927)]

- 1. Input "927" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2. Select the [Execute] function.
- 3. Press the [Start] key and clear the counts.
- 4. Press the [Stop] key.

Release of the maintenance mode

1.Input "001" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

Output each kind of setting report for user,

1.Select "report output" from the system menu and can output each setting report of the user.

The execution of the test copy.

1.Set the originals and test a copy.

Install completion of the main unit.

(2) Default setting of the copy mode.

The machine in case of the factory shipment is set as following.

The maintenance mode No.	Contents	Default setting in the factory shipping
U250	The setting or the clear of the maintenance counts preset value	600000 0 300000 300000 300000 300000
U251	The setting or the clear of the maintenance counts value	0/0/0/0/0/0
U252	Destination setting	Japan Metric
U253	The setting of the double or the single counts	The single counts
U260	Switch of the counts of the paper feeding or the paper ejection	Eject
U265	Destination setting	—
U278	The setting of the delivery date	_
U285	The setting of the service status page	On
U326	The setting of the black streaks clear display	On/8
U327	Cassette heater control setting	Off
U332	The size coefficient setting Rate Mode Level 1 Level 2	1.0 0 1.0 2.5
U340	The application mode setting Aji Memory Adi Max Job	0 10
U341	The setting of the exclusive printer cassette tray.	Off/Off/Off/Off
U343	The dual prior mode setting	Off
U345	Display setting of the close inspection	0
U346	The sleep operation setting	On

1-2-3 Optional configuration



*: In case of attaching the next option, it needs to attach the metal fitting of the fall prevention : PF-791, PF-810



1-2-4 Installing the optional equipment

(1) SD/SDHC memory card

Reading the SD/SDHC memory Card

The contents of the SD/SDHC memory card are read into the main unit after turning the power on.

SD/SDHC memory card installation

- 1. Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
- *: Before inserting the memory card, make sure that the power switch is turned off.
- 2. Remove the screw (M3x8).
- 3. Release the hook in the direction of the arrow and then remove the SD card cover.



Figure 1-2-16

4. Install an SD/SDHC memory card in the memory card slot.



Figure 1-2-17

5. Reattach the covers.

Formatting an SD/SDHC Memory Card

To use an unused SD/SDHC card, you must first format it with the main unit.

- * : Formatting will delete all existing data on the SD card.
 - If you have installed an application, do not format the SD card to avoid the removal of the application in the SD card.

Format it with a PC or Prescribe command in advance.

(2) Hard Disk (HD-12): KDA standard

Installation of the hard disk requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Hard Disk (HD-12)	1	1503RS0UN0 (Product)

Procedures

- 1. Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
- 2. Detach three screws.
- 3. Open the upper section of the rear upper cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.



IMPORTANT

Check two gaskets are affixed to the hard disk mounting plate before installing it.



Figure 1-2-19

- 4. Connect two connectors of the cables to the hard disk.
- 5. Latch two hooks on the aperture and attach the hard disk with four screws (M3x8).



Figure 1-2-20

- 6. Connect two connectors of the hard disk to two connectors of the main PWB.
- 7. Fix the wire with three wire saddles.



Figure 1-2-21

- 8. Reattach the parts in the original position.
 - * : When installing a new HDD, it is automatically formatted at the first start-up.
 - * : The memory LED blinks when forming a preview image in an HDD after restart if data exists in the FAX box.

Formatting a hard disk

- 1. Input "10871087" using the numeric keys to enter the maintenance mode.
- 2. Input "024" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 3. Select [Format].
- 4. Select [Full].
- 5. Select [Execute].
- 6. Press the [Start] key to initialize.
- 7. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.
 - * : When an optional HDD is inserted into the main unit for the first time, it must be formatted before use. Formatting will delete all existing data on the HDD.

(3) Installation of attaching Gigabit Ethernet extension kit

Parts	Number	Parts number
Gigabit Ethernet extension kit (IB-50)	1	1505JV0UN0 (Product)

Giga Ethernet extention kit installation requires the following parts.

(4) Wireless LAN interface installation

Wireless LAN interface installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Wireless LAN interface kit (IB-51)	1	1505J50UN0 (Product)

<Procedures>

- After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2. Detach two pins, remove the OPT2 slot cover.



Figure 1-2-22

- 3. Insert the kit PWB along the OPT2 gulf, fix to two pins which detached in step 2.
- * : Do not touch directly to the terminal of the kit PWB.

In case of inserting the kit PWB, hold the top and bottom or the protuberance of the PWB.



Figure 1-2-23

4. Insert the modular cord into the line terminal.



Figure 1-2-24

(5) Wireless LAN interface (IB-35)

Wireless LAN interface installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Wireless LAN interface kit (IB-35)	1	1503RR0UN0 (Product)

Bundled parts of Wireless LAN interface

PWB unit	1	рс
Screw (M3x8)	1	рс

Procedures

- 1. Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
- 2. Detach three screws.
- 3. Open the upper section of the rear upper cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.



4. Slide the controller box cover in sideways, remove it.



- 5. Insert the connector of WiFi PWB into the controller box.
- 6. Connect the WiFi PWB connector into the main PWB connector.
 - * : Insert the connector while aligning the white part of the main PWB to the outer shape of the connector holder



Figure 1-2-27

- 7. Attach the WiFi PWB by using one screw.
- 8. Reattach the removed parts in the original position.



(6) Document table (DT-730(B))

Document table installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Document table (DT-730(B))	1	1902LC0UN2 (Product)

Bundled parts of Document table

Tray stay	1 pc
Tray mounting plate	1 рс
Tray cover	1 рс
Tray lower cover	1 рс
Tray fixing plate	1 рс
Sheet	2 рс
Pin	2 pc
Nut M4 *1	2 рс
Screw (M4x8 screw with the binding head)	7 рс
Screw (M4x14 screw with the binding head)	2 рс



*1: Not used in this model.

Procedures

- 1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
- 2. Attach the tray stay by using two screws.





3. Insert the mounting plate into the tray stay by using two screws.

Figure 1-2-30

4. Attach the tray cover to the tray stay by using four screws.



- 5. Attach the tray lower cover.
- 6. Fix the tray lower cover by using two pins.



Figure 1-2-32

7. Affix the two sheets on the document table.



Figure 1-2-33

(7) Numeric Keypad (NK-7100 / NK-7110)

Numeric Keypad installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Numeric Keypad (NK-7100) *1	1	1903RT0UN0 (Product)
Numeric Keypad (NK-7110) *2	1	1903RT0US0 (Product)

*1: Except KDA, *2: KDA only

Bundled parts of Numeric Keypad	
Numeric Keypad	1 pc
Numeric Keypad cover	1 pc
Screw (M3x8)	2 рс
Label	1 pc
*:NK-7100 only	

Procedures

- 1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
- 2. Remove one screw from the operation unit.
- 3. Release two hooks, and then remove the operation unit lid in the direction of the arrow.





4. Connect the connector of the numeric keypad to the connector of the operation unit.



5. Latch two hooks on the cut-out of the operation unit, and then attach the numeric keypad by using two screws.



6. Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow and latch two hooks, and attach by using one screw which removed in step 2.



7. Affix the label on the numeric keypad. (Except 120v model)



(8) USB keyboard (Except 100V model)

Bundled parts of Keyboard holder 10

Upper keyboard mounting bracket1 pc
Lower keyboard mounting bracket1 pc
Upper keyboard cover1 pc
Lower keyboard cover1 pc
Upper lid1 pc
Lower lid1 pc
Hook-and-loop fastener2 pairs
Binding band1 pc
Screws (M3x8 S-tite) ^{?1} 6 pcs
Screws (M3x8 S-tite Black)2 pcs
Screws (M3x8 P-tite)2 pcs
Screws (M4x8 S-tite) ^{?2} 4 pcs
Screws (M4x8 S-tite)2 pcs
*1: 4 pc is used for this model.
*2: Not used in this model.



Procedures

- 1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
- 2. Attach the upper keyboard mounting bracket onto the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using the four screws.
 - * : Align the location of the mark A and attach.



Figure 1-2-39

- 3. Raise the operation panel.
- 4. Detach the screw and remove the operation panel lower cover.



Figure 1-2-40

5. Twist in front of the A section of the card reader cover, remove to pull in the left direction.



Figure 1-2-41

6. Remove one screw, slide the keyboard cover in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



Figure 1-2-42

- 7. Latch two hooks of the lower keyboard mounting on two apertures.
- 8. Attach the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws A(M4x8).
- 9. Fix the arms of the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws B(M4x14).



Figure 1-2-43

10. Attach to latch two hooks of lower cover B in the aperture of the lower keyboard mounting bracket. * : Attach it while the hooks come to the punch mark B.



11. Insert two protrusions of the lower cover C, two hooks A and three hooks B into the cut-out of the lower cover B, the aperture and the protrusion of the upper keyboard mounting bracket.



Figure 1-2-45

12. Attach the lower cover C on the keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws.



13. Attach to latch the hook of the lower cover A in the hole of the keyboard mounting bracket by using one svrew.



* : Attach it while the hooks come to the punch mark B.

14. Insert the upper keyboard cover into the upper keyboard mounting plate and attach it.



Figure 1-2-48

- 15. Put two hooks and the protrusion together and attach the upper cover to the lower keyboard mounting bracket.
- 16. Fix the upper cover to the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using the one screw.



17. Affix a pair of two hook-and-loop fasteners to the concave of the upper keyboard cover.



- 18. Place the keyboard on the hook-and-loop fastener and press it to fix.
- 19. Connect the USB cable with the USB connector on the main unit.



20. Reattach the removed card reader cover and the below operation panel cover in the original position.

(9) Coin Vendor installation(100V model only)

Coin vendor installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Coin Vendor (CV-1/ACV-1)	1	- (Product)

Bundled parts of Coin Vendor	
Coin Vendor	

1 рс
1 рс
1 рс
4 pcs
1рс

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the upper section of the rear top cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.



- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the lower section of the rear top cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.



5. Detach two screws and remove the concealing lid.



Figure 1-2-54

- 6. Pass the vendor cable through the aperture of IF mounting.
- 7. Fix the vendor cable by using two screws which removed in step 5.



Figure 1-2-55

- 8. Attach the ground terminal of the vendor cable to the IF mounting by using one screw (M4×8).
- 9. Connect the vendor cable connector to the main unit signal line connector.



Figure 1-2-56

- 10. Attach the rear cover by using seven screws.
- 11. Connect the signal wire of the coin vendor to the connector of the vendor wire.
- 12. Turn the power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
- 13. Execute maintenance mode U206 and set "Coin vendor attachment". Execute continuously each detail setting. (See page1-3-84)
- 14. Release the maintenance mode



(10) card reader installation

ID card reader installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Card label	1	302ND3423_
		(Bundled main unit)

<Procedures>

- After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2. Detach the screw (b) and remove the operation panel lower cover.





Figure 1-2-59

0

- 4. Insert the card reader into the card reader holder.
- 5. Wind the extra USB cable in the winding portion.
- 6. Connect the winding portion.
- ?



Figure 1-2-60

7. Pull the card reader cover (a) in the Card reader cover right side and attach it. 8. Affix the card label (b). 9. Reattach the operation panel lower cover in the original position. Card label 0000 Ø 0 0



Activating Card Authentication

Note

Need the License Key in the introduction procedure. If access the designated website of your dealer or service representative, and register the "Machine No." indicated on your machine and the "Product ID" indicated on the License Certificate ,the License Key will be issued.

- 1. Turn the power switch off.
- 2. Press th system menu key, and press the "System Key".

If user login administration is invalidity, the user authentication screen is displayed.

- Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login]. Login with administrator privileges here.
- 3. Press "Next to" of "Optional function".
- 4. Select "CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B)" and press "Start-up".
- The screen which enters the license key is displayed.
 Enter the license key by using the numeric keyboard and press "Regular using".
- 6. Check the product name "CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B)" and press "Yes".
- 7. In case of using SSFC card, execute the maintenance mode U222 and set "SSFC".
- * : If enter the sleep mode of the power saving priority, IC card does not recognize. When you want to be functioned the reader during the sleep, refer the instruction for use, set the sleep level to sleep terms.
- * : If the optional Network Interface Kit is installed, the setting does not need.

(11) Handset attaching

(11-1) When attaching the main unit directly

Handset installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Handset	1	1909AG9JP0 (Product)

Bundled parts of handset

Handset	1 pc
Handset holder	1 рс
Handset mounting plate	1pc
Protection cover	1pc
Pin 2 pcs	
Telephone wire	1 pc
Modular cord	1 рс
Nut M4	2pcs

<Procedures>

- After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2. Attach the handset mounting bracket to the right top of the main unit by using two pins.
- * : Use the lower screw holes of the handset mounting bracket.





Figure 1-2-62

- 3. Connect the connector of the telephone wire to the handset holder.
- 4. While stretch the telephone wire, insert it into the cable guide.







5. Put two pins into the catches at the backside of the handset holder,slide it toward you and fix it.

6. Attach the protection cover to the handset mounting plate.



- 7. Connect the telephone wire to the handset.
 - * : Insert the telephone wire into between the handset holder and main unit.

Figure 1-2-66

8. Connect the modular code to the connector of the main unit left side .





9. Connect the modular cord to the another handset holder.



Figure 1-2-68

(11-2) In case installing the document table

Handset installation requires the following parts.

Parts	Number	Parts number
Handset	1	1909AG9JP0 (Product)
Document table	1	1902LC0UN1 (Product)

Bundled parts of handset

Handset	1 рс
Handset holder	1 рс
Handset mounting plate	1рс
Protection cover	1рс
Pin	2 pcs
Telephone wire	1 рс
Modular cord	1 рс
Nut M4	2pcs



Bundled parts of Document table

1 рс
1рс
1 рс
1 рс
1 рс
2pcs
1 рс
2pcs
2 pcs
7pcs
2 pcs
<Procedures>

- After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2. Attach the tray stay to the scanner right cover by using two screws (M4×14).



Figure 1-2-69

 Insert the tray mounting plate into the tray stay and attach by using two screws (M4×8).



Figure 1-2-70

4. Attach the tray cover to the tray stay with four screws (M4×8).



- 5. Remove two nuts and two pins from the handset mounting plate.
- 6. Attach two removed nuts and two pins to the mark A location of the tray mount-ing plate.

7. Connect the modular code to the connector of the main unit left side .





8. Connect the modular cord to the another handset holder.





9. Put two pins into the catches at the backside of the handset holder,slide it toward you and fix it.



Figure 1-2-76

10. Cut the separator cover of the tray lower cover by using the nipper, etc.



- 11. Attach the tray lower cover.
- 12. Fix the tray lower cover by using two pins.

Figure 1-2-77

13. Affix the sheet on the left side of document table.



14. Connect the telephone wire to the handset holder.



1-2-5 Installing the key counter (Reference)

(1) Installing directly on the device



Key counter installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter	1	3025418011
Key counter set	1	302A369709
Key counter wire	1	302NL46320
Wire saddle B	1	7YZM610008++H01
Wire saddle C	1	7YZM610009++H01

Supplied parts of key counter set (302A369709):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter socket assembly	1	3029236241
Key counter cover retainer	1	302GR03010
Key counter retainer	1	302GR03020
Key counter cover	1	3066060011
Key counter mount	1	3066060041
Edging	2▲	7YZM210006++H01
Band	1*	M21AH010
M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw	1*	5MBTPB3008PW++ R
M4 x 10 tap-tight P screw	2*	5MBTPB4010PW++ R
M4 x 10 tap-tight S screw	2	5MBTPB4010TW++ R
M3 x 6 bronze flat-head screw	2	7BB003306H
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	2*	7BB100420H
M3 nut	1	7BC1003055++H01

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
M3 x 8 bronze binding screw	1*	B1B03080
M4 x 30 tap-tight S screw	1*	B1B54300
M4 x 6 chrome TP screw	5	B4A04060
M4 x 10 chrome TP screw	2	B4A04100

* : Not used in this model.

▲: One piece is used in this model.

Procedure

- 1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
- 2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.

Note: Take out the wire from the central portion of the key counter retainer, as shown in a figure.

- 3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
- 4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.



Figure 1-2-80

- 5. Detach three screws.
- 6. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.





- 7. Remove two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.
- 8. Remove the right upper cover.



Figure 1-2-82

9. Cut out the aperture plate (right side) on the right upper cover using nippers.



10. Detach two screws and remove the scanner rear cover.





11. Attaches the wire saddle B and the wire saddle C to right upper section of the machine and then release two hooks of the thir. 12. Attach the edging to the aperture part. Wire saddle C Edging Wire saddle B Figure 1-2-85 Wire saddle C 13. Pass the key counter electrical wires through the wire saddle B and the wire saddle C and then pull out from the Key counter electrical wires aperture part. Aperture Wire saddle B Connector

Figure 1-2-86

- 14. Pass the key counter wires through the edging.
- 15. Pass the key counter wires through the wire saddle and then connect the connector of the key counter wires to the connector of the engine PWB.
- 16. Fit the scanner rear cover using two screws.
- 17. Fit the right upper cover.Note: Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture (right side) in the right upper cover.Note: Be careful not to put a key counter electric wire with the upper right cover.
- 18. Fit the scanner right cover using two screws.





- 19. Insert the projection of the key counter cover retainer in the aperture of the right upper cover.
- 20. Fit the key counter cover retainer using the two M4 x 10 screws.



Figure 1-2-88

- 21. Connect the key counter signal cable to the key counter electrical wires.
- 22. Fit the key counter cover to the machine using the M4 x 6 screw.
- 23. Fit the rear cover using seven screws.
- 24. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.
- 25. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
- 26. Run maintenance item U204 and select [Key-Counter] (see page P.1-3-80).
- 27. Exit the maintenance mode.
- 28. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
- 29. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.



Figure 1-2-89

(2) Mounting on the document table



Key counter installation requires the following parts

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter	1	3025418011
Key counter set	1	302A369709
Key counter wire	1	302MV46090
Document table	1	1902LC0UN2(option)
Wire saddle A	8	7YZM610010++H01
Wire saddle B	1	7YZM610008++H01
Wire saddle C	1	7YZM610009++H01

Supplied parts of key counter set (302A369709):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter socket assembly	1	3029236241
Key counter cover retainer	1	302GR03010
Key counter retainer	1	302GR03020
Key counter cover	1	3066060011
Key counter mount	1	3066060041
Edging	2▲	7YZM210006++H01
Band	1*	M21AH010
M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw	1*	5MBTPB3008PW++R
M4 x 10 tap-tight P screw	2*	5MBTPB4010PW++R
M4 x 10 tap-tight S screw	2*	5MBTPB4010TW++R
M3 x 6 bronze flat-head screw	2	7BB003306H
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB100420H
M3 nut	1	7BC1003055++H01
M3 x 8 bronze binding screw	1*	B1B03080
M4 x 30 tap-tight S screw	1*	B1B54300
M4 x 6 chrome TP screw	5	B4A04060

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
M4 x 10 chrome TP screw	2*	B4A04100

Supplied parts of document table (1902LC0UN2)

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Tray stay	1	-
Tray mount	1	-
Tray cover	1	302LC04601
Tray lower cover	1	302LC04710
Tray retainer	1*	-
Sheet	2▲	302LC04660
Pin	2	303NS24410
M4 nut	2*	3CY06030
M4 x 8 screw	7▼	7BB180408H
M4 x 10 screw	2	7BB607410H
M4 x 14 screw	2*	7BB607414H

* : Not used in this model.

▲: One piece is used in this model.

▼: Six pieces are used in this model.

Procedure

- 1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
- Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
 Note: Take out the wire from the central portion of the key counter retainer, as shown in a figure.
- 3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
- 4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.



Figure 1-2-90

- 5. Detach three screws.
- 6. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-2-91

- 7. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU right cover.
- 8. Remove the right upper cover.



Figure 1-2-92

9. Cut out four ribs of the aperture plate Ribs (left side) on the right upper cover using nippers. Note: Cut off the rib (lower part) Aperture certainly so that a projection does not remain. Rib (lower part) Right upper cover Figure 1-2-93 Screw 10. Detach two screws and remove the scanner rear cover. Scanner rear cover Screw Figure 1-2-94

11. Attaches the wire saddle B and the wire saddle C to right upper section of the machine and then release two hooks of the thir.
12. Attach the edging to the aperture part. Wire saddle C Wire



Figure 1-2-95

13. Pass the key counter electrical wires through the wire saddle B and the wire saddle C and then pull out from the aperture part.
14. Pass the key counter wire through the edging.
Key counter electrical wires
Aperture
Wire saddle C
Wire saddle B
Wire saddle B
Wire saddle B



- 15. Pass the key counter wires through the edging.
- 16. Pass the key counter wires through the wire saddle and then connect the connector of the key counter wires to the connector of the engine PWB.
- 17. Fit the scanner rear cover using two screws.
- 18. Fit the right upper cover.Note: Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture (right side) in the right upper cover.Note: Be careful not to put a key counter electric wire with the upper right cover.
- 19. Fit the scanner right cover using two screws.





20. Fit the tray stay to the scanner right cover using two screws.



Figure 1-2-98

21. Snap in the tray mount to the tray stay and fix using two screws.



Figure 1-2-99

- 22. Cut out the aperture plate on the tray cover using nippers.
- 23. Fit the tray cover to the tray stay using four screws.



Figure 1-2-100

24. Fit the key counter cover retainer using two screws.



Figure 1-2-101

- 25. Pass the key counter signal cable through the aperture in the document table.
- 26. Fit the key counter cover to the document table using the screw.
- 27. Connect the key counter signal cable to the key counter wire.



Figure 1-2-102

28. Fit the tray lower cover.Note: Install the key counter signal cable and key counter wire so that they are held behind the tray lower cover.



Figure 1-2-103

29. Secure the tray lower cover with two pins.



Figure 1-2-104

- 30. Adhere the sheet onto right side of the document table.
- 31. Fit the rear cover using seven screws.
- 32. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.
- 33. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
- 34. Run maintenance item U204 and select [Key-Counter] (see page P.1-3-80).
- 35. Exit the maintenance mode.
- 36. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
- 37. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.



Figure 1-2-105

1-2-6 Installing the key card MK-2 (Reference)

Key card installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key card MK-2	1	8J272002(option)
MK-2 mount	1	Supplied with MK-2
M4 x 16 screw	2*	
Document table	1	1902LC0UN2(option)
Bushing	1	M1203490
Mount	1	78660130
M3×8 tap-tight p screw TP	2	7BB202308H
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB100420H

* : Not used in this model.

Supplied parts of document tablet (1902H70UN2):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Tray stay	1	-
Tray mount	1	-
Tray cover	1	302LC04601
Tray lower cover	1	302LC04710
Tray retainer	1*	-
Sheet	2▲	302LC04660
Pin	2	303NS24410
M4 nut	2*	3CY06030
M4 x 8 screw	7▼	7BB180408H
M4 x 10 screw	2	7BB607410H
M4 x 14 screw	2?	7BB607414H

* : Not used in this model.

 \blacktriangle : One piece is used in this model.

▼: Six pieces is used in this model.

Procedure

- 1. Remove three screws.
- 2. Pull the rear upper cover upwards and then release three hooks.
- 3. Remove the rear upper cover.
- 4. Cut the aperture part (left side) of the rear upper cover using nippers etc.



Figure 1-2-106

- 5. Detach four screws.
- 6. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-2-107

- 7. Remove the cassette.
- 8. Open the front cover.
- 9. Remove six screws.
- 10. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 11. Remove the left lower cover.





- Controller box cover
 - Figure 1-2-109

12. Slide the controller box cover in sideway, and remove it.

- 13. Remove seven connectors and release two wire saddles.
- 14. Detach six screws and then remove the controller box.



Figure 1-2-110

- 15. Pass the key card wires through the bandage lid, bushing and the aperture parts of the rear cover.
- 16. Connect the connector of the key card wires to the engine PWB.



Figure 1-2-111

- 17. Pass the key card wires through the wire saddles.
- 18. Fix the grounding terminals using the screw.



Figure 1-2-112

- 19. Push the rear upper cover downwards and then hook three hooks.
- 20. Fit the rear upper cover using three screws.
 - * : Pull out the slack electric wires inside a machine.
- 21. Adjust the position of the bushing that is passed key card wires through and then fix the bandage lid using two screws.



Figure 1-2-113

Scanner right cover Tray stay Tray stay M4×10 screw

Figure 1-2-114

22. Fit the tray stay to the scanner right cover using two M4 ×10 screws.

23. Snap in the tray mount to the tray stay and fix using two M4 x 8 screws.



Figure 1-2-115

24. Fit the tray cover to the tray stay using four M4 x 8 screws.





25. Remove the four screws securing the MK-2 cover; attach the MK-2 mount to the MK-2, and secure using the four screws.





- 26. Fit the MK-2 to the document table using two M4 x 20 tap-tight S screws.
 - *: Secure the screws to the location with mark "B".



Figure 1-2-118

- 27. Fit the tray lower cover.
- 28. Secure the tray lower cover with two pins.



Figure 1-2-119
- 29. Adhere the sheet onto right side of the document table.
- 30. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
- 31. Run maintenance item U204 and select [Key-Card] (see page **1-3-80**).
- 32. Exit the maintenance mode.



Figure 1-2-120

1-2-7 About Optional Applications

application		
Data Security Kit	Internet FAX kit	
Card Authentication Kit*1	Emulation upgrade kit	
ThinPrint Option*1		

*1: This can be used on a trial basis for a limited time.

- * : Restrictions such as the number of times the application can be used during the trial period differ depending on the application.
- * : If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.

Starting Use of an Application

Use the procedure below to start using an application.

1. Select [System Menu/Counter] key > [System/Network] > [Optional Function].

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. Login with administrator privileges.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	30 ppm model	35 ppm model	
Login User Name	3,000	3,500	
Login Password	3,000	3,500	

- 2. Select the desired application to start use and select [Activate].
 - * : You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [___] or [Details].

Item
Function
License
Trial Counts
Date of Trial
Status

3. Select [Official] and enter a license key.

Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 4.

To use the application as a trial, select [Trial] without entering the license key.

4. Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.

NOTE

If you started the Security Kit or Thin Print option and entered the license key, turn the power OFF/ON. Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.

1-2-8 Initializing procedures after installing the FAX system

- 1. Connect the power plug of the main unit to the outlet and turn the power on.
- 2. Input "10871087" using the numeric keys to enter the maintenance mode.
- 3. Input "600" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 4. Select [Country Code] and enter a destination code using the numeric keys.
- * : Refer to the following destination code list.
- 5. Select [Execute].
- 6. Press the [Start] key to start data initialization.
 - * : Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.

Destination code list

Destina- tion code	Destination	Destina- tion code	Destination	
000	Japan	253	CTR21 (European nations)	
007	Argentina	↑	Italy	
009	Australia	↑	Germany	
022	Brazil	↑	Spain	
038	China	↑	U.K.	
080	Hong Kong	↑	Netherlands	
084	Indonesia	↑	Sweden	
088	Israel	↑	France	
097	Korea	↑	Austria	
181	U.S.A. ↑		Switzerland	
250	Russia	↑	Belgium	
108	Malaysia	↑	Denmark	
115	Mexico ↑ Finland		Finland	
126	New Zealand ↑ Portugal		Portugal	
136	B Peru ↑ Irelar		Ireland	
137	Philippines	↑	Norway	
152	Middle East	254 Taiwan		
156	Singapore			
159	South Africa			
169	Thailand			

7. After completing installation, execute communication test to check if FAX normally operates.

IMPORTANT

Note the following points when installing the FAX system in the line via ISDN or PBX.

Check if the line to connect supports the V.34 (Super G3) FAX communication.

Especially, when communicating between extensions in PBX (private line via TDM), only 14400bps or 9600bps of FAX communication speed is guaranteed and communication errors or TX/RX image failure may occur at V.34 communication in such a line.

Corrective Measures

Set the following maintenance mode if the communication speed guaranteed on the line is 14400bps. U633 [Enables or disables the V.34 communication]: Off (See page 1-3-169) U630 [Setting TX speed and RX speed] (See page1-3-164) This page is intentionally left blank.

2RG/2RH

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing the maintenance mode



(2) Maintenance modes list

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline		
General	U000	Output Maintenance Report	Printing the reports and exporting them to a USB memory		
	U001	:Exit Maintenance Mode	Exiting from the maintenance mode		
	U002	Set Factory Default	Initializing to the factory-default setting		
	U003	Set Telephone Number for Service Call	Sets the telephone number of the service per- son.		
	U004	Machine Number	Display of the machine serial number and set- ting		
	U010	Set Maintenance Mode ID	Setting the maintenance mode ID		
	U018	Check Firmware Checksum	Check the firmware falsification.		
	U019	Firmware Version	Displays the firmware version of the PWB		
Initializa-	U021	Initialize Memory	Initializing the backup RAM		
tion	U024	Format HDD	Formats/configures the HDD		
	U025	Firmware update (S)	Updates the firmware		
	U026	Pulling Backup Data	Retrieve the backup data		
Drive	U030	Motor operation check	Drive the drive motor		
Paper	U031	Check the conveying switch	Check the conveying switch On/Off		
Convey-	U032	Clutch operation check	Check the paper conveying clutch operation		
ing Cooling	U033	Solenoid operation check	Drive the paper conveying and toner supply solenoids		
	U034	Paper timing data adjustment	Adjusting the leading edge timing and the center line		
	U035	Folio size setting	Sets the Folio paper length and width.		
	U037	Fan motor operation check	Drive each fan motor.		
	U051	Registration paper loop amount adjustment	Adjusts the paper loop amount between the rollers		
	U053	Adjusting the motor speed	Sets each motor's speed correction		
Optical	U061	Lamp lighting check	Turns the exposure lamp on		
	U063	Shading position adjustment	Changes the scanner shading position		
	U065	Adjusting the magnification for table scanning	Adjusting the magnification for table scanning		
	U066	Adjusting the table scanning timing	Adjusting the leading edge timing for table scan- ning		
	U067	Adjusting the table scanning center line	Adjusting the center line for table scanning		
	U068	DP scanning position adjustment	Adjusting the starting position for DP scanning		
	U070	DP magnification adjustment	Adjusting the magnification for DP scanning		
	U071	Adjusting the DP leading edge Tim- ing	Adjusting the DP scanning timing		

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline
Optical	U072	Adjusting the DP original center	Adjusting the center line for DP scanning
	U073	Scanner motor operation check	Move the scanner in the set condition
	U074	Adjusting the DP input characteris- tics	Sets the DP image scanning density
	U087	Setting the DP scanning position change operation	Change the scanning position as the corrective measures for the black lines
	U089	MIP-PG pattern output	Output MIP-PG pattern
	U091	White lines correction setting	Sets the white lines detection threshold
	U099	Original size detection setting	Sets the original size detection check and detec- tion threshold
High volt-	U100	Main high voltage adjustment	Adjust the drum surface potential
age sys- tem	U101	Primary transfer voltage adjustment	Sets high voltage except the main high voltage and outputs
	U108	Separation Shift bias adjustment	Adjust ON/OFF timing of separation shift bias.
	U110	Drum counter	Displays/sets the drum counter
	U111	Drum drive time.	Displays the drum drive time.
	U117	Drum unit number	Displays the drum number
	U118	Drum unit history	Displays the drum history
	U127	Clearing the transfer count	Displaying the counts
Devel-	U130	Developer agent initial setting	Installs initial toner in the developer unit
oper sys- tem	U136	Toner level detection setting	Sets the number of pages printable at toner near end
	U139	Temperature, humidity	Displays the machine inside and outside humid- ity
	U140	Developer bias adjustment	Adjust the developer bias values.
	U147	Setting the toner applying mode	Sets the overcharge toner removal mode
	U148	Drum refresh mode setting	Setting auto drum refresh
	U150	Check Toner Sensor Operation	Displays the ON/OFF status of each switch and sensor in related toner.
	U157	Developer drive time	Displays/sets the developer drive time
	U158	Developer counter	Displays/sets the developer counter
Fuser	U161	Fuser temperature adjustment	Sets the fuser control temperature
	U167	Clearing the fuser count	Displaying/clearing the counts
	U198	Set Fuser Phase Control	Switch the fuser phase control.
	U199	Fuser temperature	Monitor the fuser temperature

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline	
Opera-	U200	All LEDs lighting	Light all the LEDs on the operation panel	
tion sec- tion / Support	tion sec- tion / Support U201 Initializing the touch panel Correct the X and Y axis po panel		Correct the X and Y axis position of the touch panel	
equip- ment		Check DP operation	Checking the DP paper conveying operation with the DP alone	
	U204	Key card/key counter setting	Key card/key counter connection setting	
	U206	Sets the coin vendor	Sets the coin vendor	
	U207	Operation key check	Check the operation panel key operation	
	U221	USB host lock function setting	Sets USB Host lock function ON/OFF	
	U222	Setting the IC card type	Sets the ID card type	
	U223	Operation panel lock	Set On/Off of the operation unit lock	
	U224	Setting Original Panel Display	Sets the opening screen	
	U230	Optional device serial number	Displays the optional device serial number	
	U234	Setting destination for punch	Set the punch destination	
	U237	Finisher eject volume limit	Sets the main tray stack capacity	
	U240	Finisher operation check	Checks the drive operation	
U241 Finisher switch check Check the		Finisher switch check	Check the switch operation	
	U243 Checking the DP motor		Drive the DP motor	
	U244	DP switch check	Check the DP sensor	
	U245	Checking the message	Check message	
	U246	Finisher adjustment	Sets the finisher adjustment value	
	U247	Paper feed operation check	Drives the PF motor and clutch	
Mode	U250	Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set	Changes the preset value	
Setting	U251	clearing the maintenance counter	Displaying/clearing/changing the counter value	
	U252	Destination	Sets the machine operation and indication depending on the specification of each destina- tion	
	U253	Switching the double/single counts	Sets the counter by color mode	
	U260	Switching the timing for copy count- ing	Setting the count-up timing	
	U265	Setting by destination	Sets the OEM code	
	U278	Delivery date setting	Register Delivery Date	
	U285	Set Service Status Page	Setting the print coverage report output	
	U286	Optional language setting	Add/delete/change the optional language	
	U287	Automatic recovery function	Sets whether to automatically recover after error	
	U326	Black line cleaning indication	Switch the black line cleaning guidance indica- tion	
	U327	Cassette heater control setting	Selects the cassette heater control setting	

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline	
Mode Setting	U332	Adjusting the black coverage coefficient	Setting the coefficient of the custom size	
	U340	Setting the applied mode	Sets the memory allocation	
	U341	Printer cassette setting	Sets the cassette to printer output only	
	U343	Duplex priority mode	Switches the duplex printing priority mode	
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	Setting the maintenance timing display	
	U346	Selecting Sleep Mode	Setting the BAM related sleep mode	
Image	U402	Adjusting the printing margins	Adjusts the margin for writing images	
process- ing	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	Adjusts the margin for scanning originals	
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the document processor	Adjusts the margin for scanning originals	
	U407	Adjusting the writing timing (Duplex/ Reversal)	Adjusting the writing timing when duplex printing	
	U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically	Acquiring the data for the automatic halftone adjustment and the ID correction	
U411 Scanner auto adjustment Adjusting th		Scanner auto adjustment	Adjusting the scanner and DP automatically	
	U415	Adjusting the print position automatically	Execute the automatic adjustment of the timing	
	U425	Set Target	Inputs the Lab value printed on an adjustment original	
	U470	Setting the JPEG compression rate	Sets the JPEG compression rate	
	U485	Image process mode setting	Sets the image processing	
	U520	TDRS setting	Checking/setting the TDRS	
FAX	U600	Initialize: All Data	Initializes all data and image memory.	
	U601	Initialize: Keep data	Initializing the software switches of other than the machine data	
	U603	User data 1	Makes user settings to enable the use as a FAX	
	U604	User data 2	Makes user settings to enable the use as a FAX	
	U605	Data clear	Initializing the FAX communication data	
	U610	System 1	Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a FAX at 100% magnification and in the auto reduction mode.	
	U611	System 2	Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduc- tion.	
	U612	System 3	Setting regarding the FAX communication oper- ation	

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline	
FAX	U615	System 6	Sets the size to print at FAX reception and received image size	
	U620	FAX system	Sets the signal detection method for remote switching	
	U625	Communication settings	Sets the auto redialing interval and the number of times of auto redialing	
	U630	Communication control procedures 1	Setting the FAX communication	
	U631	Communication control procedures 2	Sets the FAX communication	
	U632	Communication control procedures 3	Setting the FAX communication	
	U633	Communication control procedures 4	Setting the FAX communication	
	U634	Communication control procedures 5	Set the acceptable error when judging the received TCF signal	
	U640	Communication time setting 1	Setting the detection time by remote switching mode	
	U641 Communication time setting 2 Sets the time-out time for the fa		Sets the time-out time for the fax communication	
U650 Modem 1 Set		Modem 1	Sets the G3 transmission cable equalizer	
	U651	Modem 2	Sets the modem output level	
	U660	Ring setting	Setting the NCU (network control unit)	
	U670	List output	Outputting the list of the fax communication data	
	U671	FAX backup data clear	Clear the FAX backup data	
	U695	FAX function customization	FAX batch transmission is set up.	
	U698	Setting the maintenance port	Set the port to apply	
	U699	Software switch: Set	Sets the software switches individually	
Others	U901	Clearing the counters by paper source	Displays/clears the counters by paper source	
	U903	Clearing the jam counter	Displays/clears number of occurrence by jam trigger code	
	U904	Clearing the service call error coun- ter	Displays/clears the service call error and system error counts	
	U905	Optional counter	Displaying the counts	
	U906	Resetting the partial operation	Resets the partial operation	
	U908	Total counter	Displays the FAX count	
	U910	Black rate data	Clearing the print coverage data and its period	
	U911	Counter by media type	Displays/clears the counts by media type	
1				

Section	No.	Maintenance item	Outline
Others	U917	Read/Write Backup Data	Reading/writing the backup data to a USB mem- ory
	U920	Billing counter	Displays the billing count
	U927	Clearing all the billing/life counters	Clearing the billing count and machine life count
	U928	Machine life counter	Displays the machine life count
	U930	Clear the main charger roller counts	Displaying/setting the counts
	U933	Setting the maintenance mode log	Sets the maintenance mode log
	U935	Maintenance Relay Board	Set the disorder mode setting.
	U942	DP loop amount setting	Adjust the paper loop amount when using the document processor
	U964	Log check	Transfer the log files save in the HDD to a USB memory
	U952	Maintenance mode workflow	Execute the maintenance flow with the Work- Flow data
	U969	Toner area code	Displays the toner area code
	U977	Setting the data capture mode	Stores the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory
	U984	Developer unit number	Displays the developer unit number
	U985	Developer unit history	Displays the developer unit number history
	U989 HDD scan disk Execute the HDD scan disk		Execute the HDD scan disk
	U990	Clearing the scanner lighting time	Displays the accumulated CIS lighting time
	U991	Scanner counter	Displays the scanner count

(2-1) Content of each maintenance mode

U000	Output Maintenance Report
	(Message: Output Maintenance Report)

Contents

Prints the list of the current settings of the maintenance items, paper jam and service call error occurrences. Output the event log and service status page.

Also, sends output data to a USB memory.

Purpose

Checks the current settings of the maintenance items, paper jam and service call error occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup memory, print the list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to output.

Items	Output list
Maintenance	Maintenance mode setting status list
User Status	Output User Status Page
Service Status	Output Service Status Page
Event	Output the event log report
Network Status	Output Network Status Page
All	All reports output

3.Press the [Start] key to output the list.

*: If A4 paper is available, it is output with this size. If A4 paper is unavailable, select the paper source. Output status is displayed.

Execution: when sending output data to a USB memory

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3.Select the item to send.
- 4.Select [USB(Text)] or [USB(HTML)].

Items Output list	
Print	A report is printed.
USB(Text)	Destination: send to USB memory (text format)
USB(HTML)	Destination: send to USB memory (HTML format)

5.Press the [Start] key.

*: The output data is sent to the USB memory.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

Detail of event log

Firmware version 2RH_2000.001.133 Machine No.:Z2C5Y00100	3 2016.02.02 (1) Life Count:10	(× 00000	(3)	[XXXXXX (4)	(XX) [XXXXXXXX (5)
) Paper Jam Log # Count. Event Description 12 555555 0501.01.08.01.00 11 444444 4002.01.08.01.00 10 333333 0501.01.08.01.00 9 2222222 4002.01.08.01.00 8 1111111 $0501.01.08.01.00$ 9 99999 4002.01.08.01.00 6 0501 01 08.01.00 6 0501 01 08.01.00 1 4002.01.08.01.00 1 4002.01.08.01.00	ns Date and Time 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 3014/02/12 17:30 4/02/12 17:30	(9) M a # 2 1	aintenance Count. 2 444444 222222	Log Item. 02.01 02.02	Data and Time 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30
Service Call Log # Count. Service Code Da 8 1111111 01.00.6000 20 7 999999 01.01.2100 20 6 88888 01.01.0000 20 5 777777 01.00.6000 20 4 666666 01.00.2100 20 3 55555 01.01.4000 20 2 444444 01.00.6000 20 1 1 01.00.2100 20	Ata and Time 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30 14/02/12 17:30	(10) Ur 5 4 3 2 1	hknown to Count. 5 111111 999999 888888 777777 6666666	ner Log Item. 01.00 01.00 01.00 01.00	Data and Time 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30 2014/02/12 17:30

Figure 3-1

KYOCERA

MFP TASKalfa 3511i

Event Log

Firmware version 2RH_2000.001.133 2016.02.02

[XXXXXXX] [XXXXXXX] [XXXXXXX]

Figure 3-2

Description of event log

No.	Items		Contents		
(1)	System version				
(2)	System date				
(3)	Engine firmware version				
(4)	Engine boot version				
(5)	Operation panel firmware ve	ersion			
(6)	Machine serial number				
(7)	Paper Jam Log				
	#	Count.	Event Descriptions	Date and Time	
	Record 1 to 16 of occur- rence. If the past paper jam	The total page count at the time of a paper jam.	Log code (5 types in hexa- decimal)	Date and time of occur-	
	occurrence is less than 16, all of them are indicated. The oldest log is deleted when exceeding 16 events.		 (a) Cause of paper jam (b) Paper source (c) Paper size (d) Paper type (e) Paper eject 	rence	
	(a)Detail of cause of paper j	am (Hexadecimal)	1		
	Refer to "2-2 Paper Misfeed Detection", for the detail of cause of paper jam. (P.1-4-1)				
	(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)				
	00: MP tray 01: Cassette 1 02: Cassette 2 (paper feede 03: Cassette 3 (paper feede 04: Cassette 4 (paper feede 05 to 09: Unused	er) er) er)			
	(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)				
	00: Not specified 01: Monarch 02: Business 03: International DL 04: International C5 05: Executive 06: Letter-R 86: Letter-R 86: Letter-E 07: Legal 08: A4R 88: A4E 09: B5R 89: B5E 0A: A3	0B: B4 0C: Ledger 0D: A5R 0E: A6 0F: B6 10: Commercial #9 11: Commercial #6 12: ISO B5 13: Custom size 1E: C4 1F: Hagaki 20: Oufuku Hagaki 21: Oficio II	 22: Special 1 23: Special 2 24: A3 Wide 25: Ledger Wide 26: Full bleed paper (12 x 8) 27: 8K 28: 16K-R A8: 16K-E 32: Statement-R B2: Statement-E 33: Folio 34: Youkei type 2 35: Youkei type 4 		

No.	Items		Contents	
(7)	Paper Jam Log			
cont.	(d) Detail of paper type (He>	(adecimal)		
	01: Plain	0A: Color	15: Custom 1	
	02: Transparency	0B: Prepunched	16: Custom 2	
	03: Preprinted	0C: Envelope	17: Custom 3	
	04: Labels	0D: Cardstock	18: Custom 4	
	05: Bond	0E: Coated	19: Custom 5	
	06: Recycled	UF: 2nd side	1A: Custom 6	
		10. Media 10 11: High quality	1C: Custom 8	
	09: Letterhead			
(8)	Service Call Log			
	#	Count.	Service Code	Date and
				Time
	Remembers 1 to 8 th of	The total page count at the	The first two digits (identifi-	Date and
	occurrence of self diagnos-	time of the self diagnostic	cation)	time of
	tics error.	error.	01: Service call / System	occur-
	If the occurrence of the		error	rence
	error is 8 or less all of the			
	diagnostics errors are		Next two digits (Auto	
	logged.		reboot information)	
			00: Without auto reboot	
			01: Auto reboot execution	
			Loot four digito	
			Self diagnostic error code	
			(P.1-4-12See page)	
			(Example) 01.00.6000	
			01 indicates Self diagnos-	
			tic error, 00 without auto	
			beboot and 6000 Self diag-	
			*: 1/287 sets the auto	
			reboot function	

No.	Items		Contents	
(9)	Maintenance Log			
	#	Count.	item	Date and Time
	Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 8, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	Total page count at the time of the replacement of the maintenance item. The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty. This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner con- tainer is inserted.	Maintenance item code (1- byte value to indicate 2 items) First byte (Replacing item) 02: Maintenance kit Second 1 byte (replace- ment item type) 01: MK-7105 MK-7106 MK-7107 MK-7109	Date and time of occur- rence

No.	Contents			
(10)	Toner Log			
	#	Count.	Item. Serial Number	Date and Time
	Remembers 1 to 32 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 32, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	The total page count at the time of the request of toner container replacement.	log code First 1byte(Replacing item) 01: Genuine product 02: Non-genuine product Next 1byte (type of replacement item) 00: Black Last 16 digits Displays the serial number of the toner container.	Date and time of occur- rence
(11)	Counter Log			I
	(f) Paper jam	(g) Self diagnostic error	(h) Replacement for main- tenance Item	
	Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location. Refer to Paper Jam Log. All instances including those not having occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. The number of auto reboot is also displayed at the service call/system error. (Example) CF245: 4(2) System Error 245 occurred last four times and then executed the auto reboot twice.	Indicates the log counter depending on the mainte- nance replacing item. T: Toner container 00: Black M: Maintenance kit 01: MK-7105 MK-7106 MK-7107 MK-7109 Example: T00: 1 The toner container (Black) has?been replaced once. The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty. This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner con- tainer is inserted.	Consist of three log counters of paper jams, self diagnos- tics errors, and main- tenance replace- ment items.

Detail of service status page

MFP TASKalfa 3511i	C	((2) [XXXXX (3) 2016/03/0	XXXXX] 3 15:15
(1) Firmware version 2RH	_2000.000.001 2016.02.20	[XXXXXXX] [XXX) (6) ((XXXX] [XXX 7)	[XXXXX] (8)
Controller Inform	ation			
Memory status		(38) FRPO Status		
(9) Total Size	4.0 GB	User Top Margin	A1+A2/100	0.00
Time		User Left Margin	A3+A4/100	0.00
(10) Local Time Zone	+01:00 Amsterdam			
(11) Date and Time	06/04/2010 12:00	•		
	10.103.33.13	•		
(13) Document Processo	r Installed	•		
(14) Paper Feeder	LCF(1500X2)	•		
(15) Hard Disk *1	Not Installed			
(16) SD Card	Not Installed			
(17) Finisher	Not Installed			
(18) Mail Box	Not Installed	-		
(19) Card Authentication I	Kit (B)			
(20) Internet Fax Kit (A)	Installed			
	Installed			
(21) Data Security Kit (E)	Installed	-		
(22) UG-34	Installed	•		
	Installed	•		
(24) USB Keyboard Type	IIS-English	-		
(26) Scan extention Kit(A)) Installed	BDE modo	VE	00
Print Coverage)	e-MPS error contro	I Y6	03
(27) Average(%) / L	Jsage Page(A4/Letter Conversion)	PR Codo		
(28) Total		(39) 1234 5678 9012		
K: 1.10 / 1	111111.11	(40) 5678 9012 3456		
		(41) 9012 3456 7890		
		(42) 3456 7890 1234		
(00) -		()		
(29) Copy				
K: 1.10 / 1	111111.11			
(30) Printer				
K: 1.10 / 1	111111.11			
(31) FAX				
K: 1.10 / 1	111111.11			
(32) Period (2	27/10/2009 - 03/11/2009 08:40)			
(33) Last Page (%) 1.	.00			
FAX Information				
(34) Rings (Normal)	3			
(35) Rings (FAX/TEL)	3			
(36) Rings (TAD)	3			
1				

Figure 3-3

*1: KDA does not display

Print Settings Cl04709_Cl04709 (43) MP Tray Priority Auto Feed (44) Altitude Adjustment Status Normal Status Normal 2NM_S000.001.089 (43) MP Tray Priority Auto Feed FAX SPL Version 2NM_S000.001.089 (44) Altitude Adjustment Status Normal 2NM_S000.001.080 (45) FAX SPL Version ZNM_S000.001.000 2NM_S000.001.000 (47) MAC Address 0.c.C0-EE: D0.01.0D Status 0.c.C0-EE: D0.01.0D (48) Date and Time 14/03/05 15.30 mail@bjd.ne.jp (42) 000000000000000000000000000000000000	Service Status Page MFP TASKalfa 6052ci Firmware Version 2ND_2000.001.133 2016.02.20 Service Information				
(4) MIP Targe Priority Auto Feed (46) FAX Start 2NM_1200.001.089 (44) Altitude Adjustment Status Normal 2NM_200.001.089 2NM_200.001.089 (44) Altitude Adjustment Status Normal 2NM_200.001.089 2NM_200.001.089 (47) MAC Address 00:CC-DE ED.00.10.001 2NM_200.001.089 2NM_200.001.089 (42) Date and Time 14/03/05 15.30 (43) Dotomococococococococococococococococococ					
(44) Altitude Adjustment FAX BOU Version ZMM_5100.0001.00 Status Normal FAX ADU Version ZMM_5100.0004.001 FAX ADU Version ZMM_5100.0004.001 ZMM_5100.004.001 FAX ADU Version ZMM_5100.004.001 ZMM_5100.0000.0000.000000000000000000000000	(43) MP Tray Priority	Auto Feed	(46)	FAX Slot1	2NM_1200.001.089
Status Normal FAX IPL Version (47) 2MM_5200.001.006 00.00.0EEE.D0.01:00 Send Information (48) Date and Time 14/03/05 15:30 12 (50) (51) (53) 0/0/0 (53) 0/0/0 (53) 0/0/0 (53) 0/0/0 000000000000000000000000000000000000	(44) Altitude Adjustment			FAX BOOT Version FAX APL Version	2NM_5000.001.006 2NM_5100.004.001
(48) Date and Time (49) Address 14/03/05 15:30 mail@bjd.re.jp 12 (50) (51) (53) 0/0/07 000000000000000000000000000000000000	Status	Normal	(47)	FAX IPL Version MAC Address	2NM_5200.001.006 00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D
(48) Date and Time 14/03/05 15:30 (49) Address mail@bjd.ne.jp 12 (50) (51) (51) 100/100 (52) 100/100 000000000000000000000000000000000000			5	Send Information	
1/2 (50) (51) (52) 100/100 (53) 0/0/0/ (53) 0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/ (55) 0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/0/ (55) 0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/ (56) 0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/0/ (55) 0/0/0/ (54) 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/			(48)	Date and Time	14/03/05 15:30
2					

Figure 3-4

No.	Items	Contents
(1)	Firmware Version	-
(2)	Machine serial number	-
(3)	System date	-
(4)	-	-
(5)	-	-
(6)	Engine firmware version	-
(7)	Engine boot version	-
(8)	Operation panel firmware version	-
(9)	Total memory size	-
(10)	Local time zone	-
(11)	Report output date	Day/Month/Year hour : minute
(12)	NTP server name	-
(13)	Whether the DP is installed or not	Installed/Not Installed
(14)	Whether the paper feeder is installed or not	Cassette(500-sheet×2) / Cassette(1500-sheet×2) / Not Installed
(15)	Availability of the Hard Disk (KDA does not display)	Installed/Not Installed
(16)	Availability of the SD memory card	Installed/Not Installed
(17)	Availability of the finisher	1000-sheet finisher/ 3000-sheet finisher/not installed
(18)	Availability of Mailbox	Installed/Not Installed
(19)	Availability of the ID Card Authentica- tion Kit	Introduced/ before introduction/trial
(20)	Availability of the Internet FAX Kit(A)	Installed/Not Installed
(21)	Availability of the Security Kit(E)	Installed/Not Installed
(22)	Availability of UG-33	Introduced/ before introduction/trial
(23)	Availability of UG-34	Installed/Not Installed
(24)	USB keyboard connection status	Connected/Not connected
(25)	Type of the USB keyboard	US-English/US-English with Euro symbol/German France
(26)	Availability of the Scan extension kit(A)	Introduced/ before introduction/trial
(27)	Page count converted to the A4/Letter size	Print Coverage provides a close-matching reference of toner consumption and will not match the actual toner consumption.
(28)	Entire average coverage	Black
(29)	Average coverage for copy	Black
(30)	Average printer coverage	Black
(31)	Average coverage for FAX	Black

No.	Items	Contents
(32)	Cleared date and output date	-
(33)	Coverage on the last output page	-
(34)	Number of rings	0 to 15
(35)	Number of rings before automatic switching	0 to 15
(36)	Number of rings before connecting to the answering machine	0 to 15
(37)	Optional DIMM size	-
(38)	FRPO setting	-
(39)	RP code	Coding the engine firmware version and the date of the previous update.
(40)	RP code	Code the main software version and the date of the latest update.
(41)	RP code	Coding the engine firmware version and the date of the previous update.
(42)	RP code	Code the main software version and the date of the previous update.
(43)	MP tray priority setting	Off (No setting)/Auto(Auto paper feed)/Always(All times)
(44)	High altitude adjustment set data	Normal/1001-2000m/2001-3000m/3001-3500m
(45)	NVRAM version	_ 1F3 1225 _ 1F3 1225 (a)(b)(c)(d)(e)(f) (a) Consistency of the current firmware version and the database _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME firmware version Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).
(46)	FAX firmware version	-
(47)	Mac address	-
(48)	The last sent date and time	-
(49)	Transmission address	-
(50)	Destination information	-
(51)	Area information	-
(52)	Margin setting	Top margin/Left margin
(53)	L parameters	Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/Left mar- gin integer part /Left margin decimal part

No.	Items	Contents
(54)	Life counter (cassette 1)	Machine life/MP tray/Cassette 1/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/ Cassette 4/Duplex
	Life counter (cassette 2)	Drum unit/Transfer roller unit/Developer unit/Charger roller/Fuser unit
	Life counter (cassette 3)	Maintenance kit
(55)	Panel lock information	F00: OFF F01: Partial lock1 F02: Partial lock2 F03: Partial lock3 F04: Full lock
(56)	USB information	U00: Not Connected U01: Full speed U02: Hi speed
(57)	Paper handling information	0: Paper source select 1: Paper source fixed
(58)	Auto cassette change	0: OFF 1: ON (Default)
(59)	Color printing double count mode	0: All single counts 3: Folio (Less than 330 mm length), Single counts
(60)	Black and white printing double count mode	0: All single counts 3: Folio (Less than 330 mm length), Single counts
(61)	Billing counts timing	0: When secondary paper feed starts 1: When the paper is ejected
(62)	Temperature (machine inside)	-
(63)	Temperature (machine outside)	-
(64)	Relative humidity (machine outside)	-
(65)	Absolute humidity (machine outside)	-
(66)	Machine inside humidity	-
(67)	LSU1 humidity information	-
(68)	LSU2 humidity information	-
(69)	Asset Number	-
(70)	Job end judgment time-out time	-
(71)	Job end detection mode	0: Detects as one job, even if contained multiple jobs1: Detects as individual job, dividing multiple jobs at a break in job
(72)	Prescribe environment reset	0: Off 1: On

No.	Items	Contents
(73)	Media type attributes	Weight settings Fuser settings
	1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)	0: Light 0: High
	*: For details on settings, refer to	2: Normal 2 2: Low
	MDAT command in "Prescribe	3: Normal 3 3: Vellum
	Commands Reference Manual".	4: Heavy 1 5: Hoovy 2 Duplox sottings
		6: Heavy 3 0: Disable
		7: Heavy 4 1: Enable
		8: Heavy 5 9: Extra Heavy
(74)	IO Calibration information	s. Exita fleavy
(75)	Bias Calibration information	-
(76)	Sensor initial information	-
(70)	Calibration information	-
(78)	Calibration information	-
(79)	Calibration information	-
(80)	Calibration information	-
(81)	Calibration information	-
(82)	Paper loop correction shift amount	-
(83)	Paper loop correction interval	-
(84)	Paper loop correction patch amount	-
(85)	Calibration information	-
(86)	Calibration information	-
(87)	RFID information (K,C,M,Y)	-
(88)	RFID reader/writer version	-
(89)	Optional paper feeder firmware ver- sion	-
(90)	Color table version for printer	-
(91)	Color table 2 version for printer	-
(92)	Color table version for copy	-
(93)	Color table 2 version for copy	-
(94)	Maintenance information	-
(95)	MC correction	1 to 7
(96)	Configuring the toner coverage coun-	0: Full-color count display
(0=)		1: Color coverage count display
(97)	Low coverage setting	0.1 to 100.0
(98)	Middle coverage setting	0.1 to 100.0

No.	Items										Content	s	
(99)	Data sanitization information						FAX Board/Main Memory/Panel Memory/SSD/Executed time 1: Success 0: Fail -: Not performed or Not installed						
(100)	Toner low se	etting					0: Disabled 1: Enabled						
(101)	Toner low de	etectio	n lev	el			0 to 100 (%)						
(102)	banner print affirmation displays to set.					et.	0: No display 1: Display every page						
(103)	Full-page print mode						0: Normal mode (Factory setting) 1: Full-page mode						
(104)	Wake-up mode						0: Off (Don't wake up) 1: On (Do wake up)						
(105)	Wake-up timer						Displa	iys the	e wake	e-up ti	me		
(106)	BAM conformity mode setting						0: Nor 1: Cor	n-conf nformi	ormity ty Moo	[,] mode de	9		
(107)	Drum serial r	numb	er				Black						
(108)	Developer serial number						Black						
	Code conversion												
	l í	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J		
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
					·								

U001	:Exit Maintenance Mode
	(Message:Exit Maintenance Mode)

Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.

Purpose

Exit the maintenance mode.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2. The normal copy mode is entered.

U002	Set Factory Default
	(Message: Set Factory Default)

Contents

Sets the machine initial setting values to the factory default.

Purpose

Executes the machine initial settings when shipping from factory.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Mode1(All)].
- 3.Press the [Start] key.

Items	Contents
Mode1(All)	Sets the machine initial setting values to the factory default.

4. Turn the power switch off.

*: An error code is displayed in case of the initialization error.

When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U002.

Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Error codes

Codes	Contents	
0001	Controller (Entity error)	
0002	Controller (Counter error)	
0003	Controller (OS error)	
0020	Engine error	
0040	Scanner error	

U003	Set Telephone Number for Service Call
	(Message: Set Telephone Number for Service Call)

Sets the phone number indicated at the service call error.

Purpose

Execute to set the service telephone number at the installation of the machine.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- *: Input keys are indicated on the touch panel.
- 2.Input telephone number (15 digits maximum).
- 3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U004	Machine Number
	(Message: Machine Number)

Contents

Sets or displays the machine serial number.

Purpose

Checks the machine serial number

After the main/engine PWB replacement, execute if the "C0180 machine number mismatch" occurs.

Caution

Do not execute U004, select [Execute] and press [Start] key if the machine serial number in the engine PWB is different from the main unit serial number. A different machine serial number is overwritten in the main PWB.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

When the machine serial number in the engine PWB matches the one in the main PWB,

Items	Contents
Machine No.	Displays the machine serial number.

When the machine serial number in the engine PWB does not match the one in the main PWB,

Items	Contents
Machine No.(Main)	Displays the machine serial number in the main PWB.
Machine No.(Eng)	Displays the machine serial number in the engine PWB.

Setting

Execute if the serial numbers do not match.

1.Select [Execute].

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: The serial number writing starts.

3.Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U010	Set Maintenance Mode ID
	(Message: Set Maintenance Mode ID)

Change the maintenance mode ID for service.

Purpose

Modify maintenance mode ID for service for more security.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
New ID	Enter a new 8-digit maintenance ID
New ID(Reconfirm)	Enter a new 8-digit maintenance ID (to confirm)
Initialize	Initializes the maintenance mode ID for service.

Setting: New ID

- 1.Select [New ID].
- 2.Press ten keys (0–9, *, #) to enter a new 8-digit ID.
- *: Either [*] or [#] must be included.
- 3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4.Select [New ID(Reconfirm)].
- 5.Press ten keys (0–9, *, #) to re-enter the new 8-digit ID.
- 6.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Method: Initialize

- 1.Select [Initialize].
- 2.Press the [Start] key to initialize the maintenance mode ID.

Completion

- Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Error codes

Codes	Contents
0001	Do not include "#" or "*" in the ID.
0002	ID does not match.
0003	8-digit ID is not input

U018	Check Firmware Checksum
	(Message: Check Firmware Checksum)

Verifies that the firmware is not falsified3.

Purpose

Re-calculate the checksum to verify the firmware is not falsified.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

Items	Contents
Expected	Displays the checksum expected value
Result	Displays the checksum calculation
Execute	Execute self-verification

2.Select [Execute].

3.Press the [Start] key.

After execution, display the checksum obtained in the [Expected].

The following appears if the verification result is illegal.

Items	Contents
f001	The expected value file does not exist
f002	Expected value file read failure
f003	Illegal data of the expected value file (not 64-byte data)
s001	Fails to obtain the checksum
NG	Expected value and checksum are different

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U019	Firmware Version
	(Message: Firmware Version)

Displays the firmware version installed in each PWB.

Purpose

Check the firmware version installed in each PWB

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: The firmware version is displayed.
- 2.Change the screen using the $[\blacktriangle][\triangledown]$ key.

Items	Contents
Main	Main firmware
ммі	Operation firmware
Panel Main	Panel firmware
Panel Boot	Panel Boot
Browser	Browser firmware
Engine	Engine firmware
Engine Boot	Engine boot
Scanner	Scanner
Scanner Boot	Scanner Boot
RFID	RFID
Dictionary	Dictionary firmware
Option Language	Optional language firmware
OCR	OCR dictionary firmware
HyPAS Embedded API	HyPAS Embedded API firmware
DP	DP firmware
DP Boot	DP Boot
DP SSW	DP SSW
PF1	Paper feeder 1 firmware
PF1 Boot	Paper Feeder 1 boot
DF	finisher firmware
DF Boot	finisher boot
PH	Punch firmware
PH Boot	Punch Boot
МТ	mailbox Firmware
MT Boot	mailbox boot
Fax APL1	Fax APL1
Fax Boot1	FAX Boot1
Fax IPL1	Fax IPL1

Items	Contents
Fax APL2	Fax APL2
Fax Boot2	FAX Boot2
Fax IPL2	Fax IPL2
Application Name 01	Application 1 firmware
Application Name 02	Application 2 firmware
Application Name 03	Application 3 firmware
Application Name 04	Application 4 firmware
Application Name 05	Application 5 firmware
Application Name 06	Application 6 firmware
Application Name 07	Application 7 firmware
Application Name 08	Application 8 firmware
Application Name 09	Application 9 firmware
Application Name 10	Application 10 firmware
Application Name 11	Application 11 firmware
Application Name 12	Application 12 firmware
Application Name 13	Application 13 firmware
Application Name 14	Application 14 firmware
Application Name 15	Application 15 firmware
Application Name 16	Application 16 firmware

Completion

Press the [Stop] key. *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U021	Initialize Memory
	(Message: Initialize Memory)

Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call error history and mode setting. Also, initializes the backup RAM according to the area specification selected in the maintenance mode U252 (Setting the destination).

Purpose

Initialize the backup data except machine settings to the factory default in the field

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Initialize data according to the destination information.

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: All data other than for adjustments is initialized by the destination setting.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

*: An error code is displayed in case of the initialization error.

When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U021.

Error codes

Items	Contents
0001	Controller (Entity error)
0002	Controller (Counter error)
0020	Engine error
0040	Scanner error

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U024	Format HDD	
	(Message: Format HDD)	

Initialize the HDD.

Purpose

Initialize the HDD when replacing the HDD in the field.

Precautions

The following settings are initialized if the HDD is initialized.

System Menu (User Management, Job Accounting, Address Book, One Touch Key, Document Box, etc.), Shortcut key, Panel program.

If executing full-format, the following installed software is deleted.

Optional language, HyPAS application (FMU, etc.), OCR dictionary software, color table.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
HDD Format	Executing the HDD format
SSD Format	Executing the SSD format

3.Select the item to execute. Displays the item to delete.

Items	Contents
Full	Full format
Data	Data format (save in the application software)

4.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Starts operation

5.Press the [Start] key to execute the initialization.

6. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

*: Manually reinstall deleted software.

Optional language, OCR dictionary software, (OCRDATA): Install using a USB memory.

Install the HyPAS application (FMU, etc.) from the Application screen.

If there is no OCR dictionary software, a warning dialog is displayed, and the OCR function is unavailable.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U025	Firmware update (S)
	(Message: Firm Update(Security))

Executes Firmware-Update from the USB memory while "Very High" is selected in the Security Level settings under the System Menu.

Supplement

Initiate the firmware upgrade by a service person by executing U025 while a USB memory is inserted

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Updates the firmware

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: This is not executable when a USB memory is not installed.

4. After normal completion, turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U026	Pulling Backup Data
	(Message: Pulling Backup Data)

Execute to retrieve backup data after replacing the main PWB.

Purpose

Restores the setting values backup from the HDD to the flash memory on the main PWB. Data is transferred from an SSD to another via a USB memory.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
Flash	Updates the firmware
SSD	SSD data is backed up and retrieved when a USB memory is installed.

Method:Flash

1.Select [Restore].

Items	Contents
Restore	Restore the backup data

2.Press the [Start] key.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Method:SSD

1.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
Backup	Backup the SSD data
Restore	Restore the backup data

2.Press the [Start] key.

3.After [Restore] completion, turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

*: Indicates "NG" when completing abnormally. Saved data: U278 Delivery date setting U402 margin adjustment U952 Maintenance workflow data

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.
U030	Motor operation check
	(Message: Check Motor Operation)

Drive each motor.

Contents

Execute to check each motor's operation.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the motor to operate.
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Each operation starts.

Items	Contents
Main	Operate the main motor
Exit(CW)	Drive the Exit(CW) motor
Exit(CCW)	Drive the Exit(CCW) motor
Feed2	Operate the Feed 2 motor
Bridge	Operate the bridge motor

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U031	Check the conveying switch
	(Message: Check Conveying Switch)

Displays the on/off status of each switch and sensor to detect paper on the paper conveying path. **Purpose**

Execute to check the conveying switches and sensors are operating correctly.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

3. The switch indication is inversed when the switch is detected.

Items	Contents
Regist	Display the registration sensor (RS) status
Fuser	Displays the eject sensor (ES) status
Duplex	Displays the duplex sensor (DUS) status
Face Down Tray Full	Display the paper full sensor (PFS) state
Job separator Full	Display the job paper full sensor (JPFS) state
FeedB	Displays the feed sensor 1 (FS1) status
FeedC	Displays the feed sensor 2 (FS2) status
Bridge1	Displays the bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) switch status
Bridge2	Displays the bridge conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) switch status
Contain	Displays the toner container switch (TCSW) status

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U032	Clutch operation check		
	(Message: Check Clutch Operation)		

Supply power to each clutch.

Purpose

Execute to check each clutch operation.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the clutch to operate.
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Each operation starts.

Items	Contents		
Feed 1	Operate the vertical conveying clutch 1		
Feed 2	Operate the vertical conveying clutch 2		
Regist	Operate the registration clutch		
Duplex	Operate the duplex clutch		
Motor	Operate the motor		

*: The clutch operation is available while the motor is operated.

4. To stop the clutch operation, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U033	Solenoid operation check		
	(Message: Check Solenoid Operation)		

Supply power to each solenoid.

Purpose

Execute to check each solenoid's operation.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the solenoid to operate.
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Each operation starts.
 - *: Select the motor before checking the motor rotation.

Items	Contents
MPT	Operate the MPT solenoid
Eject	Operate the eject solenoid
Motor	Operate the motor

*: The solenoid operation is available while the motor is operated.

4. To stop the operation of the solenoid, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U034	Paper timing data adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Paper Timing Data)

Adjust the leading edge registration or center line.

Purpose

Executed if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to adjust.

*: The screen for adjusting is displayed.

Items	Contents
LSU Out Top Full Adjust the leading edge timing of full speed output	
LSU Out Left	Adjusts the center line

Adjustment: LSU Out Top Full

- 1.Select the item to adjust.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Cassette	Adjusts the leading edge timing for cas- sette feed	-128 to 127	15	0.1mm
МРТ	Adjust the leading edge timing for the MP tray	-128 to 127	15	0.1mm
Duplex	Adjust the leading edge timing for the duplex paper feed	-128 to 127	15	0.1mm

- 5.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
 - For the test pattern 1, increase the value.
 - For the test pattern 2, decrease the value.
 - *: When the setting value is increased, the image moves backward, and it moves forward when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-5

6.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034 > U066(P.1-3-47) > U071(P.1-3-51)

Adjustment: LSU Out Left

1.Select the item to adjust.

2.Press the [System Menu] key.

- 3. Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
МРТ	Adjust the center line for the MP tray	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm
Cassette1	Adjust the center line for cassette 1 feed	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm
Cassette2	Adjust the center line for cassette 2 feed	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm
Cassette3	Adjust the center line for cassette 3 (Optional unit) feed	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm
Cassette4	Adjust the center line for cassette 4 (Optional unit) feed	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm
Duplex	Adjusting the center line when duplex copying (Back page)	-128 to 127	0	0.1mm

5.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the test pattern 1, increase the value.

For the test pattern 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves to right, and it moves to left when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-6

6.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034 < U067(P.1-3-48) < U072(P.1-3-53)

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U035	Folio size setting
	(Message: Adjust Folio Size)

Changes the printable area when copyng with Folio paper.

Purpose

Setting the actual size of Folio to use prevents the image dropout at the trailing edge or right/left edges.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Length	Sets the Folio paper length.	330 to 356 (mm)	330	1(mm)
Width	Sets the Folio paper width.	200 to 220 (mm)	210	1(mm)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U037	Fan motor operation check
	(Message: Check Fan Motor Operation)

Drive each fan motor.

Contents

Execute to check each fan motor's operation.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the fan motor to operate.
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Each operation starts.

Items	Contents
All	Operate all the fan motors
Low Power	Operate the low voltage power source fan motor
LSU Cooling	Operate the LSU fan motor
Eject	Operate the eject fan motor
Bridge	Operate the bridge fan motor
Main Board	Operate the main PWB fan motor

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U051 Registration paper loop amount adjustment (Message: Adjust Paper Loop Amount)

Contents

Adjusts the paper loop amount.

Purpose

The leading edge of the image may drop, image position may shift irregularly or paper is folded in a Z-shape.

*: Use to check/adjust skew feed.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to adjust.

*: The screen for adjusting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Full	Paper loop amount adjustment

Adjustment: Full

1.Select the item to adjust.

2.Press the [System Menu] key.

3.Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.

4.Press the [System Menu] key.

*: The screen for adjusting is displayed.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
MPT	Loop amount adjustment for the MP tray paper feed	-30 to 20	5	lmm
Cassette 1	Loop amount adjustment for cassette 1 paper feed	-30 to 20	1	1mm
Cassette 2	Loop amount adjustment for cassette 2 paper feed	-30 to 20	2	1mm
PF	Loop amount adjustment for PF(Cassette 3,4) paper feed	-30 to 20	2	1mm
Duplex	Loop amount adjustment for the duplex paper feed	-30 to 20	-1	1mm

- 5.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
 - For the copy example 1, increase the value.
 - For the copy example 2, decrease the value.
 - *: When the setting value is increased, the paper loop amount increase, and it decreases when the setting value is decreased.



6.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

- Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U053	Adjusting the motor speed
	(Message:Adjust Motor Speed)

Execute the motor speed fine tuning.

Purpose

No need to change the basic settings. Change the set value when an image failure occurs.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to adjust.
 - *: The screen for adjusting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Full	Set the speed correction value of full speed.

Setting

- 1.Select the item to adjust.
- 2. The screen for adjusting is displayed.
- 3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Main	Set main motor's speed correction.	-50 to 50	1	0.1%
Main(MPT)	Set Main(MPT) motor's speed correc- tion	-50 to 50	1	0.1%
Main(Duplex)	Set Main(Duplex) motor's speed cor- rection	-50 to 50	-2	0.1%
Cassette2	Set Cassette 2 motor's speed correc- tion	-50 to 50	1	0.1%
Feed2	Set Feed 2 motor's speed correction	-50 to 50	-9	0.1%
Polygon	Set Polygon motor's speed correction	-20 to 20	0	0.1%
Exit	Set Exit motor's speed correction	-50 to 50	0	0.1%
Bridge	Set Bridge motor's speed correction	-50 to 50	0	0.1%

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U061	Lamp lighting check
	(Message: Check Lamp ON)

Turns the exposure lamp on.

Purpose

Light the exposure lamp to confirm.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to operate.

Items	Contents
CCD	Turns the exposure lamp on
CIS	Turn the CIS lamp on (when the simultaneous duplex scanning docu- ment processor is installed)

3.Press the [Start] key. Lamps are lit.

*: Press the [Stop] key to turn the lamp off.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U063	Shading position adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Shading Position)

Changes the scanner shading position.

Purpose

Execute if the vertical white lines appears on the image and they are not improved after cleaning the shading plate, namely there are scratches or dirt inside the shading plate.

By changing the shading position, shading is available where there is no influence of dirt or scratch of the shading plate.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Position	Changes the scanner shading position	0 to 18	0	0.16mm

*: If the set value is increased, the shading position moves toward the machine left side and toward the right side if the value is reduced.

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U065	Adjusting the magnification for table scanning
	(Message: Adjust Scanner Motor Speed)

Adjust the magnification in the main and sub scanning direction of the table scanning.

Purpose

Adjusts the magnification in the main and sub scanning direction of the table scanning if the above incorrect

Precautions

The magnification adjustment in the main scanning direction could cause black streaks depending on the content of the original document.

Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.

U065(main scanning direction)(P.1-3-45)>U065((sub scanning direction)(P.1-3-45)

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Press the [System Menu] key.

3.Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.

4.Press the [System Menu] key.

5.Select the item to adjust.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Main Scan	Scanner magnification in the main scan- ning direction	-75 to 75	0	0.02%
Sub Scan	Adjusts scanner magnification in the sub- scanning direction	-125 to 125	0	0.02%

Adjustment: Main Scan

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.





2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Adjustment: Sub Scan

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

- For the copy example 1, increase the value.
- For the copy example 2, decrease the value.
- *: When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-9

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U066	Adjusting the table scanning timing
	(Message: Adjust Table Leading Edge Timing)

Adjusts the leading edge timing for the table scanning.

Purpose

Executed if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front	Adjusts the scanner leading edge margin.	-30 to 30	0	0.16 mm

5.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.

Leading edge registration of the copy image (+1.0/-1.5 mm or less)





6.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.1-3-36) > U065(P.1-3-45) > U066

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U067	Adjusting the table scanning center line
	(Message: Adjust Table Center)

Adjusts the center line for the table scanning.

Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front	Adjusts the scanner center line	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the setting value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the setting value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves to right, and it moves to left when the setting value is decreased.



Center line of the copy image (within ± 2.0 mm)

Figure 3-11

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.1-3-36) > U065(P.1-3-45) > U067

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U068	DP scanning position adjustment
	(Message: Adjust DP Scan Position)

Adjusts the starting position for scanning originals from the DP.

Execute test copy at the four scanning positions after adjustment.

Purpose

Adjust if the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used *: Execute U071 to adjust the timing of the DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to adjust.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
DP Read	Adjusts the starting position for scanning originals.	-38 to 38	0	0.16 mm
Black Line	Adjusts the scanning position for the test copy originals.	0 to 3	0	-

Adjustment: DP Read

1.Select [DP Read].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves backward, and it moves forward when the setting value is decreased.

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Adjustment: Black Line

- 1.Select [Black Line].
- 2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
- 3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4.Set the original (the one of which density is known) in the DP and press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Press the [Start] key to execute the test copy.
- 6.Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U070	DP magnification adjustment
	(Message: Adjust DP Motor Speed)

Adjusting the magnification for DP scanning.

Purpose

Adjusted if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the DP is used

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- *: Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to adjust.

ltems	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Sub Scan (F)	Adjusting the magnification for table scanning	-125 to 125	-	0.02%
Sub Scan (B)	Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the sub scanning direction when duplex scanning	-125 to 125	-	0.02%
Main Scan (CIS)	Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the main scanning direction when duplex scanning (CIS)	-100 to 100	-	0.02%
Sub Scan (CIS)	Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the sub scanning direction when duplex scanning (CIS)	-125 to 125	-	0.02%

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-12

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

- Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U071	Adjusting the DP leading edge Timing
	(Message: Adjust DP Leading Edge Timing)

Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.

Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3. Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
 - *: Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to adjust.

DP-7100

ltems	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front Head	Leading edge registration. (Front page)	-32 to 32	0	0.21 mm
Front Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Front page)	-32 to 32	0	0.21 mm
Back Head	Leading edge registration. (Back page)	-32 to 32	0	0.21 mm
Back Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Back page)	-32 to 32	0	0.21 mm

DP-7110

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front Head	Leading edge registration. (Front page)	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm
Front Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Front page)	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm
Back Head	Leading edge registration. (Back page)	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm
Back Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Back page)	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm
CIS Head	Adjusts the leading edge timing for the CIS scanning	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm
CIS Tail	Adjusts the trailing edge timing for the CIS scanning	-27 to 27	0	0.30 mm

DP-7120

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front Head	Leading edge registration. (Front page)	-66 to 66	0	0.23 mm
Front Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Front page)	-66 to 66	0	0.23 mm
Back Head	Leading edge registration. (Back page)	-66 to 66	0	0.23 mm
Back Tail	Trailing edge registration. (Back page)	-66 to 66	0	0.23 mm

Adjustment: Front Head/Back Head/CIS

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

- For the copy example 2, decrease the value.
- *: When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-13

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the 2nd side after adjusting the 1st side. Adjust if necessary.

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.1-3-36) > U071

Adjustment: Front Tail/Back Tail/CIS Tail

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-14

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U072	Adjusting the DP original center
	(Message: Adjust DP Original Center)

Adjusts the DP original center line.

Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the original and the copy image when the DP is used

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3. Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
 - *: Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4. Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to adjust.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front	DP center line. (Front page)	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm
Back	DP center line. (Back page)	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm
CIS	Adjusts the DPCIS center line	-39 to 39	0	0.085 mm

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, decrease the value.

For the copy example 2, increase the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves to left, and it moves to right when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-15

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the 2nd side after adjusting the 1st side. Adjust if necessary.

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.1-3-36) > U065(P.1-3-45) > U067(P.1-3-48) > U072

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U073	Scanner motor operation check
	(Message: Check Scanner Motor Operation)

Simulate the scanner operation in any condition.

Purpose

Execute the scanner operation to check the abnormal operation and dust adhesion on the slit glass.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
Scanner Motor	Execute the scan operation
Home Position	Home positioning operation
Dust Check	Check if there is dust by turning the exposure lamp on
DP Reading	scan position operation for the document processor

3.Select [Execute].

4.Press the [Start] key.

*: Scanning starts with the condition specified.

5. To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Setting: Scanner Motor

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Zoom	Magnification	25 to 400 (%)	100	1%
Size	Original size	100 to 10200	10200	100
Lamp	Turning the exposure lamp on/off	0: OFF 1: ON	1: ON	-

Paper size corresponding to each set value

setting	Destination	setting	Destination	setting	Destination
4300	B5	6100	B5R	8600	B4
5000	A4	6600	8 1/2"×11"	9000	11"×15"
5000	A5R	7100	A4R	10000	A3
5100	11"×8 1/2"	7800	Folio	10200	11"×17"
5100	5 1/2"×8 1/2"	8400	8 1/2"×14"		

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U074	Adjusting the DP input characteristics
	(Message: Adjust DP Input)

Description

Sets the DP image scanning density

Purpose

Changes the setting if the background image appears when scanning bluish original or originals with slightly thick background Adjusts the image difference between the table scanning and DP scanning CIS scanning is not corrected.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

ltems	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Coefficient	DP image scanning density correction	0: No correction	1
		1: Low-level	
		2: Middle-level	
		3: High-level	
DP Color	Permitting the color registration correction opera-	1: On	1
Regist	tion	2: Off	

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U087	Setting the DP scanning position change operation
	(Message: Set DP Scanning Position Operation)

If dust can be detected by comparing the original trailing edge scanned data with the scanned data after the original feed, change the original scan position next time.

Also, reduce the black lines by image correction.

Purpose

Use as the corrective measures for the black lines appearing with dust on the original scanning position when using the document processor.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Front	Set the 1st side scanning data threshold	0 to 128	48
Black Line	Initialize the original scanning position	-	-

*: If the set value is reduced, dark density image is regarded as dust and dust detection becomes more likely.

If the set value is increased, dust detection becomes less likely.

Method: Black Line

1.Select [Clear].

- 2.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Original scan position returns to the initial line.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U089	MIP-PG pattern output
	(Message: Output MIP-PG Pattern)

Select and output the MIP-PG pattern generated by the main unit.

Purpose

When adjusting the image scanning items, execute to check the machine status except the scanner section using the MIP-PG pattern output without image scanning process.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the MIP-PG pattern to output

Display	Output contents	Purpose
Gray scale	Gray scale patten PG	Check of the gradation repro- ducibility
Mono 1	PG for the gray check(Density: 0)	Check the drum quality
Mono 4	PG for the gray check(Density: 7.0)	Check the drum quality
256 Gradation	256 Gradation PG	Check of the gradation repro- ducibility
Sample Set	Gray scale patten PG PG for the gray check(Density: 7.0)	The output patterns for the long life unit warranty applica-

3.Press the [System Menu] key.

4.Press the [Start] key to output a MIP-PG pattern.

5.Press the [System Menu] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U091	White lines correction setting
	(Message: Set White Line Correction)

Set the error detection threshold for white lines correction and display the abnormal pixel count.

Purpose

Execute when replacing the CIS, DP main PWB or CIS roller.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Coefficient(R)	Displays the red pixel error counts	0 to 8191	-	-
Coefficient(G)	Displays the green pixel error counts	0 to 8191	-	-
Coefficient(B)	Displays the Blue pixel error counts	0 to 8191	-	-
Threshold(R)	Sets the red error detection threshold	0 to 1023	112	-
Threshold(G)	Sets the green error detection thresh- old	0 to 1023	112	-
Threshold(B)	Sets the blue error detection threshold	0 to 1023	112	-
Thresh- old(Abnormal)	Sets the abnormal pixel threshold	0 to 8191	75	-
Mode	Set the white lines correction mode	0: No correction 1: Correction 2: Test mode	0	-
Execute	Execute retaining the white reference data	-	-	-

*: Normally do not change the threshold from the initial value of 112. Increase the value if white lines appear while the CIS roller/glass is not dirty. Reduce the set value if thin lines disappear depending on the original to use. Set in the range of 50 to 200. (In the case of out of range, it may affect the image output)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Method: Execute

- 1.Select [Execute].
- 2.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Starts retaining the white reference data.
- 3.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 4.Set the gray original face-down on the document processor and set paper in the cassette.
- *: Match the original and paper size.
- 5.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Outputs 2-sheet test pattern.
 - 1st sheet: black band of about 60mm width2nd sheet: blank (or may be gray band of about 60mm width)
- 6.Setting is correctly complete if no vertical line is observed on both sheets.

If a vertical black line appears on blank paper or a gray band or vertical white line appear on the black band, execute the white line correction again after cleaning the CIS roller or CIS glass.

White line correction is complete if both sheets have vertical black lines or vertical white lines. However, check the engine since there are factors of vertical streaks at the engine Side.

- 7.Press the [System Menu] key.
 - *: Mode is set to [1].

How to check the test copy

Blank paper	Black band	Factor	Corrective action
No lines	No lines	-	Completion
Black line	White lines	CIS roller/glass contamination	Execute the U091 CIS roller/glass contamination
Black line	No lines	Engine PWB	Check engine PWB after completing U091
No lines	White lines	Engine PWB	Check engine PWB after completing U091

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U099	Original size detection setting
	(Message: Set Original Size Detection)

Description

Sets the original size detection check and detection threshold

Purpose

Changes the detection threshold if the original size is often mis-detected with entirely dark originals (high density) or dark originals at edges only Changes the detection threshold.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

- 2.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Data1	Display of the original width of RGB each three color
B/W Level1	Original size detection threshold setting
Data2	Display of the original copies width of RGB each three color (when the document processor is installed)

Execution: Data1/Data2

- 1.Place an original copy on the table and close the original copy cover or document processor.
- 2. The light source is turned on and the CCD sensor detects the original width. The original size sensor detects the original lengthwise. (Detected twice when the document processor is installed)

Items	Contents
Original Area(dot)	Detected number of pixels (dot) in the original width
Original Area(mm)	Detected number of pixels (mm) in the original width
Size SW L	Indicating ON/OFF of the original length sensor (0: Off/1: On)

Setting: B/W Level1

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Original1	Sets the threshold to judge the original	0 to 255	50	1
Original2	Sets the threshold to judge the original	0 to 255	50	1
Original3	Sets the threshold to judge the original	0 to 255	50	1

*: Lowering the setting value improves the sensor's sensitivity and high density originals can be detected but the original mat may be detected as an original.

*: If differentiating each setting value, mis-detection may appear depending on the condition of placing the original.



Fig.	Original R/G/B	Original width size range	
1	1	A4R to A3	8.5" to 11"
2	2	B6R to A4R	5.5" to 8.5"
3	3	to B6R	to 5.5"

Figure 3-16

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U100	Main high voltage adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Main High Voltage Output)

Adjust the surface potential by changing the voltage impressed to the main charge roller.

Purpose

Change the set value to adjust the image when an image failure (background image) occurs.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Adj DC Bias	Adjust the main charge AC bias of each color
Set AC Auto Adj *1	Sets the automatic AC bias adjustment
Set DC Bias	Displays the main charge DC bias correction value.
Adj DC Bias	Adjust the surface potential additional value
Set Charger Freq	Sets the frequency of the main charger
Chk Current	Displays the electric current flows

Setting: Adj AC Bias

- 1.Select the item to set.
- 2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
 - *: When the setting value is increased, the image get thinner, and it gets thicker when the setting value is decreased.

Set value is variable depending on the environment.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
AC Bias(K)	Main charge AC bias value	400 to 2300	1100

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Set AC Auto Adj

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	
On	Adjust automatically	
Off	Not adjusted automatically	

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Set DC Bias

1.Displays the current setting.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
DC1 Bias(K)	Main charge DC bias correction value (Full speed)	-350 to 700	480

Setting: Adj DC Bias

1.Select the item to set.

- 2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
 - *: When the setting value is increased, the image get thinner, and it gets thicker when the setting value is decreased.

ltems	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
DC2 Bias(K)	Main charge DC bias additional value (Full speed)	-128 to 127	0

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Set Charger Freq

1.Select the item to set.

- 2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
 - *: When the setting value is increased, the image get thicker, and it gets thinner when the setting value is decreased.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Generally	Setting the frequency of the main charger (Normal speed)	500 to 3000	1800

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Chk Current

1.Displays the current setting.

Items	Contents
К	Inflow current value

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U101	Primary transfer voltage adjustment
	(Message: Adjust 1st Transfer Voltage Output)

Set the primary transfer control voltage

Purpose

Change setting if a failure such as faint image, etc. occurs.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
On Timing	On Timing setting	-1000 to 1000	0	-
Off Timing	Off Timing setting	-1000 to 1000	-70	-
Pre On Timing	Pre On Timing setting	-1000 to 1000	0	-
Pre Bias	Pre Bias setting	0 to 2400	70	-
Rev Bias	Rev Bias setting	0 to 2400	190	-
Bias(L)	Bias(L) setting	100 to 2400	775	-
Bias(M)	Bias(M) setting	100 to 2400	915	-
Bias (S)	Bias (S) setting	100 to 2400	1288	-

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U108 Separation Shift bias adjustment (Message: Adjust Separation Shift Bias)

Description

Adjust ON/OFF timing of the separation shift bias

Purpose

Execute when the poor paper separation occurs.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

Display	Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting
Mode	Mode setting	1 to 8	6

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U110	Drum counter
	(Message: Drum Unit Counter)

Contents

Displays the drum counter values.

Purpose

Execute to check the drum usage status.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The drum counter is displayed.

Items	Contents
К	Displays the black drum counter

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U111	Drum drive time.
	(Message: Drum Driving Time)

Display the drum drive time which is used in the high voltage time correction.

Purpose

Execute to check the drum usage status.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Display the drum drive time.

Items	Contents
К	Display the Black drum drive time.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U117	Drum unit number
	(Message: Drum Unit Number)

Contents

Displays the drum number.

Purpose

Execute to check the drum number.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the drum number.

Items	Contents
К	Displays the black drum number

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U118	Drum unit history
	(Message: Drum Unit History)

Displays the machine serial number and drum counter history.

Purpose

Execute to check the machine serial number and drum counter values.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Select the item to refer to.

Items	Contents
К	Displays the black drum history

*: Displays the machine serial number and 3 items of the drum counter history.

Items	Contents
Machine History1 to 3	Machine serial number history
Cnt History1 to 3	The drum counter history

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U127 Clearing the transfer count (Message: Clear Transfer Roller Counter)

Contents

Display and clear the transfer counts for the transfer high-voltage output correction etc.

Purpose

Execute when checking the counts after replacing transfer roller unit. Also, clear the counts after replacement.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The transfer counter value appears.

Items	Contents
Cnt	Display the transfer counts
Clear	Clear the transfer counts

Execution: Clear

1.Select [Clear].

2.Press the [Start] key, clear the counts.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: Back to the maintenance mode No. selecting screen.
U130	Developer agent initial setting
	(Message: Set Toner Install)

Installs initial toner in the developer unit

Purpose

Insert the initial toner into the developer unit when arriving and replacing the new developer.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

- 2.Select [Execute].
 - *: The screen for executing is moved.

Items	Contents
Execute	Execute the toner install mode.

Execution: Execute

1.Select [Execute].

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: Toner installation is started.

Display "Finish" after the toner installation is completed.

Error codes

Codes	Contents	
E001	In case of opening the main unit cover while executing.	
E002	In case of detecting the toner empty while executing.	
E003 In case of fully detecting the waste toner box.		
E004	In case of detecting the C call.	

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U136	Toner level detection setting
	(Message: Set Toner Near End Detection)

Execute the level setting of printable pages between toner near end and toner empty.

Purpose

Change the timing of detecting toner near end earlier than the current setting if the interval between toner near end and toner empty is too short.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
к	Setting the black toner level	0 to 9	3	-

If the set value is increased, the time interval from the toner near end to the toner empty becomes longer. If the set value is reduced, the time interval from toner near end to toner empty becomes shorter. 0: no toner near end detection

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U139	Temperature, humidity
	(Message: Temperature/Humidity)

Displays the machine inside and outside temperature and machine outside humidity.

Purpose

Check the machine inside and outside temperature and machine outside humidity.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items Contents	
Ext/Int	Machine inside and outside temperature (°C) and machine outside humidity (%)
Developing	Current temperature is displayed (°C)

Method: Ext/Int

1. Displays the current temperature and humidity

Items	Contents
External Temp	Machine outside temperature (°C)
External Humidity	Machine outside humidity (%)

Method: Developing

1. Displays the current temperature and humidity

Items	Contents
Internal Temp	Temperature around the developer section inside the machine (°C)

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U140	Developer bias adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Developing Bias)

Displays/changes each setting value of the developer bias.

Purpose

If an image failure (background image, etc.) appears, change the setting value to adjust the image.

Execution

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Bias	Bias setting	120 to 220	170
Clock	Clock setting	2600 to 3000	2700
Duty	Duty setting	400 to 600	550
Image Preference	Toner density setting in case of copying	-	-

4. Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Execution: Image Preference

- 1.Select [Copy]
- 2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Сору	Toner density setting in case of copying	-1 to +1	0

*: -1: light 0: Normal 1: Dark

*: Initial setting: 0

3.Press the [Start] key, set the setting.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U147	Setting the toner applying mode
	(Message: Set Toner Apply Mode)

Mode selection for the operation to remove overcharged toner in the developer unit (Toner applying mode). **Purpose**

Normally no need to change the setting. However change the mode when output in large quantities the usual low coverage originals(Reference: less than 1 %)

*: Density is lowered if overcharged toner stays in the developer unit.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Mode 0	Nomal mode
Mode 1	Toner consumption mode

*: Initial value: Mode 1

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U148	Drum refresh mode setting
	(Message: Set Drum Refresh Mode)

Contents

Sets the mode to use the drum refresh in the user adjustment.

Purpose

Change the setting if the drum refresh is frequently operated.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Mode	Sets Auto drum refresh	0: Off 1: Short 2: Standard 3: Long	2

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U150	Check Toner Sensor Operation		
	(Message: Check Toner Sensor Operation)		

Display the ON/OFF status each switch sensor status in relation to the toner.

Purpose

Execute to check if each switch sensor is operating correctly.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

- 2.Check the ON/OFF status of switch sensor.
 - *: The display of applicable switch sensor becomes "1" when the switch "ON" is detected.

Items	Contents	
Container Set	Display the switch status of toner container set	
Container Sensor	Display the status of toner sensor	
Waste Box Sensor Display the status of waster toner sensor		
Motor	Drive the main motor.	

3. To stop the motor drive, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U157	Developer drive time
	(Message: Developing Unit Drive Time)

Contents

Displays the developer drive time to be a reference for the toner density control correction.

Purpose

Execute to check the developer drive time since replacing the developer unit.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the developer drive time.

Items	Contents
К	Display the developer drive time

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U158	Developer counter
	(Message: Developing Unit Counter)

Displays the developer counter

Purpose

Execute to check the developer unit usage status.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The developer count is displayed.

Items	Contents
К	Displaying the developer counts

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U161	Fuser temperature adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Fuser Control Temperature)

Contents

Set the fuser control temperature, control temperature correction, other setting value.

Purpose

Normally no need to change. However, change the setting as corrective measures for paper curl, creases and fusing failure on thick paper.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
T1	T1 setting	120 to 185	110
Т2	T2 setting	120 to 185	1 to 65
ТЗ	T3 setting	130 to 220	180
Τ4	T4 setting	130 to 220	190
Т5	T5 setting	1 to 99	1
Т6	T6 setting	1 to 99	1
Т9	T9 setting	140 to 200	165
ТА	TA setting	50 to 150	100

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U167	Clearing the fuser count
	(Message: Clear Fuser Counter)

Displays and clears the fuser count.

Purpose

Verify the fuser count after replacement. Also, clear the counts after replacement.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The fuser count is displayed.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents
Cnt	Displays and change the fuser unit counts.
Clear	Clears the fuser count

Method: Clear

1.Select [Clear].

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: Fuser unit counts are cleared.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U198	Set Fuser Phase Control
	(Message: Set Fuser Phase Control)

Contents

Switch the fuser phase control.

Purpose Switch the fuser phase control.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Mode	Set the phase control mode.	0 to 2	0

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U199	Fuser temperature
	(Message: Fuser Temperature)

Fuser temperature is displayed.

Purpose

Execute to check the fuser temperature.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Fuser temperature is displayed.

Items	Contents
Heat Roller Edge 1	Displays the heat roller edge temperature (°C)
Heat Roller Center	Displays the heat roller center temperature (°C)

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U200	All LEDs lighting
	(Message: Turn ON All Panel LEDs)

Contents

All the LEDS on the operation panel are lit.

Purpose Execute to check the operation panel LED lighting.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: All the LEDs on the operation panel are blinking.

4. Press the [Stop] key to turn the display off.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U201	Initializing the touch panel
	(Message: Initialize Touch Panel)

Adjusts touch panel detecting positions.

Purpose

Correct and confirm the touch panel detecting positions, when the panel PWB or the operation panel is replaced or if the detecting positions are not aligned.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to execute.
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: The screen for executing is displayed.

0201

Items	Contents
Initialize	Automatically corrects the touch panel display position
Check	Checks the touch panel display position

Method: Initialize

*: Do not touch the touch panel.

Please do not touch a operation panel	

1.Press the center of indicated "+".

+	
	Press the center of the "+" sign. *Press it using a tool with a fine tip.

2.Press the center of indicated "+".

Press the center of the "+" sign. *Press it using a tool with a fine tip.

+

3.Press the center of indicated "+".



4. Press the center of indicated "+".

+
Press the center of the "+" sign.
*Press it using a tool with a fine tip.
If you cannot proceed to the next step, press the Stop key and try again.

5.Press the center of indicated "+".

+
Press the center of the "+" sign.
*Press it using a tool with a fine tip.
you cannot proceed to the next step, press the Stop key and try again.

- 6.[Initialize Completed] appears after setting and the touch panel is automatically corrected.
- 7.After finishing setting, the [Check] screen is automatically displayed.

Initialize completed.

Method: Check

Single Tap Check

1.Press the center of indicated three "+", and then check the display position.

+	
Initialize	
Single Tap Check. Press the center of the "+" sign. "Press it using a tool with a fine tip. If you need to perform initialization again, select "Initialize" and press the Startkey.	
+	

- 2.Check that the gap of the X and Y axis of the displayed coordinate is 6 or less.
 - *: If out of the specified value, select [Initialize] and press the [Start] key to return to Step.1.

	+
	(13, -3)
Initialize	
Multi Tap Check	
	+
Single Tap Check.	(-8, 15)
Select "Mult Tap Cheo	k" and press the Startkey to go to the next step.
If you need to perform	initialization again, select "Initialize" and press the Startke
+	
(4, -1)	

Multi Tap Check

- 1. Select [Multi Tap Check] and press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press 2 points of [o] simultaneously. (Step1)
 - *: Displays the detected point with a red dot if it is out of the default value.
 - *: If out of the specified value, select [Initialize] and press the [Start] key to return to Step.1.

\odot	Step 1 : Not completed. Step 2 : Not completed.
Initialize	
Multi tap Check. Step1. Press both circles. Fina *Press with the tips of	alize with both pressed at the same time. your fingers. (NOT your fingenails)
	\odot

2RG/2RH

- 3.Press 2 points of [o] simultaneously. (Step2) *: [Completed] appears in Step1 and Step2 if it is within
 - the default value.

	Step 1 : Not completed. Step 2 : Not completed.
Initialize	\odot
Multi tap Check. Step1. Press both circles. Finalize v *Press with the tips of your	with both pressed at the same time. fingers. (NOT your fingenails)
\odot	

Г

4.[Multi Tap Check completed.] appears when the setting is complete.

	Step 1 : Completed. Step 2 : Completed.
Multi Tap Check co Press the Stopke The screen for selecting a maintenace	ompleted. ؛y. e item No. is displayed.

Completion

- Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U203	Check DP operation
	(Message: Check DP Operation)

Simulate the original conveying operation separately in the DP.

Purpose

Check the DP operation

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.
- 3.Select the scan speed

Items	Contents
Normal Speed	Normal scanning (600dpi)
High Speed	High speed scanning
Mode	Set the conveying timing inspection mode
Reset	Reset the conveying timing inspection data
Result	Check the conveying timing

Method: Normal Speed/High Speed

4.Select the item to operate.

Items	Contents
CCD ADP	With paper, a single-sided original is fed to the CCD
CCD RADP	With paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CCD
CIS	With paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CIS
CCD ADP (Non-P)	Without paper, a single-sided original is fed to the CCD (continuous operation)
CCD RADP (Non-P)	Without paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CCD (continuous operation)
CIS(Non-P)	Without paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CIS (continuous operation)

5.Press the [Start] key.

*: The operation starts.

6. To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Setting: Mode

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Set the conveying timing inspection mode to On
Off	Set the conveying timing inspection mode to Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Method: Reset

- 1.Select [Execute].
- 2.Press the [Start] key to reset.

Method: Result

1. Displays the conveying timing data.

Completion Press the [Stop] key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U204	Key card/key counter setting
	(Message: Set Key-Card/Key-Counter)

Sets the optional key card or key counter connection.

Purpose

Execute when installing the key card or key counter.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents		
Device	Sets the key card/key counter connection.		
Message	Sets the message indicated when the device is not installed.		

Setting: Device

1.Select the type of the optional counter.

Items	Contents	
Key-Card	Key card installation	
Key-Counter	Key counter installation	
Off	Not installed	

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: Message

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents			
Key Device	Prioritized display of the key device on the login screen when multiple devices are used.			
Coin Vendor	Prioritized display of the coin vendor on the login screen when multiple devices are used .			

*: Initial setting: Coin Vendor

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U206	Sets the coin vendor
	(Message: Set Coin Vendor Mode)

Description

Sets the optional Coin Vendor connection.

Also, sets the details such as the operation mode and unit price when the coin vendor is installed. (This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines.)

Purpose

To run this maintenance item if a coin vendor is installed.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents		
On/Off Config	Sets the presence or absence of the coin vendor		
No Coin Action	Behavior when change runs out during copying		
Price	Charge per copy by size and color		
Boot Mode	Setting activation mode		
Apl Charge Mode	Extended charge unit price		

Setting: On/Off Config

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	
On	The coin vendor is installed	
Off	The coin vendor is not installed	

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: No Coin Action

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	
All Clear	All clear at coin shortage	
Auto Clear	Auto clear at coin shortage	
Off	Do nothing at coin shortage	

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Price

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents		
Normal	Charge setting: Normal		
AD	Charge setting: Commercial		
Print	Charge setting: Print		
Apl	Charge setting: Extended		

Setting: Normal / AD

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents		
B/W	Black & White		
СМҮ	Single color C, M, Y		
RGB	Single color R, G, B		
Full Color	Full color		

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	
			B/W	CMY /RGB / Full Color
A3-Ledger	A3/Ledger size	0 to 300	10	100
B4	B4 size	0 to 300	10	50
Card	Cardstock	0 to 300	10	30
Other	Others	0 to 300	10	50

*: Settable in 10-yen increments

*: Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Print

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents		
B/W	Black & White		
Full Color	Full color		

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	
			B/W	Full Color
A3-Ledger	A3/Ledger size	0 to 300	10	100
B4	B4 size	0 to 300	10	50
Card	Cardstock	0 to 300	10	30
Other	Others	0 to 300	10	50

*: Settable in 10-yen increments

*: Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Apl

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Apl1	Expanded charging unit 1	0 to 300	10
Apl2	Expanded charging unit price 2	0 to 300	10
Apl3	Expanded charging unit price 3	0 to 300	10
Apl4	Expanded charging unit price 4	0 to 300	10
Apl5	Expanded charging unit price 5	0 to 300	10

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Boot Mode

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Normal	Assign activation to normal mode
Copy Service	Assign activation to copy service display

*: Initial setting: Copy Service

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: Apl Charge Mode

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	The extended charge unit is used.
Off	The extended charge unit is not used.

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U207	Operation key check
	(Message: Check Panel Key Operation)

Check the operation panel keys.

Purpose

Check the operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key to display execution window.
- 2.[Count 0] appears and the LED at the most left column in the operation panel is turned on.
- 3.Pressing the keys in order from the top at the row where the LED is lit, count increases one by one. When pressing all the keys at the row and there is an LED at the next right side row, the LED is lit.
 - *: The job separator LED is lit during execution and turns off when completing.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U221	USB host lock function setting	
	(Message: Set USB Host Lock Function)	

Contents

Sets ON/OFF of the USB Host lock function. When setting it to on, the device connected to the USB host is not recognized.

Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Host Lock].

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Host Lock	Turns the USB Host lock function on/off

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	The USB Host lock function is available
Off	The USB Host lock function is not available

*: Initial setting: Off

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

5. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U222	Setting the IC card type
	(Message: Set IC Card Type)

Sets the ID card type

Purpose

Change the type of ID card

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Other	Select when the ID card type is other than SSFC.
SSFC	Select when the ID card type is SSFC.

*: Initial setting: Other

*: SSFC: Shared Security Formats Cooperation

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U223	Operation panel lock	
	(Message: Set Panel Operation Lock)	

Execute setting the operation panel function.

Purpose

Execute to prohibit the system menu and job cancel operations from the operation panel by the users other than those with administrator privileges.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	
Unlock	Unlock System Menu operation	
Partial Lock 1	Lock System Menu operation and Input/Output setting	
Partial Lock 2	Lock System Menu operation, Input/Output setting and Job execution setting	
Partial Lock 3	Lock System Menu operation, Input/Output setting, Job execution set- ting and Paper settings	
Lock	Lock System Menu operation and Job Cancel operation	

*: Initial setting: Unlock

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Operation item	Partial Lock 1	Lock
Entering the maintenance mode	Prohibition	Prohibition
Switching to System Menu	Prohibition	Prohibition
Send, Send from Document Box	Prohibition	Prohibition
Switches the Yellow developer On/Off setting	Prohibition	Prohibition
Switch to registration/editing Document Box	Prohibition	Prohibition
Pressing the [Stop] key	Permission	Prohibition
Pressing the [Status/Job Cancel] key	Permission	Prohibition
Disconnect the FAX line	Permission	Prohibition

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U224	Setting Original Panel Display
	(Message: Install Original Panel Display)

Description

Changes the image data and the message of the opening screen at the machine startup and theimage data and the message of the service call screen to user specified data.

Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

Setting

- 1. Write the image data or the message data to the USB memory.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3.Turn the power switch on.
- 4.Press the [Start] key.
- 5.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Install	Installs the image data or the message data
UnInstall	Restores the original image data or message data

6.Select the item to set.

Operation item Partial Lock 1		Lock	
Opening Img	Startup screen	Entire start display	
Call Img	Service call screen	Graphic display area	
Home Menu Img	Home Menu screen	Home Menu display area	
Call Msg Top	Service call message 1	Message display area (top)	
Call Msg Detail	Service call message 2	Message display area (descriptive area)	

7.Press the [Start] key.

*: Installation or uninstallation is started.

8. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Supplement 1: File information

Description	File name	Image size (in pixels)	File format
Startup screen	opening_ext_image.png	Length: 480 Width : 800	PNG
Service call screen	callwin_ext_image.png	Length: 200 Width : 180	PNG
Home Menu screen	menu_background.png	Length: 480 Width : 800	PNG
Service call message 1	callwin_ext_mes_top.txt	-	TEXT (Unicode)
Service call message 2	callwin_ext_mes_detail.txt	-	TEXT (Unicode)

Supplement 1: Displaying Startup screen

The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at power on or recovering from sleeping.

Graphics display on service call screen

The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at a service call.

How to change the message

Entering #562 (4 letters) using the numeric keypad during a service call screen display will be displayed service call messages 1 and 2.

How to reset the message display

Reverting the maintenance mode will automatically reset the message to the previous.

Caution

The graphics file for startup screen must be opaque. (To avoid the background from overlapping at recovering from sleeping.)

The total size of the files installable is approximately 4 MB.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U230	Optional device serial number
	(Message: Optional Device Serial No)

Displays the optional device serial number

Purpose

Specify the production lot from the serial number to make it help of investigation at problem occurrence.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the serial number.

Items	Contents
DP	Displays the document processor serial number.
Finisher	Displays the finisher serial number.
PF1	Displays the paper feeder 1 serial number.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U234	Setting destination for punch
	(Message: Set Punch Destination)

Contents

Sets destination of the punch unit for the finisher.

Purpose

Execute when installing the punch unit for the destination different from the main unit.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Destination].

Items	Contents
Auto	Match the destination setting.
Japan Metric	Japan metric
Inch	North American inch specification
Europe Metric	European metric

*: Initial setting: Japan Metric

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U237	Finisher eject volume limit
	(Message: Set Finisher Paper Stack Limit)

Sets the stacking count of the main tray and middle tray.

Purpose

Execute when stacking failure occurs.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Main Tray].

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Main Tray	Sets the main tray stack capacity	0 to 1	0
Middle tray	Sets the middle tray stack capacity	0 to 1	0

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

5. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Main trav input value	Main Tray	
Main tray input value	3000-sheet finisher	1000-sheet finisher
0	3000 sheets	1000 sheets
1	1500 sheets	500 sheets

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U240	Finisher operation check
	(Message: Check Finisher Operation)

Turn the finisher's motors and solenoids on.

Purpose

Execute for the finisher's motors and solenoids operation check.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to operate.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Motor	Finisher motor operation check
Solenoid	Finisher solenoid operation check
Mail Box	Mail Box motor operation check

Method: Motor

- 1.Select the item to operate.
- 2.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: The operation starts.

Items	Contents
Feed In(H)	Drive the DF paper entry motor at high speed.
Feed In(L)	Drive the DF paper entry motor at low speed.
Middle(H)	Drive the DF middle motor at high speed.
Middle(L)	Drive the DF middle motor at low speed.
Eject(H)	Drive the DF exit motor at high speed.
Eject(L)	Drive the DF exit motor at low speed.
Save(H) *1	Drives the DF relief drum motor at high speed
Save(L) *1	Drives the DF relief drum motor at low speed
Тгау	Drive the DF tray motor. Operation pattern: After descending to the lower limit, ascends and descends again when passing 1s after detecting the middle sensor off. ascends again when detecting the middle sensor on and stops at the upper limit.
Staple Move	Drive the DF slide motor.
Staple	Drive the DF staple motor.
Width Test(A3)	Drive the DF side registration motor 1, 2.
Width Test(LD)	Drive the DF side registration motor 1, 2.
Beat	Drive the DF paddle motor.
Eject Unlock(HP)	Drive the DF exit release motor at the home position.
Sort Test *1	Execute the DF shift operation.
Eject Unlock(30)	Drive the DF exit release motor at the 30-sheet bundle position

Items	Contents
Eject Unlock(50)	Drive the DF exit release motor at the 50-sheet bundle position
Eject Unlock(Fix)	Drive the DF exit release motor at the fixed position
Eject Unlock(Full)	Drive the DF exit release motor at the full open position
Punch	Drive the punch motor.
Punch Move	Drive the punch slide motor.
Eject Conv(H) *2	Drive the DF drum motor at high speed.
Eject Conv(L) *2	Drive the DF drum motor at low speed.

*1: 3000-sheet DF only, *2: 1000-sheet DF only

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Method: Solenoid

1.Select the item to operate.

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: The operation starts.

Items	Contents
Sub Tray *1	Turn the DF feed-shift solenoid 1 on
Save Drum *1	Turn the DF feed-shift solenoid 2 on
Punch	Turn the punch solenoid on

*1: 3000-sheet DF only

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Method: Mail Box

1.Select the item to operate.

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: The operation starts.

Items	Contents
Conv	Drives the MB drive motor to convey paper
Branch	Drives the MB drive motor for feed-shift

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U241	Finisher switch check
	(Message: Check Finisher Switches)

Displays the status of finisher's switches and sensors operation.

Purpose

Execute for the finisher's switches and sensors operation check.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to operate.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Finisher	Check the finisher switch and sensor operation.
Mail Box	Check the mail Box switch and sensor operation.
Punch	Check the punch unit switch and sensor operation.

Method: Finisher

1. Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

*: The switch indication is inversed when the switch is detected.

Items	Contents
Front Cover	DF front cover switch
Eject Cover *1	DF exit cover switch
Top Cover *2	DF top cover switch
Tray U-Limit	DF tray sensor 1
Tray HP2 *1	DF tray sensor 2
Tray Middle	DF tray sensor 3
Tray L-Limit	DF Tray sensor 4
Тгау Тор	DF tray upper side sensor
HP	DF paper entry sensor
Sub Tray Eject *1	DF sub tray exit sensor
Middle Tray Eject	DF middle exit sensor
Drum *1	DF drum sensor
Staple HP	DF slide sensor
Middle Tray	DF bundle exit sensor
Width Front HP	DF width adjustment 1
Width Tail HP	DF width adjustment 2
Bundle Eject HP	DF bundle exit sensor
Match Paddle	DF adjustment sensor
Lead Paddle	DF paddle sensor
Shift Front HP *1	DF shift sensor 1
Shift Tail HP *1	DF shift sensor 2
Shift Unlock HP *1	DF shift release sensor

Items	Contents
Sub Tray Full *1	DF sub tray full sensor
Shift Set *1	DF shift set sensor

*1: 3000-sheet DF only, *2: 1000-sheet DF only

Method: Mail Box

1. Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

*: The switch indication is inversed when the switch is detected.

Items	Contents
Eject	MB tray exit sensor
Cover	MB cover open close switch
Over Flow1	MB tray sensor 1
Over Flow2	MB tray sensor 2
Over Flow3	MB tray sensor 3
Over Flow4	MB tray sensor 4
Over Flow5	MB tray sensor 5
Over Flow 6	MB tray sensor 6
Over Flow 7	MB tray sensor 7
Motor HP	MB home position switch

Method: Punch

1. Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

*: The switch indication is inversed when the switch is detected.

Items	Contents
Punch HP	Punch home position sensor
Edge Face 1	Punch paper edge sensor 1
Edge Face 2	Punch paper edge sensor 2
Edge Face 3	Punch paper edge sensor 3
Edge Face 4	Punch paper edge sensor 4
Tank	Punch tank set switch
Tank Full	Punch tank full sensor

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U243	Checking the DP motor
	(Message: Check DP Motors)

Drive the motor of the document processor.

Purpose

Check the operation of the motor of the document processor.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to operate.

Items	Contents
Feed Motor *3	Drive the DP papaer feed motor for normal rotation
Conv Motor	DP conveying motor
Rev Motor *2	Drive DP feedshift motor.
Lift Motor *3	DP lift motor
Feed clutch *2	Drive DP feed clutch.
Regist clutch *2	DP registration clutch
Eject motor *3	DP eject motor
Regist Motor *1	DP registration motor
DP Fan *1	DP drive fan motor
CIS Fan *1	DP CIS fan motor

*1: DP-7110 only, *2: DP-7120 only, *3: Except DP-7120

3.Press the [Start] key. Each operation starts.

*: To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U244	DP switch check
	(Message: Check DP Switches)

Displays each switch and sensor status of the document processor.

Purpose

Execute to check the operation of switches and sensors of the document processor.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2. Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.
 - *: The switch indication is inversed when the switch is detected.

Items	Contents
Feed	Check DP feed sensor.
Regist	Check DP registration sensor.
Timing	Check DP timing sensor.
CIS Head *2	Check DP timing sensor.
Set	Check DP original detection sensor.
Longitudinal	Check DP original length sensor.
Lift U-Limit *3	Check DP lift upper limit sensor.
Lift L-Limit *3	Check DP lift lower limit sensor.
Cover Open	Check DP top cover switch.
Open	Check DP open/close switch.
Eject *3	Check DP eject sensor.
Branch Motor HP *1	Check DP feedshift sensor.

*1: DP-7100 only, *2: DP-7110 only, *3: Except DP-7120

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U245	Checking the message
	(Message: Check Display Message)

Displays messages indicated on the touch panel of the operation panel.

Purpose

Execute to check messages indicated.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

- 2.Using the $[\blacktriangle]$ [\checkmark] key, display messages in order.
 - *: Enter the message number using the numeric keys, then press the [Start] key to display the message of the designated number.
- 3.By using the [+] [-] keys key, switch the language.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U246	Finisher adjustment
	(Message: Adjust Finisher)

Execute adjustment for the finisher installation.

Purpose

Punch registration stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.

Adjust if paper skews or is folded in A z-shape in the punch mode.

Punch position stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.

Adjust if the punch hole position is not as specified in the punch mode.

Punch center position timing adjustment in the punch mode.

Adjust the punch center position if it is shifted in the punch mode.

Front/rear width adjuster home position adjustment

Adjust when the consistency of the side registration guides and paper is not good and paper jam occurs. Adjustment of front/rear shift home position

Performed when adjustment is lost with the ejected paper

Front/rear staple home position adjustment

Adjust if the staple is not centered on the paper in the staple mode.

Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position

Adjust when the consistency of the side registration guides and paper is not good and paper jam occurs.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Finisher	Setting the finisher adjustment value

Setting: Finisher

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Punch Regist	Punch registration stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.
Punch Feed	Punch position stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.
Punch Width	Punch center position timing adjustment in the punch mode.
Width Front HP	Front width adjuster home position adjustment
Width Tail HP	Rear width adjuster home position adjustment
Shift Front HP *1	Adjustment of front shift home position
Shift Tail HP *1	Adjustment of rear shift home position
Staple HP	Front/rear staple home position adjustment

*1: 3000-sheet DF only

Setting: Punch Regist

1.Select [Punch Regist].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Adjusting the punch registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	0 to 25 mm

*: Increase the value if paper is skewed (sample 1).

Reduce the set value if paper is folded in a Z-shape (sample2).



3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Punch Feed

1.Select [Punch Feed].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Adjusting the punch stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.52mm

*: Increase the specified value if the punch position is shorter than specified. Reduce the specified value if the punch position is longer than specified.



Preset value A: 13 mm (metric) 9.5 mm (inch)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Punch Width

1.Select [Punch Width].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Punch center position timing adjustment	-4 to 4	0	0.52 mm

*: Reduce the specified value if the punch position is shorter than specified. Increase the specified value if the punch position is longer than specified.



3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Width Front HP / Width Tail HP

1.Select [Width Front HP] or [Width HP].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Front width adjuster home position adjust- ment	-30 to 30	0	0.97mm
Rear width adjuster home position adjustment	-30 to 30	0	0.97mm

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

4.Press the [Stop] key to return to the screen to select the maintenance item No.

5.Enter U240 and select [Motor] and then [Width Test(A4R)].

*: The middle tray side registration guides move to A4R size position.

6.Insert paper into the side registration guides to check the consistence.

7.Repeat the above adjustment until the consistency is appropriate.

Setting: [Shift Front HP/Shift Tail HP]

1.Select [Shift Front HP] or [Shift Tail HP].

2.Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Adjustment of front shift home position	-30 to 30	0	0.97mm
Adjustment of rear shift home position	-30 to 30	0	0.97mm

3.Press the start key. The value is set.

4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [Motor], then [Sort Test].

6.Repeat the above adjustment until eject paper is properly in position.
Setting: Staple HP

1.Select [Staple HP].

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Content to adjust	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Front/rear staple home position adjustment	-30 to 30	0	0.97mm

*: Increase the set value if the staple position is shifted to the machine front side (sample1). Lower the set value if the staple position is shifted to the machine rear side (sample2).



3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U247	Paper feed operation check	
	(Message: Check Paper Feeder)	

Turn the motor and clutch power on for each feed unit.

Purpose

Execute to check motor and clutch operation of each feed unit.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to operate.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
2PF	Operates 2-tray paper feeder
LCF	Operate the high capacity feeder

Setting: 2PF

1.Select the item to set.

	Display	Contents
Motor	Off	PF paper feed motor OFF
	On	PF paper feed motor ON
Clutch	C1 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 1: ON
	C2 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 2: ON
	V Feed Clutch	PF vertical conveying clutch ON
	H Feed 1 Clutch	PF horizontal conveying clutch 1: ON
	H Feed 2 Clutch	PF horizontal conveying clutch 2: ON
	Cassette1 Solenoid	PF 1 solenoid ON
	Cassette2 Solenoid	PF 2 solenoid ON
Execute	·	Starts operation

2.Select [Execute].

3.Press the [Start] key. Starts the motor operation.

*: To stop the operation of the motor, press the [Stop] key.

Setting: LCF

1.Select the item to set.

	Display	Contents
Motor	Off	PF paper feed motor OFF
	On	PF paper feed motor ON
Clutch	C1 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 1: ON
	C2 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 2: ON
	V Feed Clutch	PF vertical conveying clutch ON
	H Feed 1 Clutch	PF horizontal conveying clutch 1: ON
	H Feed 2 Clutch	PF horizontal conveying clutch 2: ON
	Cassette1 Solenoid	PF 1 solenoid ON
	Cassette2 Solenoid	PF 2 solenoid ON
Execute	•	Starts operation

2.Select [Execute].

3.Press the [Start] key. Starts the motor operation.

*: To stop the operation of the motor, press the [Stop] key.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U250	Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set	
	(Message: Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set)	

Changes the pre-set values for the maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment.

Purpose

Change the timing to display the message for maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.
- 3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
M.Cnt A	Changes the maintenance counter (Kit A)	0 to 9999999	600000
M.Cnt HT	Change the maintenance counter preset value (HT adjustment)	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 1	Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 1)	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 2	Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 2)	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 3 *1	Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 3)	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 4 *1	Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 4)	0 to 9999999	150000

*1: 500 X 2 cassettes / 1500-sheet X 2 lines only

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U251	clearing the maintenance counter	
	(Message: Clear Maintenance Counter)	

Displays, clears or changes the maintenance count.

Purpose

Execute to check the maintenance count Also, clear the count at the maintenance.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting
		range
M.Cnt A	Maintenance cycle counter (Kit A)	0 to 9999999
M.Cnt HT	Maintenance cycle counter (HT adjustment)	0 to 9999999
Cassette 1	Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 1)	0 to 9999999
Cassette 2	Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 2)	0 to 9999999
Cassette 3 *1	Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 3)	0 to 9999999
Cassette 4 *1	Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 4)	0 to 9999999
Clear	Clears all the maintenance counts	0

*1: 500 X 2 cassettes / 1500-sheet X 2 lines only

Clearing

- 1.Select [Clear].
- 2.Press the [Start] key to clear the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U252	Destination	
	(Message: Set Destination)	

Switch the operations and screens of the main unit according to the destination.

Purpose

Execute after initializing the backup RAM, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Japan Metric *1	Japan metric
Inch *2	Inch
Europe Metric *2	Europe Metric
Asia Pacific *2	Asia Pacific
Australia *2	Australia
China *2	China
Korea *2	Korea

*1: 100 V model only, *2: Except 100 V model

- *: Initial setting: Destination
- 3.Press the [Start] key.

*: Initializes according to the destination

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

*: An error code is displayed when an error occurs.

When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U252.

Error codes

Items	Contents
0001	Controller (Entity Error)
0002	Controller error
0020	Engine error
0040	Scanner error

U253	Switching the double/single counts
	(Message: Set Double/Single Count)

Switches the count timing for the total counter and other counters by color mode.

Purpose

Select, according to user's request (copy service provider), if the maximum size paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count)

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Color] or [B/W].

Items	Contents
B/W	Switch the counter for B/W mode (Single/Double Count)

3.Select [SGL(All)] or [DBL(Folio)].

Items	Contents
SGL(AII)	Set single count for all the paper sizes
DBL(A3/Ledger)	Set double count for A3(420mm) size or larger
DBL(B4)	Set double count for larger than Legal(356mm) size
DBL(Folio)	Set double count for Folio size or larger *2

*: Initial setting: DBL(A3/Ledger)

*2: The Folio length can be set to between 330 and 356 mm using maintenance mode U035. However, the double count will be applied when the set value is 330mm (Initial value) or longer.

4. Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U260	Switching the timing for copy counting	
	(Message: Set Copy Count Mode)	

Switches the count timing for the total counter and other counters between paper feed and eject.

Purpose

Change the count timing according to the user's request

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Selects the copy count timing.

Items	Contents
Feed	When secondary paper feed starts.
Eject	Selects the paper eject timing

*: Initial setting: Eject

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U265	Setting by destination
	(Message: Set Model Destination)

Contents

Sets the OEM code.

Purpose

Execute when replacing the main PWB, etc.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents
No.	Displays the OEM code

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U278	Delivery date setting
	(Message: Set Delivery Date)

Registers the date of delivery of the machine.

Purpose

Execute when installing the machine. Execute to check the delivery date of the machine.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Today].
- 3.Press the [Start] key.
- *: Sets the delivery date of the machine.

Clearing

1.Select [Clear].

2.Press the [Start] key.

*: Clears the delivery date of the machine.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U285	Set Service Status Page
	(Message: Set Service Status Page)

Contents

Determines whether to display the digital dot coverage report on the report print.

Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Displays the digital dot coverage.
Off	Not to display the digital dot coverage.

*: Initial setting: On

3. Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Completion

4.Press the [Stop] key.

U286	Optional language setting
	(Message: Set Option Language)

Description

Add/delete/change the optional language

Purpose

Sets the optional languages selectable from System Menu

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Option Language 1	Optional language 1 setting
Option Language 2	Optional language 2 setting
Option Language 3	Optional language 3 setting
Option Language 4	Optional language 4 setting
Option Language 5	Optional language 5 setting

- *: Initial setting: On
- 3.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.
- 4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
ARABIC	Installed langauage list
CHINESE-S	
DANISH	
JAPANESE	
PORTUGUESE	
SWEDISH	
VIETNAMESE	
None	

*: Display varies depending on installed optional language package.

3.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Completion

- 4.Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U287	Automatic recovery function	
	(Message: Set Auto Reset Function)	

Description

Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the service call error

Purpose

Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the service call error or system error

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
COXXX	SETS WHETHER TO ENABLE THE AUTOMATIC RECOVERY FUNCTION AFTER THE SERVICE CALL ERROR
C1XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C1xxx code service call error
C2XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C2xxx code service call error
СЗХХХ	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C3xxx code service call error
C4XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C4xxx code service call error
C5XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C5xxx code service call error
C6XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C6xxx code service call error
C7XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C7xxx code service call error
C8XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C8xxx code service call error
C9XXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C9xxx code service call error
CFXXX	Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the CF code service call error

3.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Completion

4.Press the [Stop] key.

U326	Black line cleaning indication
	(Message: Set Black Line Clean Display)

Sets whether to indicate the black lines cleaning guidance when detecting black lines.

Purpose

Displays the cleaning guidance to reduce the service call with the black lines by dust on the contact glass when scanning from the document processor.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents	
Black Line Mode	Sets On/Off of the black line cleaning guidance indication	

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Indicate the black lines cleaning guidance
Off	Black line cleaning guidance is not indicated

*: Initial setting: On

4.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U327	Cassette heater control setting	
	(Message: Set Cassette Heater Control)	

Selects the cassette heater control setting.

Purpose

Selects the cassette heater control setting Sets if there is the cassette heater for the optional cassette.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Sets the cassette heater control On (installed).
Off	Sets the cassette heater control Off (not installed).

*: Initial setting: Off

*: Drum refresh is not executed at power-up when the cassette heater control is [On].

3.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U332	Adjusting the black coverage coefficient	
	(Message: Adjust Coverage Size Calculation Rate)	

Sets the coefficient of custom size with A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in the service status page.

Purpose

Set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for custom sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial set- ting
Rate	Set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for custom sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
Mode	Switch full-color count and color coverage count display	0: Full color 1: by coverage	0
Level1	Sets low coverage threshold value	0.1 to 99.8	1.0
Level2	Sets middle coverage threshold value	0.2 to 99.9	2.5

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U340	Setting the applied mode
	(Message: Set Applied Mode)

Description

Allocates memory to ensure that there is sufficient memory available for the printer to use as a working area.

Purpose

Modify the memory allocation if insufficient memory for transparency support or XPS direct printing occurs.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Adj Memory	Sets the memory allocation
Adj Max Job	Setting the maximum of multiple jobs
Adj Custom Box	Setting of the partition size of the Custom Box.
Adj Hypas Application Setting of the partition size of the Hypas Application.	

setting: Adj Memory

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Image	Area temporarily used to create output image.	-100 to 100(MB)	0

*: Set the values below in case print failure occurs with the memory shortage. (recommended value) Image : +100

*: The work area for copy is small and it may cause output failure if the values are large.

2.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: Adj Max Job

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Сору	Maximum copy (Scan To Print) Jobs	10 to 50	10
Printer	Maximum printer (Host To Print) Jobs	-	50

*: The maximum [Printer] jobs should be (maximum jobs) – (maximum copy jobs).

2.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

Setting: Custom Box / Hypas Application

- 1.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
HDD	Maximum copy (Scan To Print) Jobs
SSD	Maximum printer (Host To Print) Jobs

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents
Default Size	Display the initial setting of the partition size.
Size	Set the partition size.

4.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

5. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U341	Printer cassette setting	
	(Message: Set Printer Exclusive Cassette)	

Sets the cassette to printer output only.

Purpose

Execute it when securing a cassette for printer. The cassette set to on is for printer only and it cannot be used for copy.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: Multiple cassettes are selectable.

Items	Contents	
Cassette1	Setting cassette 1 to the printer paper source	
Cassette2	Setting cassette 2 to the printer paper source	
Cassette3	Setting cassette 3 to the printer paper source (paper feeder)	
Cassette 4	Setting cassette 4 to the printer paper source (paper feeder)	

*: Initial setting: Off (Cassette1?4)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U343	Duplex priority mode
	(Message: Set Duplex Priority Mode)

Switches between duplex or simplex copy for the initial copy mode.

Purpose

Sett the frequently used settings depending on the user's usage.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Duplex print priority is enabled
Off	Duplex print priority is disabled

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	
	(Message: Set Maintenance Time Soon Display)	

Contents

Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to reach, by setting the number of prints that can be made before the current maintenance cycle reaches. Displays the maintenance precaution message when the page count reaches the set value before the maintenance count.

Purpose

Change the time for maintenance precaution display.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial set- ting
Cnt	Setting the maintenance time precaution display (Remaining number of prints that can be made before the current maintenance cycle reaches)	0 to 9999	0
SSD Life	Setting the maintenance time precaution display for the SSD replacement.	0 to 99	5(%)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U346	Selecting Sleep Mode	
	(Message: Selecting Sleep Mode)	

Changes the sleep mode settings.

Purpose

Changes the sleep mode settings.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Timer/Sleep Level	BAM conformity country setting
Auto sleep	Switches AutoSleep function setting

Setting: Timer/Sleep Level

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
More Energy Save	BAM conformity setting On Sleep mode is disabled)
Less Energy Save	BAM conformity setting Off Sets Sleep Level (Quick Recovery or Energy Saver)

*: Initial setting: More Energy Save

2.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: Auto sleep

1.Select the item to set.

Items Contents	
On	The sleep mode is enabled from the system menu.
Off	The sleep mode is disabled from the system menu.

*: Initial setting: On

*: Peel off the energy saver label when setting it to off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U402	Adjusting the printing margins
	(Message: Adjust Print Margin)

Adjusts the scan image margins.

Purpose

- Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect
 - *: If the leading edge margin is less than the specified value, it may cause jam at the fuser.
 - *: If there is no bottom margin, when continuously printing, it may cause an image smudge on the second page.

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3. Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4. Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Lead	Adjusts the printer leading edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm
A Margin	Printer left margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
C Margin	Printer right margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
Trail	Printer trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.9	0.1 mm

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-17

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Appropriate margins are not obtained after this adjustment, execute the following maintenance mode. U034(P.1-3-36) > U402

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact
	glass
	(Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(Table))

Adjusts the margins for the table scanning.

Purpose

Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to adjust.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
A Margin	Adjusts the scanner left margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5mm
B Margin	Adjusts the scanner leading edge margin.	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5mm
C Margin	Adjusts the scanner right margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5mm
D Margin	Adjusts the scanner trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5mm

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.





7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.1-3-36) > U402(P.1-3-123) > U403

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the docu-
	ment processor
	(Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(DP))

Adjusts the margins for DP scanning.

Purpose

Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3.Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select the item to adjust.

Items Contents		Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
A Margin	Adjusts the DP left margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5mm
B Margin	Adjusts the DP leading edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5mm
C Margin	Sets the DP right margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5mm
D Margin	Adjusts the DP trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5mm
A Margin(Back) *1	Adjusts the DP left margin (2nd side)	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5mm
B Margin(Back) *1	Adjusts the DP leading edge margin (2nd side)	0.0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5mm
C Margin(Back) *1	Adjusts the DP right margin (2nd side)	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5mm
D Margin(Back) *1	Adjusts the DP trailing edge margin (2nd side)	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5mm

*1: Simultaneous duplex scan model only

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



Figure 3-19

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

 $\mathsf{U034}(\mathsf{P.1-3-36}) > \mathsf{U402}(\mathsf{P.1-3-123}) > \mathsf{U403}(\mathsf{P.1-3-124}) > \mathsf{U404}$

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U407	Adjusting the writing timing (Duplex/Reversal)
	(Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(DP))

Adjusts the writing timing when duplex printing.

Purpose

Adjusted when the back page image of duplex copying is printed in rotated 180 degrees from the scanner reading image (image on the memory)

Precautions

Adjust this after finishing the following maintenance modes. U034(P.1-3-36) > U402(P.1-3-123) > U66(P.1-3-47) > U403(P.1-3-124) > U71(P.1-3-51) > U404(P.1-3-125) > U407

Adjustment

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Press the [System Menu] key.

3. Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.

- 4.Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5.Select [Adj Data].

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Adj Data	Adjusts the leading edge timing when writing the image in the memory	-47 to 47	0	1dot

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

*: When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.

Leading edge registration of the copy image (+1.0/-1.5 mm or less)





7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically
	(Message: Half Tone Auto Adjustment)

Acquires the data for the automatic halftone adjustment and ID correction.

Purpose

Execute when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped

Adjustment

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Displays the execution information screen.
 - *: Test pattern 1 and Test pattern 2 are output on the A4 paper.
- 2.Set the test pattern output on the original glass with the arrow facing the rear side and print side facedown.
 - *: Load about 20 sheets of the blank paper on Test Pattern 1.



Figure 3-21

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: The first auto adjustment is executed.

4.Set the output Test Pattern 2 as the original.

*: Load about 20 sheets of the blank paper on Test Pattern 2.

- 5.Press the [Start] key.
- *: The second auto adjustment is executed.
- 6.[Finish] appears after normal completion.
- 7.An error code appears when an error occurs.

Error codes

Codes	Occurrence position	Contents	Re- adjust- ment
S001	Scanner	Original reference patch is not detected	Enable
S002		Original deviation is in excess in the main scan- ning direction	Enable
S003		Original deviation is in excess in the sub-scan- ning direction	Enable
S004		Original skew is in excess	Enable
S005		Original type error	Enable
SFFF		Other scanner error	Disable
E001	Engine	Engine status error	Disable
E002		Adjustment result error	Disable
EFFF		Other engine error	Disable
C001	Controller	Pause status	Disable
C002		Adjustment result error	Disable
C110		Adjustment value (increase amount) value error (black)	Disable
C210		Adjustment value (increase rate) error (black)	Disable
CFFF		Other controller error	Disable

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U411	Scanner auto adjustment
	(Message: Scanner Auto Adjustment)

Uses the specified originals and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.

Scanner section:Original size magnification, leading edge timing, center line, chromatic aberration in main/ sub scanning direction, MTF correction, color/monochrome input gamma, color correction matrix automatic adjustment

DP scanning section: Original size magnification, leading edge timing and center line, MTF correction, Input gamma, automatic adjustment of color correction matrix

Purpose

Automatically adjusts the scanner and the DP scanning sections.

Items	Items Use Contents Origina		Original for adjustment (P/N)
Table (Chart A)	In case of losing adjustment data, differing from the color tone extremely (not improve in case of executing U410) ISU(CCD unit), Optical LED lamp, Engine EEPROM, when replacing DP CIS Use when setting up DP or executing U021 initialization	Execute automatic adjusts the table scanning. Magnification in the sub scanning direction / Leading edge timing Center line / chromatic aberration Sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction gamma in color mode / color correc- tion matrix Input gamma in monochrome mode	7505000005
DP FU(ChartB) *1 DP FD(ChartB) *2	Use when setting up DP or executing U021 initialization	Execute the 1st side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning sec- tion. Execute the 2nd side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning sec- tion. Magnification in the sub-scanning direction Leading edge timing Center line Trailing edge timing	302AC68243

Items	Use	Contents	Original for adjustment (P/N)	
DP FU(ChartA) *1		Execute the 1st side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning sec- tion. Main scanning chromatic aberration / sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction gamma in color mode / color correc- tion matrix	7505000005	
DP FD(ChartA) *2		Execute the 2nd side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning sec- tion. Main scanning chromatic aberration / sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction gamma in color mode / color correc- tion matrix		
Target		Set-up for obtaining the target value	7505000005	
DP Auto Adj *1		Adjusting the document processor scanning section with the chart output by the local machine Magnification in the sub-scanning direction Leading edge timing Center line	Without Chart B, executed in a simplified manner.	

*1: DP installed machine only, *2: Simultaneous duplex scanning DP machine only

Method: Table (Chart A)

Automatic input of the target value

*: Usually, it adjusts here.

- 1.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) on the table.
- 2.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3.Select [Target].
- 4.Select [Auto].
- 5.Press the [Start] key.
- 6.Select [Table(ChartA)].

7.Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment. 8.When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

*: When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the table scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

Manual input of the target value

- 1.Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/ N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) on the table.
- 3.Enter maintenance item U411.

4.Select [Target].

- 5.Select [U425].
- 6.Press the [Start] key.
- 7.Select [Table(ChartA)].
- 8.Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9.When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

If the image position is shifted largely at the DP adjustment below, an error might occur when adjusting it with ChartA. First, use ChartB (image position) to adjust it and then use ChartA (color).

Method: DP FU (Chart B)

- *: Adjusting the first side of the DP duplex scanning
- 1.Set the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) face-up on the DP.
- 2.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3.Select [DP FU(ChartB)].
- 4.Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 5. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Method: DP FD (Chart B)

*: Adjusting the second side of the DP duplex scanning

- 1.Set the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) face-up on the DP.
- 2.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3.Select [DP FD(ChartB)].
- 4.Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 5. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Method: DP Auto Adj

- 1.Set A4/Letter paper.
- 2.Press the [Start] key to print the adjustment original.
- 3.Set the adjustment original output on the table and press the [Start] key.
- 4.Set the output adjustment original with face-up on the DP.
- 5.Press the [Start] key and scan the original.
- 6.Press the [Start] key to start the 1st side automatic adjustment.
- 7.Set the output adjustment original with face-down on the DP.
- 8.Press the [Start] key and scan the original.
- 9. Press the [Start] key to start the 2nd side automatic adjustment.

Method: DP FU (Chart A) Automatic input of the target value

1.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.

- 2.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3.Select [Target].
- 4.Select [Auto].
- 5.Press the [Start] key.
- 6.Select [DP FU(ChartA)].
- 7.Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment.
- 8. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.
- *: When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the DP scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

Manual input of the target value

- 1.Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/ N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.
- 3.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 4.Select [Target].
- 5.Select [U425].
- 6.Press the [Start] key.
- 7.Select [DP FU(ChartA)].
- 8.Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Method: DP FD (Chart A) Automatic input of the target value

1.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.

- 2.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3.Select [Target].
- 4.Select [Auto].
- 5.Press the [Start] key.
- 6.Select [DP FD(ChartA)].
- 7.Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment.
- 8.When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.
- *: When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the DP scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

Manual input of the target value

- 1.Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/ N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2.Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.
- 3.Enter maintenance item U411.
- 4.Select [Target].
- 5.Select [U425].
- 6.Press the [Start] key.
- 7.Select [DP FD(ChartA)].
- 8. Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9.When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.
 - *: When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If an error occurs during auto adjustment, error code "NGXX" is displayed and operation stops. In this case, check the error and execute the automatic adjustment again.

Error codes

Codes	Contents	Corrective action
00	Automatic adjustment success	-
01	Black band detection error (Table scanning leading edge skew in the sub-scanning direction)	 Set the original correctly and execute the adjustment again. Check lighting of the lamp or
04	Black band is not detected (Table leading edge in the sub-scanning direction)	replace it.
05	Black band is not detected (Table far end in the main scanning direction)	
06	Black band is not detected (Table near end in the main scanning direction)	
07	Black band is not detected (Table trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)	
08	Black band is not detected (DP far end in the main scanning direction)	1. Check the attachment position of DP.
09	Black band is not detected (DP near end in the main scanning direction)	 Check lighting of the lamp or replace it. Check the back and front of the
0a	Black band is not detected (DP leading edge in the sub-scanning direction)	adjustment original.
0b	Black band is not detected (Original check of DP leading edge in the sub-scanning direction)	
0c	Black band is not detected (DP trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)	
0d	White band is not detected (DP trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)	

Codes	Contents	Corrective action	
0e	DMA time out	Turn the power switch off then on, and execute again.	
Of	Magnification error in the sub-scanning direction	 Turn the power switch off then on, and execute again. 	
10	Leading edge error in the sub-scanning direction	2. Adjust manually. (U065 to U067, U070 to U072)	
11	Trailing edge error in the sub-scanning direction		
12	DP skew error in the sub-scanning direc- tion		
13	Maintenance request error	Turn the power switch off then on, and execute again.	
14	Center line error in the main scanning direction	1. Turn the power off and on, and execute again.	
15	DP skew error in the main scanning direc- tion	2. Adjust manually. (U065 to U067, U070 to U072)	
16	Magnification error in the main scanning direction		
17	Service call error	Turn the power off and on, and exe- cute again.	
18	DP paper jam error	Set the original correctly and exe- cute again.	
19	PWB replacement error	-	
1a	Original error	 Clean the contact glass and slit glass. Exchange the adjustment origi- nal. 	
1b	Input gamma adjustment original error	Set the original correctly and exe-	
1c	Matrix adjustment original error	cute again.	
1d	Original for the white reference correction coefficient error		
1e	Lab value detection error	Check the following and execute again. Is the bar code dirty? Is the original position correct? Is the bar code position correct?	
1f	Lab value comparison error	Check the following and execute again. Is the acquired bar code the same? Is the original position correct? Is the bar code position correct?	

Codes	Contents	Corrective action
20	Input gamma correction coefficient error	Set the original correctly and exe-
21	Color correction matrix coefficient error	cute again.
30	Chromatic aberration adjustment original error	
63	Completed to obtain the test RAW	-

Completion Press the [Stop] key. *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U415	Adjusting the print position automatically (Message: Print Position Auto Adjust)
	Description
	Execute the automatic adjustment of the timing at the print engine
	Adjusting the leading edge timing, enter line and margins
	Purpose
	Used to make respective auto adjustments for the print engine.
	*: * Execute this mode in a simplified manner when the Chart B(302AC68243) is not available.
	Method

- Method
 - 1.Set A3/Ledger paper.
 - *: Load A4/Letter when the large capacity feeder is used.
 - 2.Press the [Start] key.
 - 3.Select [Execute].
 - 4.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: A test pattern is outputted.
 - 5.Set the output Test Pattern as the original.
 - 6.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Automatically perform adjustment from the top to bottom cassettes.
 - 7. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.
 - *: An error code appears when there is an error.

Error codes list

Display	Contents	Display	Contents
S001	Black band is not detected (main scanning direction far end)	C101	Adjustment value error (main scanning direction magnification)
S002	Black band is not detected (main scanning direction near end)	C102	Adjustment value error (auxiliary scanning direction magnification)
S003	Black band is not detected (auxil- iary scanning direction leading edge)	C103	Adjustment value error (leading edge timing)
S004	Black band is not detected (auxil- iary scanning direction trailing edge)	C104	Adjustment value error (center line)
S005	Auxiliary scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)	C105	Adjustment value error (B margin)
S006	Main scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)	C106	Adjustment value error (A margin)
S007	Original error (detection of reverse original paper)	C107	Adjustment value error (C margin)
S008	Original error (page mismatch)	C108	Adjustment value error (D margin)
SFFF	Other scanner error	CFFF	Other controller error

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U425	Set Target
	(Message: Set Target Adjustment Value)

Description

Enter the Lab values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original (P/N: 7505000005). **Purpose**

Enter data in order to correct for differences in originals during the automatic adjustment

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
ChartA	Setting the adjustment value of the table scanning
ChartB	Sets the adjustment value of the DP scanning

Method: ChartA

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
White	Setting the white patch for the adjustment original
Black	Setting the black patch for the adjustment original
Gray1	Setting the Gray1 patch for the adjustment original
Gray2	Setting the Gray2 patch for the adjustment original
Gray3	Setting the Gray3 patch for the adjustment original
С	Setting the cyan patch for the adjustment original
м	Setting the magenta patch for the adjustment original
Y	Setting the yellow patch for the adjustment original
R	Setting the red patch for the adjustment original
G	Setting the green patch for the adjustment original
В	Setting the blue patch for the adjustment original
Adjust Original	Setting the main scanning and sub-scanning directions

Setting: White

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	93.6	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	0.9	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-0.4	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Black

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	10.6	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-0.2	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-0.7	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Gray1

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	76.2	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-0.2	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	1.2	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Gray2

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	25.2	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-0.2	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-0.2	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Gray3

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	51.3	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-0.3	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	0.3	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
Setting: C

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	72.6	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-32.8	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-11.5	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: M

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	48.1	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	69.9	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-6.1	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Y

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	86.2	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-18.6	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	81.7	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: R

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	46.7	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	54.2	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	38.6	-

Setting: G

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	67.8	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	-51.3	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	48.9	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: B

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
L	L parameter setting	0.0 to 100	38.8	-
а	A value setting	-200 to 200	25.3	-
b	B value setting	-200 to 200	-22.8	-

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Adjust Original

*: This setting is usually unnecessary.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Lead	Set the adjustment value of the leading edge.	4.0 to 6.0	5.0	0.1mm
Main Scan	Sets the adjustment value of the left edge.	9.0 to 11.0	10.0	0.1mm
Sub Scan	Set the adjustment value of the trailing edge.	189.0 to 191.0	190.0	0.1mm

1.Measure the distances "A", "B" and "C" from the upper edge of black belt 1 to the lower edge of black belt 3 of the adjustment original.

Measurement procedure

1) Measure the distance "A", "B" and "C" between two points as follows. (A: 30mm from the left edge, B: 105mm from the left edge, C: 180mm from the left edge)

?Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top edge of black belt 1.

2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: ((A+B+C)/3)

2.Enter the value solved in "Lead" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

4.Measure the distance "F" from the left edge to the right edge of black belt 2 on the adjustment original. Measurement procedure

Measure the distance "F" from the left edge at 21mm from the top edge of black belt 1to the right edge of black belt 2.

5. Enter the values measured in "Main Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.

7.Measure the distance "D" and "E" from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at two positions.

Measurement procedure

1) Measure the distance "D" and "E" between two points as follows. (D: Measure the distance from the leading edge to the trailing edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at 30mm of the left edge and deduct A. E: Measure the distance from the leading edge to the trailing edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at 180mm of the left edge and deduct C.)

2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: (D/2+E/2)

8.Enter the value solved in "Sub Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.



Setting: DP(ChartB)

*: This setting is usually unnecessary.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Lead	Set the adjustment value of the leading edge.	14.0 to 16.0	15.0	0.1mm
Main Scan	Sets the adjustment value of the left edge.	14.0 to 16.0	15.0	0.1mm
Sub Scan	Set the adjustment value of the trailing edge.	388.0 to 392.0	390.0	0.1mm

1.Measure the distance "A" from the leading edge to the black belt (inside) on the adjustment original. 2.Enter the value measured in "Lead" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.

3.Measure the distance "B" from the left edge to the black belt (inside) on the adjustment original.

4.Enter the values measured in "Main Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.

5.Measure the distance "C" from the leading black belt (inside) to the trailing black belt (inside) on the adjustment original.

6.Enter the values measured in "Sub Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.



Original for adjustment Chart 2-2 (P/N: 302AC68243)

Figure 3-23

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U470	Setting the JPEG compression rate
	(Message: Adjust JPEG Compression Rate)

Sets the JPEG compression rate by image mode.

Purpose

Change the setting depending on the image desired by the user. Lower the set value to reduce the image roughness by changing the compression rate in case of 200% or more of the enlarged copy. If the set value is reduced, compression is high and image quality is lowered. If the set value is increased, image quality is improved but processing speed is slower.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Сору	Compression rate of the copy
Send	Compression rate of the Send
System	Compression rate of the temporary saving in the system
Print	Compression rate for printer

Method: Copy

1.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Photo	Compression rate of the photo mode
Text	Compression rate of the text mode

Setting: Photo

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Luminance	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 10	1 to 0
Chrominance	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 10	1 to 0

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Text

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Luminance	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 10	1 to 0
Chrominance	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 10	1 to 0

Method: Send

1.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Photo	Compression rate of the photo mode
Text	Compression rate of the text mode
HC-PDF(BG)	Sets the compression rate for high compression PDF
HC-PDF(Char)	Set the compression rate for High compression PDF (text color).
HC-PDF(File Size)	Set the compression rate for High compression PDF (compression prior- ity).

Setting: Photo

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Y1	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	30(%)
Y2	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	40(%)
Y3	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	51(%)
Y4	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	70(%)
Y5	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	90(%)
CbCr1	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	30(%)
CbCr2	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	40(%)
CbCr3	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	51(%)
CbCr4	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	70(%)
CbCr5	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	90(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Text

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting	Initial setting
		range	
Y1	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	30(%)
Y2	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	40(%)
Y3	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	51(%)
Y4	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	70(%)
Y5	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	90(%)
CbCr1	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	30(%)
CbCr2	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	40(%)

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
CbCr3	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	51(%)
CbCr4	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	70(%)
CbCr5	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	90(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: HC-PDF(BG)

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Y1	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	15(%)
Y2	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	25(%)
Y3	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	90(%)
CbCr1	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	15(%)
CbCr2	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	25(%)
CbCr3	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	90(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: HC-PDF(Char)

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Y1	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	15(%)
Y2	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	75(%)
Y3	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	90(%)
CbCr1	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	15(%)
CbCr2	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	75(%)
CbCr3	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	90(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: HC-PDF(File Size)

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Y1	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	15(%)
Y2	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	25(%)
Y3	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	75(%)
CbCr1	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	15(%)
CbCr2	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	25(%)

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
CbCr3	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	75(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: System

1.Select the item to set.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Y	Compression rate of the brightness	1 to 100	90(%)
CbCr	Compression rate of the color difference	1 to 100	90(%)

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Supplement

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U485	Image process mode setting
	(Message: Set Image Process Mode)

Sets the PDF image rotation.

Purpose

Change the PDF image rotation setting.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

Items	Contents
PDF Rotation	Rotate the PDF image

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

setting	Contents			
0	The image rotation is designated to the internal parameter			
1	The image rotation is designated to the actual image			
2	The image rotation is designated to the internal parameter (CTM rotation)			

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U520 TDRS setting (Message: Set TDRS)

Contents

Checks/sets the TDRS

Purpose

Execute to check/set the TDRS

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents		
Registration	Changes to the TDRS Manager registration dialog		
Information	Transition to the Device Agent description dialog		
On/Off Config	Changes to the TDRS features setting dialog		

Setting: Registration

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
TDRS User	Registering process for user and password
Access Code	Registers Access Code
TDRS User & Access Code	Registering the user, password and access code

Setting: TDRS User / Access Code / TDRS User & Access Code

4.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents	
Regist	Registers in the TDRS Manager	
TDRS Server	Sets the TDRS server URL	
TDRS User	Sets the TDRS Username	
Access Code	Sets the TDRS access code	
Proxy Server	Sets the TDRS proxy server URL	
Proxy Port	Sets the TDRS proxy port number	
Proxy User	Sets the TDRS proxy username	
Text	Sets the TDRS description	

*: [Regist] is not executable if a USB memory is not installed.

*: When the USB memory is inserted, TDRS information is automatically retrieved and displayed. After obtaining the TDRS information, select [Regist] and then register the TDRS information by pressing the [OK] or [Start] key.

*: After the normal completion, [Complete] is indicated in the status information of the item that was performed.

When an error occurs, the following numbers are indicated in the status information of the item that has been operated.

*: If [User/Processing Registration using a Password] is selected in the previous dialog, the "TDRS User" will be indicated.

If [Processing Registration using an Access Code] is selected, the "Access Code" will be indicated.

Error codes

Items	Contents	Items	Contents
e0001	HDD is unavailable.	t0001	Fatal error
e0002	The USB memory is unavailable.	t0002	Error in processing the network
e0003	The file to import does not exist in the USB memory.	t0003	An illegal parameter error
e0004	Reading from the USB memory has failed.	t0004	Insufficient resource
e0005	Unmounting the USB memory has failed.	t0005	Communication error
e0006	Moving or renaming the file has failed.	t0006	Error in processing communica- tion.
e0007	Opening the file has failed.	t0007	Login error
e0008	Closing the file has failed.	t0008	External error
e0009	Error in reading the file	t0009	Authentication error
e000A	Copying the file has failed.	t000A	HTTP error: Request error
e000B	Opening the directory has failed.	t000B	HTTP error: Error due to the server
e000C	Creating the working directory has failed.	t000C	HTTP error: Error due to the client.
e000D	Deleting the working file has failed.		

Setting: Information

1.Displays the set contensts

Items	Contents	
Agent ID	Agent ID	
Agent Type	Agent Type	
Model	Display of the model name	
Serial No Display of the machine serial number		
Offline	Display of the TDRS connection state	

Setting: On/Off Config

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Enables TDRS
Off	Disables TDRS

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U600	Initialize: All Data	
	(Message: Initialize: All Data)	

Initializes software switches, and all data and image memory in the backup data on the FAX PWB according to the destination and OEM setting.

Initializes the file system and then initializes the communication record and the registered contents if the file system is checked and an error is detected there.

Purpose

Initialize the FAX PWB

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Execute].
 - *: The screen for entering the destination code and OEM code is displayed.

Items	Contents	
Execute	Executing data initialization	

3.Select [Country Code] and enter a destination code using the numeric keys.

*: Refer to the following destination code list.

Items	Contents
Country Code	Setting Destination code
OEM Code	Sets the OEM code

- *: No need to change the default value of [OEM Code].
- 4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
 - *: Data initialization starts.
 - Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.
- 5. The firmware version is displayed after the data initialization.

The firmware version of 3 types of application, boot and IPL is displayed.

*: When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

*: Where an irregular value is input, when it initializes, the following errors are displayed.

Kind of error	
Unknown Country (When Country Code is unknown)	
Unknown OEM (When OEM Code is unknown)	
Unknown Country (When both are unknown)	

Destination code list

Destina- tion code	Destination	Destina- tion code	Destination
000	Japan	253	CTR21 (European nations)
007	Argentina	↑	?Italy
009	Australia	↑	?Germany
022	Brazil	↑	?Spain
038	China	Ŷ	?U.K.

Destina- tion code	Destination	Destina- tion code	Destination
080	Hong Kong	1	?Netherlands
084	Indonesia	↑	?Sweden
088	Israel	↑	?France
097	Korea	↑	?Austria
181	U.S.A.	↑	?Switzerland
250	Russia	↑	?Belgium
108	Malaysia	↑	?Denmark
115	Mexico	↑	?Finland
126	New Zealand	↑	?Portugal
136	Peru	↑	?Ireland
137	Philippines	↑	?Norway
152	Middle East	254	Taiwan
156	Singapore		
159	South Africa		
169	Thailand		

U601	Initialize: Keep data	
	(Message: Initialize: Keep Data)	

Initializes software switches other than the machine data on the FAX PWB according to the destination and OEM setting.

Purpose

Initialize the FAX PWB without changing the user registration data and the factory defaults

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Execute].
 - *: The screen for entering the destination code and OEM code is displayed.

Items	Contents	
Execute	Executing data initialization	

3.Select [Country Code].

4.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

*: Refer to the destination code list. (P.1-3-151See page)

Items	Contents
Country Code	Setting Destination code
OEM Code	Sets the OEM code

*: No need to change the default value of [OEM Code].

5.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: Data initialization starts.

Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.

6. The firmware version is displayed after the data initialization.

The firmware version of 3 types of application, boot and IPL is displayed.

*: When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

U603	User data 1
	(Message: User Data 1)

Sets the line type for FAX use

Purpose

Execute as required

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Line Type].

Items	Contents
Line Type	Line Type

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
DTMF	DTMF
10PPS	10PPS
20PPS	20PPS

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U604	User data 2
	(Message: User Data 2)

Sets the number of rings for the automatic FAX/telephone switching for FAX use

Purpose

Adjust the number of rings to longer or shorter at the automaric FAX/telephoe switching

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Rings(F/T)].

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Rings (F/T)	Number of fax/telephone rings	0 to 15	-

*: If the default is set to "0", the main unit will start FAX reception without any ringing.

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U605	Data clear (Message: Clear Data)

Contents

Initializes data related to the fax transmission such as transmission history or various ID.

Purpose

Clear the communication history

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [Clear Com.Rec.].

Items	Contents
Clear Com.Rec.	Delete data of communication history and protocol list of displayed port

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U610	System 1
	(Message: System Setting 1)

Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification and in the auto reduction mode.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Cut Line: 100%	Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification.
Cut Line: Auto	Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the auto reduction mode.
Cut Line: A4	Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax (A4R/Let- terR) in the auto reduction mode.

Setting: Cut Line(100%)

Sets the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when recording the data at 100% magnification.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If it is over the setting, they are recorded on the next page.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification.	0 to 22	3	-

*: Increase the setting value if a blank second page is output in the full magnification reception. Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image.

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Cut Line: Auto

Set the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when the data is recorded in the auto reduction mode.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If over the setting, the entire data on a page is further reduced so that it can be recorded on the same page.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the auto reduction mode.	0 to 22	0	-

*: Increase the setting value if a page received in the reduction mode is reduced too much with the trailing edge margin. Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image. 2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Setting: Cut Line: Auto

Set the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when the data is recorded in the auto reduction mode onto A4R or Letter R paper.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If over the setting, the entire data on a page is further reduced so that it can be recorded on the same page.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the A4R auto reduction mode.	0 to 22	0	-

*: Increase the setting value if a page received in the reduction mode is reduced too much with the trailing edge margin. Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image.

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U611	System 2
	(Message: System Setting 2)

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

Purpose

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
ADJ LINES	Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.
ADJ LINES(A4)	Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when A4 paper is set.
ADJ LINES(LT)	Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set.

Setting: ADJ LINES

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.	0 to 22	7	-

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: ADJ LINES(A4)

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when A4 paper is set.	0 to 22	22	-

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: ADJ LINES(LT)

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set.	0 to 22	26	-

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U612	System 3
	(Message: System Setting 3)

Sets the FAX operation and automatic printing of the protocol list.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Auto reduct	Selects auto reduction in the sub-scanning direction
Protocol List	Sets the automatic protocol list printing.

Setting: Auto Reduct

Sets whether to receive a long document by automatically reducing it in the sub-scanning direction or at 100% magnification.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Auto reduction is executed if the received document is longer than the FAX paper.
Off	Auto reduction is not performed.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Protocol List

Sets the automatic protocol list printing.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Off	The protocol list is not printed out automatically.
Err	Automatically printed if a communication error occurs.
On	Automatically printed out after communication.

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U615	System 6
	(Message: System Setting 6)

Sets the record width capacity and process if 11 inch width paper is set for the inch specification machine

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
RX WIDTH FOR 11"	

Setting: RX WIDTH FOR 11"

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
LEDGER	Transmits the A3 width to the destination machine
B4	Transmits the B4 width to the destination machine

*: Initial setting: LEDGER

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U620	FAX system
	(Message: FAX System)

Sets the signal detection method for remote switching.

Change the setting according to the type of telephone connected to the main unit.

Purpose

Sets the remote switching conditions according to the user's telephone type, preference, etc.

Setting

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Remote Mode] and press the [Start] key.

Items	Contents
Remote Mode	Setting the remote switching mode

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
One	Sets the one-shot type detection
Cont	Sets the continuous type detection

*: Initial setting: One

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U625	Communication settings
	(Message: Set Communication)

Sets the auto redialing interval and the number of times of auto redialing.

Purpose

FAX transmission may not be available if redialing interval is short. If long, it takes much time to complete transmission. Changes the setting to prevent the following problems.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Interval	Sets the auto redialing interval
Times	Sets the number of times of auto redialing

Setting: Interval

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Sets the redialing interval	1 to 9 minutes	3 min-	-
		utes	

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Times

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data varia- tion
Sets the number of times of redialing	0 to 15 times	3 times	-

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U630	Communication control procedures 1
	(Message: Communication Control 1)

Sets the FAX communication.

Purpose

Sets the following to correspond to field claims

Reducing the transmission time to improve the accuracy of reception when using a low quality line Improving the accuracy of communication during the international communication

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
TX Speed	Sets the communication starting speed.
RX Speed	Sets the reception speed.
TX Echo	Sets the waiting period to prevent echo problems at the sender.
RX Echo	Sets the reception speed.

Setting: TX Speed

Sets the transmission speed of the sender. When the destination unit has the V.34 capability, V.34 is selected for transmission regardless of this setting.

1.Select the communication speed.

Items	Contents
14400bps/V17	V.17 14400bps
9600bps/V29	V.29 9600bps
4800bps/V27ter	V.27ter 4800bps
2400bps/V27ter	V.27ter 2400bps

*: Initial setting: 14400bps/V17

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: RX Speed

Sets the reception capacity to advise the transmitter by the DIS/NSF signal. When the destination unit has the V.34 capability, V.34 is selected for transmission regardless of this setting.

1.Select the reception speed.

Items	Contents
14400bps	V.17, V.33, V.29, V.27ter
9600bps	V.29, V.27ter
4800bps	V.27ter
2400bps	V.27ter (fallback only)

*: Initial setting: 14400bps

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: TX Echo

Sets the time to send the DCS signal after the DIS signal is received. Execute when an error occurs with echo at the transmitter side.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
500	Sends the DCS 500 ms after receiving a DIS.
300	Sends the DCS 300 ms after receiving a DIS.

*: Initial setting: 300

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: RX Echo

Sets the time to send the NSF, CSI or DIS signal after the CED signal is received. Execute when an error occurs with echo at the receiver side.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
500	Sends the NSF, CSI or DIS 500ms after receiving the CED.
75	Sends the NSF, CSI or DIS 75ms after receiving the CED.

*: Initial setting: 75

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U631	Communication control procedures 2	
	(Message: Communication Control 2)	

Sets the FAX communication.

Purpose

Sets the transmission and reception of ECM Sets the CED frequency

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
ЕСМ ТХ	Sets ECM transmission.
ECM RX	Sets ECM reception.
CED Freq	The frequency of CED is set up.

Setting: ECM TX

Set to OFF when the reduction of transmission costs is of higher priority than image quality.

- *: Do not set it to Off when connecting to the IP telephone line.
- 1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	ECM transmission is enabled.
Off	ECM transmission is disabled.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

*: Completed is displayed.

Setting: ECM RX

Set to OFF when the reduction of transmission costs is of higher priority than image quality.

*: Do not set it to OFF when connecting to the IP (Internet Protocol) telephone line.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	ECM reception is enabled.
Off	ECM reception is disabled.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: CED Freq

Sets the CED frequency. Execute it as one of the communication accuracy improvement measures for the international communication.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
2100	2100Hz
1100	1100Hz

*: Initial setting: 2100

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U632	Communication control procedures 3
	(Message: Communication Control 3)

Sets the FAX communication.

Purpose

Reducing the error communication when using a low quality line Corresponds to field claims when automatic FAX/telephone switching

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 1.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
DIS 4Byte	Sets the DIS signal to 4 bytes.
Num OF CNG(F/T)	Sets the number of the CNG detection in the automatic FAX/telephone switching mode.

Setting: DIS 4Byte

Sets whether to send bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal are not sent.
Off	Bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal are sent.

*: Initial setting: Off

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Num OF CNG(F/T)

Sets the CNG detection times in the automatic FAX/telephone switching mode.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
1Time	Detects CNG once.
2Time	Detects CNG twice.

*: Initial setting: 1Time (100V model)/2Time (Others)

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U633 Communication control procedures 4 (Message: Communication Control 4)

Contents

Sets the FAX communication.

Purpose

Reducing the error communication when using a low quality line

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
V.34	Enables or disables the V.34 communication.
V.34-3429Hz	Sets the V.34 symbol speed (3429 Hz).
DIS 2Res	Sets the number of times of DIS signal reception.
RTN Check	Sets the reference for the RTN signal output.

Setting: V.34

Sets whether to enable/disable the V.34 communication individually for transmission and reception.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	V.34 communication is enabled for both transmission and reception.
тх	V.34 communication is enabled for transmission only.
RX	V.34 communication is enabled for reception only.
Off	V.34 communication is disabled for both transmission and reception.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: V.34-3429Hz

Sets if the V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is used.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is used.
Off	V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is not used.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: DIS 2Res

Sets the number of times to receive the DIS signal to once or twice. Execute it as one of the corrective measures for transmission errors and other problems.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Once	Responds to the first signal.
Twice	Responds to the second signal.

*: Initial setting: Once

1.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: RTN Check

Sets the error line rate to be a reference to the RTN signal transmission. If transmission errors occur frequently due to the line quality, lower this setting to reduce them.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
5%	Error line rate of 5%
10%	Error line rate of 10%
15%	Error line rate of 15%
20%	Error line rate of 20%

*: Initial setting: 15%

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U634	Communication control procedures 5
	(Message: Communication Control 5)

Sets the maximum number of error bytes judged acceptable when receiving a TCF signal. Execute it as one of measures to ease transmission conditions if transmission errors occur.

Purpose

*: Relax the communication conditions

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select [TCF Check].

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
TCF Check	Sets the allowed error bytes when detect- ing the TCF signal	1 to 255	0

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U640	Communication time setting 1
	(Message: Communication Time 1)

Sets the detection time when one-shot detection is selected for remote switching.

Sets the detection time when continuous detection is selected for remote switching.

Purpose

Sets the remote switching conditions according to the user's telephone type, preference, etc.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Time(One)	Sets the one-shot detection time for remote switching.	0 to 255	7 1 (New Zealand)
Time (Cont)	Sets the continuous detection time for remote switching.	0 to 255	80

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U641	Communication time setting 2
	(Message: Communication Time 2)

Sets the time-out time for the fax communication.

Purpose

Mainly, executed to improve the accuracy of communication for international communication

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
T0 TIME OUT	Sets the T0 time-out time.
T1 TIME OUT	Sets the T1 time-out time.
T2 TIME OUT	Sets the T2 time-out time.
Ta TIME OUT	Sets the Ta time-out time.
Tb1 TIME OUT	Sets the Tb1 time-out time.
Tb2 TIME OUT	Sets the Tb2 time-out time.
Tc TIME OUT	Sets the Tc time-out time.
Td TIME OUT	Sets the Td time-out time.

Setting: T0 Time Out

Sets the time before detecting a CED or DIS signal after a dialing signal is sent.

Sets to prevent disconnection of a line that occurs depending on the quality of the exchange, or when the destination unit sets the auto switching function.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the T0 time-out time.	30 to 90 (s)	56 58 (100V model)

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: T1 Time Out

Sets the time before receiving the correct signal after call reception. *This setting is usually unnecessary.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the T1 time-out time.	30 to 90 (s)	36 38 (100V model)

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: T2 Time Out

The T2 time-out time is specified as follows. From CFR signal output to image data reception From image data reception to the next signal reception In ECM, from RNR signal detection to the next signal reception

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the T2 time-out time.	1 to 255	69

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Ta Time Out

Sets the time to start ringing for an operator through the external telephone after receiving a call in the FAX/ telephone automatic switching mode. (See figure 1-3-18). If either receiving a FAX signal within this time or passing this time, the mode automatically switches to the FAX reception mode. Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the Ta time-out time.	1 to 255 s	30

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.



Figure 3-24 Ta/Tb1/Tb2 time-out time

Setting: Tb1 Time Out

Sets the time to start sending the ring back tone after receiving a call as a fax machine in the FAX/telephone automatic switching mode, (See figure 1-3-18). Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the Tb1 time-out time.	1 to 255	20

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Tb2 Time Out

Sets the time to start ringing for an operator through the external telephone after receiving a call in the FAX/ telephone automatic switching mode. (See figure 1-3-27). Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the Tb2 time-out time.	1 to 255	80

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Tc Time Out

In the TAD mode, set the time to check if there are any triggers for shifting to FAX reception after a connected handset receives a call. Unless switched to FAX reception during this period, operated as a normal phone after this.

In the TAD mode, change the setting when fax reception is unsuccessful or a telephone fails to receive a call.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the Tc time-out time.	1 to 255 s	60

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Td Time Out

Sets the length of time to determine silent status, one of the triggers for Tc time check.

In the TAD mode, change the setting when fax reception is unsuccessful or a telephone fails to receive a call. Be sure not to set too short, otherwise the mode may be switched to fax while the unit is being used as a telephone.

1.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sets the Td time-out time.	1 to 255	6 30 (100V model) 9 (120V model)

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.
U650	Modem 1
	(Message: Modem 1)

Sets the G3 cable equalizer. Sets the modem detection level.

Purpose

Adjusts the equalizer to be compatible with the line characteristics Set to Improve the accuracy of communication when using a low quality line

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Reg G3 TX Eqr	Sets the G3 transmission cable equalizer.
Reg G3 RX Eqr	Sets the G3 reception cable equalizer.
RX Mdm Level	Sets the modem detection level.

Setting: Reg G3 TX Eqr

1.Select [0dB], [4dB], [8dB] or [12dB].

*: Initial setting: 0dB

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Reg G3 RX Eqr

1.Select [0dB], [4dB], [8dB] or [12dB].

*: Initial setting: 0dB

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: RX Mdm Level

1.Select [-33dBm], [-38dBm], [-43dBm] or [-48dBm].

*: Initial setting: -43dBm

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U651	Modem 2
	(Message: Modem 2)

Sets the modem output level.

Purpose

Adjust to make the equalizer compatible with the line characteristics when installing the main unit

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting
Sgl LVL Modem	Sets the modem output level	-15 to 0	11 10 (100V model) 12 (Australia)
DTMF LEV (Cent)	DTMF output level (center value)	-15.0 to 0.0	-8 -9 (100V model) -7 (Australia) -6 (120V model)
DTMF LEV (Diff)	Sets the DTMF output level (level difference)	0 to 5.5	2 1.5 (Australia) 1 (New Zealand)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U660	Ring setting
	(Message: Set Calls)

Sets the NCU (network control unit).

Purpose

Execute as required

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to set.

*: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Exchange	Setting the PBX/PSTN connection
Dial Tone	Sets the PSTN dial tone detection.
Busy Tone	Sets the busy tone detection.
PBX Setting	Setting the PBX connection
DC Loop	Sets the loop current detection before dialing.

Setting: Exchange

Selects if the FAX is connected to either a PBX or public switched telephone network.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
PSTN	Connected to the public switched telephone network.
РВХ	Connecting to the PBX

*: Initial setting: PSTN

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Dial Tone

Selects whether or not to check for a dial tone to check if the telephone is off the hook when a fax is connected to a public switched telephone network.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	The dial tone is detected.
Off	The dial tone is not detected.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: Busy Tone

Sets whether the line is disconnected immediately after a busy tone is detected, or the busy tone is not detected and the line remains connected until T0 time-out time, when a FAX signal is sent FAX transmission may fail due to incorrect busy tone detection. When setting it to OFF, this problem may be improved. However, the line is not disconnected within the T0 time-out time even if the destination line is busy.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Detects the busy tone.
Off	Does not detect the busy tone.

*: Initial setting: On/Off (Australia)

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: PBX Setting

Selects the mode to connect an outside call when connected to a PBX. *According to the type of the PBX connected, select the mode to connect an outside call.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
Flash	Flashing mode
Loop	Code number mode

*: Initial setting: Loop

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: DC Loop

Sets if the loop current is detected before dialing.

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
On	Detects the loop current before dialing.
Off	Detects the loop current before dialing.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U670	List output
	(Message: Output List)

Outputs the list of fax communication data.

*: Printing a list is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.

Purpose

Check conditions of use, settings and transmission procedures of the FAX.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

3.Press the [Start] key.

4.Output selected list.

Items	Contents
Sys Conf Report	Prints the list of software switches, local telephone number, confidential boxes, firmware versions and other information.
Action List	Prints the list of the error logs and communication lines.
Self Sts Report	Prints the list of FAX communication settings only in the maintenance mode (self-status report).
Protocol List	Outputs a list of communication procedures.
Error List	Output the error list.
Addr List(No.)	Outputs address book in the IDs order
Addr List(ldx)	Outputs address book in the order of names.
One-touch List	Outputs a list of one-touch.
Group List	Outputs the group list.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U671	FAX backup data clear
	(Message: Clear FAX Back Up Data)

Clears the FAX/i-FAX communication history and scheduled FAX transmission backup data in the FAX PWB.

Execute the memory Storage initialization.

Purpose

Execute to prevent information disclosure of the backup data.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
RECOVERY FAX Stor- age	Clears the scheduled FAX data in the FAX PWB.
FAX Data CLEAR	Clears all the data in the Storage.
Change Fax Storage	Enable to use the Storage used in another machine.

Method: RECOVERY FAX Storage / FAX Data CLEAR

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Clears the backup data.

2. Turn the power switch off and on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Setting: Change Fax Storage

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
SSD	To save the data to the SSD
HDD	To save the data to the HDD

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3. Turn the power switch off and on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U695	FAX function customization	
	(Message: Customize FAX Function)	

FAX package transmission is set up. Changes print size priority when receiving small size.

Purpose

Execute as required

Method

1.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
FAX Bulk TX	FAX batch transmission is set up.
A5 Pt Pri Chg	Change of print size priority at the time of small size reception.

Setting: FAX Bulk TX

1.By using the [+] [-] keys, select [On] or [Off].

Items	Contents
On	FAX batch transmission is enabled.
Off	FAX batch transmission is disabled.

*: Initial setting: On

2.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Setting: A5 Pt Pri Chg

1.By using the [+] [-] keys, select [On] or [Off].

Items	Contents
On	At the time of A5 size reception: A5 >B5 >A4 >B4 >A3
Off	At the time of A5 size reception: A5 >A4 >B5 >A3 >B4

2.Initial setting: Off

3.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U698	Setting the maintenance port
	(Message: Set Port for Maintenance)

Sets the port applicable to the maintenance mode.

Purpose

Sets the maintenance mode target port when installing multiple ports .

Setting is unnecessary if the same contents are set for both ports. Sets only when different items are set for each port.

*: This maintenance mode only appears when the multiple ports are installed.

Setting

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press [Port Select].

*: Current setting display is inverted.

3.Select the item to set.

Items	Contents
ALL	All ports
PORT 1	Port 1 (FAX PWB port)
PORT 2	Port 2 (Optional multiple port)

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Precautions

These contents to set are cleared when exiting the maintenance mode or turning the power off and the settings are necessary when entering the maintenance mode.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U699	Software switch: Set
	(Message: Set: Soft SW)

Sets the software switches on the FAX PWB individually.

Purpose

Change the setting when a problem such as split output of received originals occurs

*: Since the communication performance is largely affected, normally this setting need not be changed.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [SW No.].

3.Enter the desired software switch number (3 digits) using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

Items	Contents
SW No.	Specifies the software switch number (2 to 3 digits)

4. Press the keys of bit 0 to 7 to switch each bit between 0 and 1.

Items	Contents
Bit	Set the software switch bit (8bit).

5.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

*: [Completed] is displayed.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

List of software switches which can be configured Communication control procedures

No.	Bit	Contents
36	7654	Coding format in transmission
	3210	Coding format in reception
37	5	33600bps/V34
	4	31200bps/V34
	3	28800bps/V34
	2	26400bps/V34
	1	24000bps/V34
	0	21600bps/V34
38	7	19200bps/V34
	6	16800bps/V34
	5	14400bps/V34
	4	12000bps/V34
	3	9600bps/V34
	2	7200bps/V34
	1	4800bps/V34
	0	2400bps/V34

No.	Bit	Contents
41	3	FSK detection in V.8
42	4	4800 bps transmission when low-speed setting is active
	2	FIF length when transmitting DIS/DTC signal 4 times or more

Communication time setting

No.	Bit	Contents
53	76543210	T3 timeout setting
54	76543210	T4 timeout setting (auto transmission)
55	76543210	T5 timeout setting
60	76543210	Time before transmission of CNG (1100 Hz) signal
63	76543210	T0 timeout setting (manual transmission)
64	7	Phase C timeout in ECM reception
66	76543210	Timeout 1 in countermeasures against echo
68	76543210	Timeout for FSK detection start in V.8

Modem setting

No.	Bit	Contents
89	76543	RX gain adjust

NCU setting

No.	Bit	Contents
121	7654	Dial tone/busy tone detection pattern
122	7654	Busy tone detection pattern
	1	Busy tone detection in FAX/TEL automatic switching
125	76543210	Registering the access code for connection to PSTN
126	7654	Ringback tone ON/OFF cycle for the automatic FAX/ telephone switching
68	76543210	Timeout for FSK detection start in V.8

Calling time setting

No.	Bit	Contents
133	76543210	DTMF signal transmission time
134	76543210	DTMF signal pause time
141	76543210	Ringer detection cycle (minimum)
142	76543210	Ringer detection cycle (maximum)
143	76543210	Ringer ON time detection
144	76543210	Ringer OFF time detection
145	76543210	Ringer OFF time undetected
147	76543210	Dial tone detection time (continuous tone)

No.	Bit	Contents
148	76543210	Allowable dial tone interruption time
149	76543210	Time for transmitting selection signal after closing the DC circuit
151	76543210	Ringer frequency detection invalid time

U901	Clearing the counters by paper source
	(Message: Clear Paper Feeder Counter)

Displays and clears the counts by paper source.

Purpose

Check the maintenance parts replacement timing. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the counts by paper source.

Items	Contents
МРТ	Displays/clears the MP tray feed counter
Cassette1	Displays/clears Cassette 1 count
Cassette2	Displays/clears Cassette 2 count
Cassette3	Displays Cassette 3 count
Cassette4	Displays Cassette 5 count
Duplex	Displays/clears the duplex unit count

2.Select the counter to clear.

*: [Cassette 3] and [Cassette 4] are unable to clear.

3.Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U903	Clearing the jam counter
	(Message: Clear Paper Misfeed Counter)

Displays/clears the jam counter by paper jam type.

Purpose

Execute to check the paper jam status. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
Cnt	Displaying/clearing the jam counts
Total Cnt	Displaying the accumulate jam counts

Method: Cnt

- 1.Select [Cnt].
 - *: Number of occurrence is displayed by jam code. Code of no occurrence is not indicated.
- 2.Select [Clear] to clear the jam counts.

*: Individual counters cannot be cleared.

3.Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

Method: Total Cnt

- 1.Select [Total Cnt].
 - *: Accumulate number of occurrence is displayed by jam code.
- 2.Change the screen using the $[\blacktriangle]$ [\bigtriangledown] key.
 - *: Unable to clear the accumulated jam counter values.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U904	Clearing the service call error counter
	(Message: Clear Service Call Counter)

Displays/clears the number of times of service call errors by service call error type.

Purpose

Executes to check the service call error. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the item to execute.

Items	Contents
Cnt	Displays/clears the service call counter.
Total Cnt	Displays accumulate service call error counts.

Method: Cnt

1.Select [Cnt].

- *: Number of occurrence is displayed by service call error. Code of no occurrence is not indicated.
- 2.Select [Clear] to clear the service call error counter.

*: Individual counters cannot be cleared.

3.Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

Method: Total Cnt

- 1.Select [Total Cnt].
 - *: Accumulate number of occurrence is displayed by service call error. Unable to clear the accumulated service call error counter values.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U905	Optional counter
	(Message: Option Counter)

Displays the counter values of the document processor, 1000-sheet finisher, 3000-sheet finisher and inner finisher.

Purpose

Execute to check the usage status of the document processor, 1000-sheet finisher, 3000-sheet finisher and inner finisher.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select the device to check.

*: Switched to the counter screen.

Items	Contents
DP	Displays the document processor count.
DF	Displays the document finisher count.

Method: DP

*: Each counter is displayed.

Items	Contents
ADP	Simplex original count is displayed.
RADP	Duplex original count is displayed.
CIS *1	Displays the count of simultaneous duplex scanning

*1: Simultaneous duplex scanning DP installed machine

Method: DF

*: Each counter is displayed.

Items	Contents
Sorter	Displays the sorter counter.
Staple	Displays the staple counter.
Punch	Displays the punch counter.
Stack *1	Displays the main tray eject counter.

*1: 3000-sheet finisher installed machine

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U906	Resetting the partial operation
	(Message: Reset Disable Function Mode)

Release the service call error with partial operation.

Purpose

If the partial operation is executed with a broken cassette, etc., make sure to execute it after repairing the parts.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Reset the partial operation.

3.Press the [Start] key to release the partial operation.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U908	Total counter
	(Message: Total Counter)

Contents

Displays the total counter.

Purpose

Displays the total counter for check.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the total count.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U910	Black rate data
	(Message: Clear Coverage Data)

Clears the accumulated data for the print coverage per A4 size paper and its period of time (as shown on the service status page).

Purpose

Clears data as required at the time such as maintenance

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Clears the print coverage data.

3.Press the [Start] key to clear the print coverage data.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U911	Counter by media type
	(Message: Paper Size Counter)

Displays the paper feed counts by paper size.

Purpose

Displays the counts to confirm when replacing the maintenance parts .

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the paper feed counts by paper size.

Items	Contents
A3 *1	Displays A3 feed counts
B4 *1	Displays B4 feed counts
A4 *1	Displays A4 feed counts
B5 *1	Displays B5 feed counts
A5 *1	Displays A5 feed counts
Folio *1	Displays Folio feed counts
Legal *2	Displays Legal feed counts
Letter *2	Displays Letter feed counts
Statement *2	Displays Statement feed counts
ETC	Displays Other paper feed counts.

*1: *1: metric specification, *2: inch specification

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U917	Read/Write Backup Data	
	(Message: Read/Write Backup HDD Data(USB))	

Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the main unit, or writes the data from the USB memory to the main unit.

Purpose

Makes a back up of the main unit information, and import or export to restore the main unit information

Method

- 1.Turn the power switch off.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3.Turn the power switch on.
 - *: Wait for about 10 seconds until the main unit recognizes a USB memory.
- 4.Press the [Start] key.
- 5.Select the object item.

Items	Contents	Depending data*
Address Book	Address book informa- tion	-
Job Account	Job accounting infor- mation	-
One Touch	One-touch key informa- tion	Address book information
User	User management information	Job accounting information
Document Box	Document box informa- tion	Job accounting, User information
Shortcut	Short-cut information	Job accounting, User, Document Box information
Fax Forward	FAX forward informa- tion	Job accounting, User, Document Box information
System	System setting informa- tion	-
Network	Network setting infor- mation	-
Job Setting	Job setting information	-
Printer	Printer setting informa- tion	-
Fax Setting	FAX setting information	-
Program	Program information	Information of Address book, Job accounting, User management, Document box, FAX transfer and FAX setting
Panel Setting	Panel setting informa- tion	Information of Address book, Job accounting, User management, Document box, FAX transfer, FAX set- ting and Program

*: Since data are dependent with each other, data other than selected are also retrieved or written.

6.Select [Export] or [Import].

Items	Contents
Import	Imports data from the USB memory to the main unit.
Export	Retrieving data from the main unit to the USB memory.

7.Press the [Start] key. Starts reading or writing.

- *: The progress of selected item is displayed in %.
- *: When an error occurs, the operation is canceled and an error code appears.
- 8.[Finish] appears after normal completion.
- 9.When selecting [Import], turn the power switch off then on, after completing writing. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Error codes

Codes	Contents
e000	Unspecified error
e0001	Parameter error
e0002	Generating a dummy file has failed.
e0003	The XML file to import does not exist
e0004	The exported file does not exist
e0100 to e01ff	Error in handling addressbook
e0200 to e02ff	Error in handling One-touch
e0300 to e03ff	Error in handling user management
e0400 to e04ff	Error in handling panel program data
e0500 to e05ff	Error in handling forwarding FAX data
e0600 to e06ff	Error in handling the system configuration
e0700 to e07ff	Error in handling network parameters
e0800 to e08ff	Error in handling job accounting
e0900 to e09ff	Error in handling short-cuts
e0a00 to e0aff	Error in handling job information
e0b00 to e0bff	Error in handling FAX data
e0c00: toe0cff	Error in handling printer data
e0d00 to e0dff	Error in handling panel data
e0e00 to e0eff	Error in handling document boxes
e1000 to e1fff	Error in the device-related process
e2000 to e2fff	Error in handling SOAP IF
e3000 to e3fff	Error in handling KM-WSDL IF
e4000 to e4fff	Error in process for import (e4002) A file mandatory for importing is missing (e4008) Invalid file header
e5000 to e5fff	Error in the SOAP data rewriting process

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

^{*:} The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U920	Billing counter	
	(Message: Charge Counter)	

Displays the billing count.

Purpose

Execute to check the current billing counts

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to display.
 - *: Switched to each display screen.

Items	Contents	
Main Function	Main function counts	
Sub Function	Sub functions count	

Method: Main Function

*: The charge counts for the main functions are displayed.

Items	Contents
Col Copy (H)	Color copy counts (Coverage: High)
Col Copy (M)	Color copy counts (Coverage: Middle)
Col Copy (L)	Color copy counts (Coverage: Low)
Mono Color Copy	Displays mono color copy count.
B/W Copy	B/W copy count is displayed.
Col Prn (H)	Color print counts (Coverage: High)
Col Prn (M)	Color print counts (Coverage: Middle)
Col Prn (L)	Color print counts (Coverage: Low)
B/W Prn	B/W print count is displayed
B/W FAX	FAX count

Method: Sub Function

*: The charge counts for the sub functions are displayed.

Items	Contents	
Simplex	Simplex print count is displayed	
Duplex	Duplex print count is displayed	
Combine(Off)	Combine print counts (Off) is displayed	
Combine(2in1)	Combine print counts (2in1) is displayed	
Combine(4in1)	Combine print counts (4in1) is displayed	

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U927 Clearing all the billing/life counters (Message: Clear All Charge/Life Counter (one time only))

Contents

Clears all charge counts and machine life counts.

Supplement

The total charge counts and the machine life counts can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Initializes the billing count and machine life count.

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: Clears all charge counts and machine life counts.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U928	Machine life counter
	(Message: Machine Life Counter)

Contents

The current machine life counts is displayed.

Purpose

Executed to check the machine life count

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The current machine life counts is displayed.

Items	Contents
Cnt Displays the machine life count	

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U930	Clear the main charger roller counts
	(Message: Clear Charger Roller Counter)

Displays and clears the current main charger roller counts.

Purpose

To verify the main charger roller counts after replacing. Also, clear the counts after replacement

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: The main charge roller counter for each color is displayed.

Items	Contents
К	The main charger roller counts are displayed.

Method: Clear

1.Select the item to set.

1.Select [Clear].

2.Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U933	Setting the maintenance mode log
	(Message: Set Maintenance Mode Execute Log)

Sets the function to record the in/out date of the maintenance mode or date executing each maintenance item individually and output the log file.

Purpose

Record the maintenance mode history to analyze the cause when a problem occurs.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to set.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
Export	Exports Maintenance Log.
Setting	Maintenance log output setting

Method: Export

1.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Export the maintenance log to a USB memory.

2.Press the [Start] key.

Export the maintenance log to a USB memory.

- *: If a USB memory is not inserted, [Execute] is grayed out .
- *: Display OK/NG after execution.

Setting: Setting

- 1.Select the item to set.
 - *: Select the key including the number to set indicated by each block.
 - *: The screen for setting is displayed.

Items	Contents
U000-U019	Sets the maintenance log output for U000 to U019.
U020-U029	Sets the maintenance log output for U020 to U029.
U030-U059	Sets the maintenance log output for U030 to U059.
U060-U099	Sets the maintenance log output for U060 to U099.
U100-U129	Sets the maintenance log output for U100 to U129.
U130-U159	Sets the maintenance log output for U130 to U159.
U160-U199	Sets the maintenance log output for U160 to U199.
U200-U249	Sets the maintenance log output for U200 to U249.
U250-U349	Sets the maintenance log output for U250 to U349.
U400-U499	Sets the maintenance log output for U400 to U499.
U500-U599	Sets the maintenance log output for U500 to U599.
U600-U699	Sets the maintenance log output for U600 to U699.
U900-U999	Sets the maintenance log output for U900 to U999.

2.Set on/off for the number desired to set.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U935	Maintenance Relay Board	
	(Message: Maintenance Relay Board)	

Set the disorder mode setting.

Purpose

Set when the disorder of the relay PWB occurs.

Execution

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents
Mode 0	Disorder setting mode invalidity
Mode 1	Disorder setting mode validity

*: Initial setting: Mode 0

3.Press the [Start] key, determine the setting value.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U942	DP loop amount setting
	(Message: Adjust DP Original Loop Amount)

Contents

Adjust the paper loop amount when using the document processor.

Purpose

Execute when original no-feed jam, skew or creases on the original appears.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Press the [System Menu] key.

3.Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.

4.Press the [System Menu] key.

5.Select the item to adjust.

6.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Items	Contents	Setting range	Initial setting	Data variation
Front	Single-side original loop amount	-32 to 32	0	0.20mm(DP- 7100) 0.16mm(DP- 7110)
Back *1	Double-side original loop amount	-31 to 31	0	0.18mm
Mix *2	Mixed original loop amount	-31 to 31	0	0.18mm

*1: Reversing duplex scanning machine only, *2: except DP-7120

*: When the setting value is increased, the paper loop amount increase, and it decreases when the setting value is decreased. Increase the set value if no feed jam or skew feed occurs and reduce the set value if creases appear on the original.

7.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Completion

- Press the [Stop] key.
 - *: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U952	Maintenance mode workflow
	(Message: Maintenance Mode Work Flow)

Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the main unit or the USB memory.

Purpose

Execute to register regular maintenance items.

Method

- 1.Press the [Start] key.
- 2.Select the item to execute.
 - *: The screen for executing is displayed.

Items	Contents
Continue	Resume interrupted workflow.
Execute(USB)	Executes the workflow in a USB memory.
Execute	Execute the workflow saved in the main unit.
Entry(USB)	Executes the workflow in a USB memory.
Entry	Register the workflow in the main unit manually.
Log	Displays the latest workflow execution history.

Method: Continue

- 1.Select maintenance item number to execute.
- 2.Press the [Start] key.
 - *: Selected maintenance mode is executed.

Method: Execute(USB)

- 1. Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3.Turn the power switch on.
- 4.Enter maintenance item U952.
- 5.Select [Execute(USB)].
- 6.Select [workflow].

Items	Contents
WorkFlowData 01 - 07	Workflow data in a USB memory

7.Press the [Start] key.

*: Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the workflow.

Method: Excute

1.Select the place to save the data to execute.

Items	Contents
Data 1 - 8	Workflow save area in the main unit

2.Select the item to execute.

3. Press the [Start] key to start the processing.

Method: Entry(USB)

- 1.Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.

- 3.Turn the power switch on.
- 4.Enter maintenance item U952.
- 5.Select [Entry(USB)].
- 6.Select [workflow].

Items	Contents
WorkFlowData 01 - 07	Workflow data in a USB memory

7.Select the workflow save area.

Items	Contents
Data 1 - 8	Workflow save area in the main unit

8.Select [Execute].

*: Registers the workflow in a USB memory to the main unit.

Method: Entry

1.Select [Entry].

2.Select the workflow save area.

Items	Contents
Data 1 - 8	Workflow save area in the main unit

3.By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, enter the maintenance number to register in the workflow.

Items	Contents
Flow 1 - 14	Registered maintenance numbers

4.Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

5.Press the [Start] key.

*: Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the workflow.

e.g.

When inserting a USB memory the following items can be registered: commands, texts and maintenance numbers (variable).

File format: xxx.mwf

1, SET UP, 327, 000, 927, 278 2, WARRANTY, 089, 000 3, MK-A, 127, 167, 130, 410, 251 4, EH SETUP, 411, 034, 246

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U964	Log check

Transfer the log files save in the HDD to a USB memory.

*: Transfer screenshots at log and log acquisition.

Purpose

Transfer the log file saved in the HDD to a USB memory for investigation when a failure occurs.

Method

- 1. Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2.Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3.Turn the power switch on.
- 4.Enter maintenance item U952.
- 5.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Transfer the log file.

6.Press the [Start] key.

*: Starts transferring the log files saved in the HDD to a USB memory.

- [Processing] is displayed. (About 3 to 5 minutes)
- 7.[Completed] appears after normal completion.
- 8. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.
 - *: An error code appears when there is an error.

Supplement

How to retrieve the log when the operation panel freezes

Log retrieving starts when pressing three keys on the operation panel (Status/Job Cancel + System Menu/ Counter + Stop) for 3 to 6 seconds.

The memory lamp is blinking during retrieving and turns on when completed.

The log retrieved this way can be saved in a USB memory.

Error codes

Display	Contents
No USB Storage	The USB memory is not installed
No File	No file
Mount Error	USB memory mount error
File Delete Error	Failed to delete existing files in the USB memory
Copy Error	HDD to USB memory copy failure
Unmount Error	USB memory unmount error
Other Error	Other error

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U969	Toner area code
	(Message: Toner Area Code)

Displays the toner area code.

Purpose

Execute to check the currently set toner area code and model code.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the toner area code and model code

Items	Contents
Area Code	Toner container area code
Model Code	Model code

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U977	Setting the data capture mode
	(Message: Set Data Capture Mode)

Contents

Stores the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory.

Purpose

Store the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory to check it.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	Stores data in a USB memory.

3.Press the [Start] key.

*: When the operation is completed abnormally, an error code is displayed.

Error codes

Items	Contents
1	USB memory is broken. USB memory was disconnected during data processing or is write-protected.
4	USB memory is full.
50	Other error occurs

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U984	Developer unit number
	(Message: Developing Unit Number)

Displays the developer unit number.

Purpose

Execute to check the developer unit number.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Displays the developer unit number.

Items	Contents
К	Displays the developer unit number

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U985	Developer unit history	
	(Message: Developing Unit History)	

Displays the machine serial number and developer counter history.

Purpose

Displays the machine serial number and developer count to check.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Select color to refer to.

Items	Contents
К	Displays the developer unit number history

*: Displays the machine serial number and 3 items of the developer counter history.

Items	Contents
Machine History 1 to 3	Machine serial number history
Cnt History1 to 3	Developer counter history

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U989	HDD scan disk
	(Message: HDD Scandisk)

Apply Scandisk to the HDD for data recovery.

Purpose

Execute recovery of HDD management data error by turning the power off while accessing to the HDD.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

2.Select [Execute].

Items	Contents
Execute	HDD scan disk request

3.Press the [Start] key to execute scandisk.

4. Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

U990	Clearing the scanner lighting time	
	(Message: Clear Scanner Lamp ON Time)	

Contents

Displays the accumulated CIS lighting time

Purpose

Execute to check the CIS usage.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: CIS accumulated lighting time is displayed in minutes.

Items	Contents
CIS	Displays the accumulated CIS lamp lighting time

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

U991	Scanner counter
	(Message: Scanner Counter)

Displays the scanner operation counts.

Purpose

Display the number of scanner operation to check the usage status.

Method

1.Press the [Start] key.

*: Current number of operation is displayed.

Items	Contents
Copy Scan	Displays times of copy and scan operations.
Fax Scan	Displays times of FAX scan operations.
Other Scan	Displays times of other scan operations.

Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops printing and displays the paper misfeed message on the operation panel. To remove paper misfed in the machine, pull out the cassette, open the paper conveying unit or paper conveying cover. The positions and the corrective actions are displayed on the touch panel when a paper jam has occurred.









- (A) Misfeed in the cassette 1
- (B) Misfeed in the cassette 2
- (C) Misfeed in the cassette 3 (500 sheets × 2 / 1,500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (D) Misfeed in the cassette 4 (500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (E) Misfeed in the cassette 4 (1,500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (F) Misfeed in the MP tray
- (G) Misfeed in the duplex unit
- (H) Misfeed in the inner tray or fuser section
- (I) Misfeed in the right cover 2
- (J) Misfeed in the right cover 3 (option)
- (K) Misfeed in the the bridge (option)
- (L) Misfeed in the the mail box (option)
- (M) Misfeed in the document processor (option)
- (N) Misfeed in the 1,000 sheets finisher (option)
- (O) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Inner) (option)
- (P) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Tray A) (option)
- (Q) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Tray B) (option)


(2) Paper misfeed detection component

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
0000	Initial jam	The power is turned on when a sensor in the con- veying system is on.	-
0100	Secondary paper feed request time out	Secondary paper feed request given by the con- troller is unreachable.	В
0101	Waiting for process package to be ready	Process package won't be ready.	-
0102	Waiting for toner package to become ready	Toner package won't become ready.	-
0104	Waiting for conveying pack- age to be ready	Conveying package won't be ready.	-
0106	Paper feeding request for duplex printing time out	Paper feeding request for duplex printing given by the controller is unreachable.	E
0107	Waiting for fuser package to be ready	Fuser package won't be ready.	-
0108	Waiting for option package to become ready	Option package won't become ready.	-
0110	Right cover 1 open	The right cover 1 is opened during printing.	-
0111	Front cover open	The front cover is opened during printing.	-
0113	Right cover 2 open	The Right cover 2 is opened during printing.	-
0114	BR conveying unit open	The BR conveying unit is opened during printing.	-
0210	Right cover 3 open	The right cover 3is opened during printing.	-
0300	Ejection uncompleted	An ejection-completed error has occurred.	-
0501	No paper feed from cassette 1	The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from cassette 1.	A
0502	No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2 (Retry 1 times).	В
0503	No paper feed from cassette 3	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Retry 1 times).	С
0504	No paper feed from cassette 4	PF feed sensor (PFFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Retry 1 times).	D
0508	No paper feed from duplex section	The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from the duplex section.	G
0509	No paper feed from MP tray	The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from the MP tray.	
0511	Multiple sheets in cassette 1	1 The registration sensor (RS) does not turn off dur- ing paper feed from cassette 1.	
0512	Multiple sheets in cassette 2	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	В
0513	Multiple sheets in cassette 3	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.	В

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
0514	Multiple sheets in cassette 4	PF feed sensor (PFFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	D
0519	Multiple sheets in MP tray	The registration sensor (RS) does not turn off dur- ing paper feed from theMP tray.	Н
0523	No paper feed from cassette 3	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).	E
0524	No paper feed from cassette 4	PF feed sensor2 (PFFS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	D
0533	Multiple sheets in cassette 3	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).	С
0534	Multiple sheets in cassette 4	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	E
1503	Feed sensor 1 non arrival jam	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.	В
1504		Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	В
1513	Feed sensor 1 stay jam	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.	В
1514		Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	В
1704	Feed sensor 2 non arrival jam	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	D
1714	Feed sensor 2 stay jam	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	В
2603	PF feed sensor 1 non arrival jam	PF conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).	С
2604		PF conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	E
2613	PF feed sensor 1 stay jam	PF conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).	В
2614		PF conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	В
2704	PF feed sensor 2 non arrival jam	PF conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	E
2714	PF feed sensor 2 stay jam	PF conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).	

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4002	Registration sensor non arrival jam	The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from cassette 2.	В
4003		The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from cassette 3.	В
4004		The registration sensor (RS) does not turn on dur- ing paper feed from cassette 4.	В
4201	Eject sensor non arrival jam	The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	Н
4202		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	Н
4203		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.	Н
4204		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	Н
4208		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4209		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	Н
4211	Eject sensor stay jam	The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	Н
4212		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	Н
4213		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.	Н
4214		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	Н
4218		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from the duplex section.	Н
4219		The eject sensor (ES) does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.	Н
4301	Duplex sensor non arrival jam	The duplex sensor (DUS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4302		The duplex sensor (DUS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4303		The duplex sensor (DUS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.	G
4304		The duplex sensor (DUS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	G
4309		The duplex sensor (DUS) does not turn on during paper feed from the MP tray.	G

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4901	Bridge conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam	The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	Н
4902		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	Н
4903		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.	Н
4904		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	Н
4908		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	Н
4909		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from the MP tray.	Н
4911	Bridge conveying sensor 1 stay jam	The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	Н
4912		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	Н
4913		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.	Н
4914		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	Н
4918		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	Н
4919		The bridge conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.	Н
5001	Bridge conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam	The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	Н
5002		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	Н
5003		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.	Н
5004		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.	Н
5008		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from the duplex section.	Н
5009		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from theMP tray.	Н

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
5011	Bridge conveying sensor 2 stay jam	The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	К
5012		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	К
5013		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.	к
5014		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.	к
5018		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	ĸ
5019		The bridge conveying sensor 2(BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.	К
6000	DF paper entry error	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine (3000- sheet finisher).	-
6001		DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine (1000- sheet finisher).	-
6020	DF front cover open	DF front upper cover is opened during operation (3000-sheet finisher).	-
6021		DF front cover is opened during operation (1000- sheet finisher).	-
6041	DF top cover open	DF top cover is opened during operation (1000- sheet finisher).	-
6060	MB cover open	MB cover is opened during operation (3000-sheet finisher).	-
6100	DF paper entry sensor non arrival jam	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (3000-sheet fin- isher).	К
6101		DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (1000-sheet fin- isher).	К
6110	DF paper entry sensor stay jam	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000- sheet finisher).	N
6111		DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (1000- sheet finisher).	Ν
6200	DF sub eject sensor non arrival jam	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	N

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
6210	DF sub eject sensor stay jam	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES) does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6300	DF middle eject sensor non arrival jam	DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6301		DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6310	DF middle eject sensor stay jam	DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	N
6311		DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (1000-sheet finisher).	N
6400	DF tray upper surface sen- sor non arrival jam	DF tray upper surface sensor (DFTUSS) does not turn on within specified time of DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	N
6401		DF tray upper surface sensor (DFTUSS) does not turn on within specified time of DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) turning on (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6410	DF tray upper surface sen- sor stay jam	DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) is not turned off within specified time of DF tray upper surface sen- sor (DFTUSS) turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6411		DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) is not turned off within specified time of DF tray upper surface sen- sor (DFTUSS) turning on (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6500	DF eject paper sensor non arrival jam	DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) does not turn on within specified time of DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) turning on.	Ν
6510	DF eject paper sensor stay jam	DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) is not turned off since the bundle discharge starts (3000-sheet fin- isher).	N
6511		DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) is not turned off since the bundle discharge starts (1000-sheet fin- isher).	Ν
6600	DF drum sensor non arrival jam	DF drum sensor (DFDRS) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on (3000-sheet finisher).	N
6610	DF drum sensor stay jam	DF drum sensor (DFDRS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet fin- isher).	Ν

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
6810	DF side registration sensor 1 stay jam	DF side registration sensor 1 (DFSRS1) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 1 (DFSRM1) (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6811		DF side registration sensor 1 (DFSRS1) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 1 (DFSRM1) (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6910	DF side registration sensor 2 stay jam	DF side registration sensor 2 (DFSRS2) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 2 (DFSRM2) (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
6911		DF side registration sensor 2 (DFSRS2) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 2 (DFSRM2) (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
7000	DF staple operation error	DF staple sensor (DFSTS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF staple motor (DFSTM) (3000-sheet finisher).	N
7001		DF staple sensor (DFSTS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF staple motor (DFSTM) (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
7800	MB eject sensor non arrival jam	MB eject sensor (MBES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (3000-sheet finisher).	L
7810	MB eject sensor stay jam	MB eject sensor (MBES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet fin- isher).	L
7900	Middle paddle error jam	DF paddle sensor (DFPDS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF middle motor (DFMM) (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
7901		DF paddle sensor (DFPDS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF middle motor (DFMM) (1000-sheet finisher).	Ν
7950	Paper interval error jam	An illegal inter-page or inter-copy interval has occurred (3000-sheet finisher).	Ν
7951		An illegal inter-page or inter-copy interval has occurred (1000-sheet finisher).	N

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
9000	No paper feed from DP	DP feed sensor (DPPFS) does not turn on during original feed from DP (Retry 5 times).	М
9001	DP original conveying jam	DP timing sensor (DPTS) turns off within the speci- fied time since the sensor turns on.	Μ
9002	DP sensor stay jam	Sensor in the conveying system is on since original feeding starts.	М
9004	DP original switchback jam	During duplex switchback scanning, the DP regis- tration sensor (DPRS) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning off.	Μ
9005	No original feed jam 2	DP lift sensor 1 (DPLS1) does not turn on within specified time of the lift plate rising.	Μ
9006	DP switchback jam 3	DP eject sensor (DPES) is not turned on within specified time since original switchback operation starts.	Μ
9007	DP switchback jam 4	DP eject sensor (DPES) is not turned off within specified time since original switchback operation starts.	Μ
9008	No original feed jam 3	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn on within specified time of the paper feed starting.	Μ
9009	DP original conveying jam 2	Next feed original became the stand-by states of paper feed while reading the image.	Μ
9010	DP open	The DP is opened during original feeding. Sensor in the conveying system is on when the power is turned on or the cover is closed.	Μ
9011	DP top cover open	The DP top cover is opened during original feed- ing.	Μ
9020	Original skew feed jam	DP skew sensor (DPSS) does not turn on within specified time of DP registration sensor (DPRS) turning on.	
9110	DP paper feed sensor stay jam	The DP paper feed sensor (DPPFS) or DP regis- tration sensor (DPRS) does not turn off within the specified time of the DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	Μ
9200	DP registration sensor non arrival jam	The DP registration sensor (DPRS) does not turn on within the specified time of the DP paper feed sensor (DPPFS) turning on.	
9210	DP registration sensor stay jam	DP registration sensor (DPRS) does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	М

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
9300	DP CIS sensor non arrival jam	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn on within specified time of DP registration sensor (DPFS) turning on.	Μ
9310	DP CIS sensor stay jam	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn off within specified time of DP registration sensor (DPFS) turning off.	Μ
9400	DP timing sensor non arrival jam	The DP timing sensor (DPTS) does not turn on within the specified time of the DP registration sensor (DPRS) turning on (Retry 5 times).	Μ
9410	DP timing sensor stay jam	The DP timing sensor (DPTS) does not turned off within the specified time its turning on.	Μ
9500	DP switchback sensor non arrival jam	DP switchback sensor (DPSBS) does not turn on within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	Μ
9600	DP eject sensor non arrival jam	DP eject sensor (DPES) does not turn on within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	Μ
9610	DP eject sensor stay jam	DP eject sensor (DPES) does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning off.	Μ

1-4-2 Self-diagnostic function

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This machine is equipped with self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, the machine stops printing and display an error message on the operation panel. An error message consists of a message prompting a contact to service personnel and a four-digit error code indicating the type of the error.

(2) Self diagnostic codes

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement. **Caution:**

Before attempting to check the power supply and fuser unit, be sure to turn the power switch off and unplug the machine from power. Allow at least 5 seconds before starting to conduct service until the capacitors on the boards have been completely discharged.

To reset a service call regarding the Maintenance T display and the DP, performing U906 Disconnection at Defect is required. (See page 1-3-191)

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0030	FAX control PWB system error Processing with the fax soft- ware was disabled due to a software problem.	FAX control PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, re-mount the FAX controller PWB, then turn power on. Reinstall the fax software. Replace the FAX control PWB.
0060	Mainboad type mismatch	Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
0070	FAX control PWB incompat- ible detection error Abnormal detection of FAX control PWB incompatibility In the initial communication with the FAX control PWB, any normal communication com- mand is not transmitted.	FAX control PWB (The FAX PWB installed will not be the one designed for the machine.)	 Install the FAX system designed for the model. Reinstall the fax software.
0100	Backup memory device error	Flash memory (Main PWB)	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5- 54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0120	MAC address data error For data in which the MAC address is invalid.	Flash memory (Main PWB)	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Check the MAC address on the network status page. If it is blank, obtain the data with its MAC address written from the service support and install. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5- 54).
0130	Backup memory read/write error (main PWB) Mismatch between writing data and reading data succes- sively.	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB and check for cor- rect operation (see page 1-5-54).
0140	Backup memory data error (main PWB) When the data read from NAND is abnormalities	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB and check for cor- rect operation (see page 1-5-54).
0150	Backup memory read/write error (engine PWB) No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated 5 times successively. Mismatch of reading data from 2 locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	EEPROM (Engine PWB)	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Check that the EEPROM is peroperly installed on the engine PWB and re- install it. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59). Check the EEPROM and if the data are currupted, contact the service support.
0160	Backup memory data error (engine PWB) Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	EEPROM	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Execute U021 - memory initializing.(see page 1-3-28) If the EEPROM data are currupted, contact the service support.
0170	Billing counting error The values on the main circuit PWB and on the engine do not match for any of charging counter, life counter, and scanner counter.	EEPROM	 Check that the EEPROMs installed in the main PWB and the engine PWB are correct and, if not, use the correct EEPROM for the model. If the EEPROM data are currupted, contact the service support.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
0180	Machine number mismatch Machine number of main and engine does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	 Confirm the machine data for the main and engine units by using U004 (see page 1-3-23). If the serial number data of different models is alternately displayed, install the correct EEPROM in the PWB of the wrong serial number data. Contact the Service Support.
0350	Panel PWB communication error (electronic volume I2C communication error) NACK is received during I2C communication -> retried 5 times -> rebooting command sent -> retried 5 times If NACK is still received.	Operation PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, con- nect the connector all the way in. Operation panel PWB 1 (YC10) and Main PWB (YC12) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the operation panel PWB 1 (see page 1-5-70).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
0640	Hard disk error The hard disk cannot be accessed.	HDD Main PWB	 If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC2,YC32 Replace the SATA cable. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
0650	FAX image storage pair- check error The SSD used in the other main unit was installed.	SSD	 When installing the SSD used once, replace with the correct SSD. When installing the SSD used once, execute [FAX Data CLEAR] at U671. Be sure to install the SSD to the connec- tor on the main PWB. Replace with the new SSD.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0660	Hard disk encryption key error	EEPROM	1. Execute U004 if this occurs after the EEPROM has been changed.
		HDD	 If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC2,YC32 Replace the SATA cable. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
0670	Hard disk overwriting era- sure error	HDD	 If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC2,YC65 Replace the SATA cable. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
0680	SSD error The SSD cannot be accessed, or the error occurs when accessing to the SSD.	SSD Main PW/B	 Turn the power switch and the main power switch off. After 5s passes, turn the main power switch and the power switch on. Reinstall the SSD on the main PWB. Retrieve the SSD storage data at U026, and then initialize the SSD at U024. Replace the SSD.
			Declare the main PMD (see page 1-5-54).
0800	Image processing error JAM010X is detected twice.	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0830	FAX control PWB flash pro-	FAX software	1. Reinstall the fax software.
	gram area checksum error A checksum error occurred with the program of the FAX control PWB.	FAX control PWB	 Execute initializing by U600. Replace the FAX control PWB.
0840	Faults of RTC ("Time for maintenance T" is displayed) [Check at power up] The RTC setting has reverted to a previous state. The machine has not been powered for 5 years (compared to the settings stored periodically in the EEPROM). The RTC setting is older than 00:01 on January 1, 2000	Battery (main PWB)	 Make sure that the back-up batteries on the main PWB are not short-circuited. Reset Maintenance T by executing U906 (see page 1-3-191). If the same C call is displayed when power is switched on and off, replace the back up battery. If communication error (due to a noise, etc.) is present with the RTC on the main circuit PWB, check the PWB is properly grounded.
	[Checked periodically (in 5- minute interval) after powered up] The RTC setting has reverted to a state older than the last time it was checked. 10 minutes have been passed since the previous check. After C840 is detected, the machine enters in disconnec- tion mode after the main power switch has been switched on and off and indi- cates 'Maintenance T.'	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
0870	PCFAX control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer error High-capacity data transfer between the FAX control PWB and the main PWB of the machine was not normally	FAX control PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, re-mount the FAX controller PWB, then turn power on. Replace the FAX control PWB.
		HDD	Execute U024 to initialize the HDD (see page 1-3-29).
	performed even if the data transfer was retried the speci- fied times.	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0920	Fax file system error The backup data is not retained for file system abnor- mality of flash memory of the FAX control PWB.	FAX control PWB	 Execute initializing by U600 (Refer to the FAX service manual). Replace the FAX control PWB.
0980	24 V power down detect If a 24V power disconnection signal is observed and a 12V power disconnection signal is observed simultaneously for one second.	Power source PWB	 Check the +24V output is given at YC5 of the power circuit PWB. Replace the power source PWB (see page 1-5-64)
1010	1010 Lift motor 1 error Lift error that occurs when the lock signal does turn off 510 msec in succession after turn- ing on the cassette lift motor 1 has occurred five times in suc- cession.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		Lift motor 1	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift motor 1 and Engine PWB (YC13) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the lift motor 1.
		Lift sensor 1	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift sensor 1 and Engine PWB (YC17) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the lift sensor1.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1020 Lift motor 2 error Lift error that occurs when the lock signal does turn off 510 msec in succession after turn- ing on the cassette lift motor 2 has occurred five times in suc- cession.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
	Lift motor 2	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift motor 2 and Engine PWB (YC17) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the lift motor 2.
	Lift sensor 2	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift sensor 2 and Engine PWB (YC17) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the lift sensor 2.
	Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
	Contents Lift motor 2 error Lift error that occurs when the lock signal does turn off 510 msec in succession after turning on the cassette lift motor 2 has occurred five times in succession.	ContentsRelated partsLift motor 2 errorCassette lift base elevating mechanismlift error that occurs when the lock signal does turn off 510 msec in succession after turn- ing on the cassette lift motor 2 has occurred five times in suc- cession.Cassette lift base elevating mechanismLift motor 2 insection and the cassette lift motor 2Lift motor 2Lift sensor 2Lift sensor 2Lift sensor 2Engine PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1030	1030 PF lift motor 1 error (paper feeder) After cassette 3 is inserted, PF lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times succes- sively. However, the first 1 s after motor is turned on is excluded from detection.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor 1	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 1 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF lift motor 1.
		PF Lift sensor 1	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 1 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF lift sensor 1.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1040	1040 PF lift motor 2 error (paper feeder) After cassette 4 is inserted, PF lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 15 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times succes- sively. However, the first 1 s after motor is turned on is excluded from detection.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor 2	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 2 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF Lift motor2.
		PF Lift sensor 2	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 2 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF Lift sensor 2.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1100	PF lift motor 1 error (large capacity feeder) After cassette 3 is inserted, PF lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 23 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times succes- sively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 1 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Paper feeder lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor1	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 1 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF lift motor1.
		PF Lift sensor1	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 1 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF lift sensor1.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1110	10 PF lift motor 2 error (large capacity feeder) After cassette 4 is inserted, PF lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 23 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times succes- sively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 2 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Paper feeder lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor 2	 Check that the cassette base has been ascended. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 2 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF Lift motor2.
		PF Lift sensor2	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 2 and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF Lift sensor 2.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1800	00 Paper feeder communica- tion error A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Paper feeder	Check the wiring connection status with the main unit and, if necessary, try connecting it again.
		PF main PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF main PWB and Engine PWB (YC20) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
1900	Paper feeder EEPROM error When writing the data, read and write data does not match 4 times in succession.	PF main PWB (EEPROM)	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2000	Main motor steady-state error After main motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 2 s continuously.	Main motor	 To check the motor operation execute U030 Main (main motor) (see page 1-3- 32). Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if neces- sary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Main motor and Engine PWB (YC13) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the main motor.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
2010	Main motor startup error Main motor is not stabilized within 1 s since the motor is activated.	Main motor	 To check the motor operation execute U030 Main (main motor) (see page 1-3- 32). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, con- nect the connector all the way in. Main motor and Engine PWB (YC13) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the main motor.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
2500	Paper feed motor steady- state error The rated speed signal detected the stability OFF continuously for 2 s after the paper feed motor stabilizes.	Paper feed motor	 To check the motor operation execute U030 Feed (paper feed motor) (see page 1-3-32). Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Paper feed motor and Engine PWB (YC13) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the paper feed motor.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
2510	Paper feed motor startup error Paper feed motor is not stabi- lized within 1 s since the motor is activated.	Paper feed motor	 To check the motor operation execute U030 Feed (paper feed motor) (see page 1-3-32). Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Paper feed motor and Engine PWB (YC13) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the paper feed motor.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
2600	PF drive motor error (paper feeder) After PF drive motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF drive motor	 To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 2PF- Motor ON (see page 1-3-105). Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF drive motor and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF drive motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB.
2610	PF drive motor error (large capacity feeder) After PF drive motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF drive motor	 To check the feed unit operation, exe- cute U247 LCF- Motor ON (see page 1- 3-105). Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF drive motor and PF main PWB If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the PF drive motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
3100	00 Scanner carriage error ON/OFF of the HP sensor doesn't change after a pre- scribed pulse passes from power supply ON.	The scanner mirror frame is being locked after setup.	Check whether the scanner mirror frame has been unlocked and unlock if necessary (see page 1-2-10).
		Scanner motor	 To check the scanner motor, execute U073 (see page 1-3-54). Move the scanner by the hand to check whether it is unusually difficult to move. Check that the optical wire rope is not disengaged and engage the wire. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Scanner motor and Engine PWB (YC34) Engine PWB (YC37) and Main PWB (YC65) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the scanner motor.
		Home position sensor	 Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Home position sensor and Engine PWB (YC34) Replace the home position sensor.
		Engine PWB	Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-5-59,1-3-130).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
3200	LED lamp startup error The white reference data acquired by lighting the lamp at the initial operation is at the specified value or less. (Over 2 LED lamps do not light.)	LED PWB	Check if the LED lamp lights by executing [CCD] at U061. If it does not light, replace the lamp unit and execute [Table(ChartA)] at U411.
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB. (see page 1-5-59)
	"g'''')	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB. (see page 1-5-54)

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
		-	corrective measures
3210	CIS lamp error When input value at the time of CIS illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	CIS	 Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). Execute CIS of U061 lamp check (see page 1-3-43). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CIS and DPSHD PWB (YC2) DPSHD PWB (YC3) and DP relay PWB (YC2) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the CIS and execute U091 and U411 (see page 1-3-58,1-3-130).
		DPSHD PWB	Replace the DPSHD PWB.
		DP relay PWB	Replace the DP relay PWB.
3300	Optical system (AGC) error When the value of a gain becomes more than FF or 89 or less at least one at the AGC processing instruction execution time for CCD lamps.	LED lamp PWB	 To check the lamp, execute U061 CCD (see page 1-3-43). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. LED lamp PWB and CCD PWB (YC2) CCD PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC29) Engine PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC64) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the LED lamp won't light, replace the Lamp unit and execute U411 (see page 1-3-130).
		CCD PWB	Replace the ISU and execute U411 (see page 1-5-34).
		Engine PWB	Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-5-59,1-3-130).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
2240			COFFECTIVE measures
3310	CIS AGC error One of the gains is FF during the CCD lamp AGC is being processed.		 Execute 0906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). To check the lamp, execute U061 CIS (see page 1-3-43). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP CIS and DPSHD PWB (YC2) DPSHD PWB (YC3) and DP relay PWB (YC2) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the CIS and execute U091 and U411 (see page 1-3-58,1-3-130).
		DPSHD PWB	Replace the DPSHD PWB.
3500	Communication error between scanner and ASIC A wrong read-back value.	Engine PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Engine PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC64) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-5-59,1-3-130).
			Replace the main F WB (see page 1-3-34).
3600	Scanner sequence error	Engine PWB	 Execute U021 memory initializing (see page 1-3-28). Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-5-59,1-3-130).
3800	AFE error When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Engine PWB	 Confirm that the FCC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FCC wiring all the way in. CCD PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC29) If the FCC wiring is disconnected, replace the FCC wiring. Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-130). Replace the ISU and execute U411 (see page 1-5-34,1-3-130).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
3900	Backup memory read/write error (Engine PWB) Read and write data does not match.	Backup memory (Engine PWB PWB)	 Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. Replace the Engine PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-5-59,1-3-130).
4001	Polygon motor synchroni- zation error After polygon motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 10 s.	Polygon motor (Laser scanner unit)	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Polygon motor and Engine PWB (YC28) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
4011	Polygon motor steady-state error After Polygon motor is stabi- lized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Polygon motor (Laser scanner unit)	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Polygon motor and Engine PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
4101	BD initialization error After Polygon motor is driven, the BD signal is not detected for 1 s.	PD PWB (Laser scanner unit)	 Confirm that the FCC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FCC wiring all the way in. APC PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) If the FCC wiring is disconnected, replace the FCC wiring. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
4201	BD steady-state error The BD signal is not detected.	PD PWB (Laser scanner unit)	 Confirm that the FCC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FCC wiring all the way in. APC PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC5) If the FCC wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the FCC wiring. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
4700	VIDEO_ASIC device error Communication with the video ASIC has failed 10 times suc- cessively.	Engine PWB	 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and wait five seconds. Then plug in the power cord and then turn on the power switch. Check that the connectors on the engine PWB are properly connected, and if not, re-connect them. Replace the engine PWB. (see page P.1-4-208)
		Main PWB	 Check that the connectors on the main PWB are properly connected, and if not, re-connect them. Replace the main PWB. (see page P.1-4-208)

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
5101	Main high-voltage error Measure the inflowing current when Vpp is varied in 3 steps and verify if the difference of the currents of 0 and step 2 is	Drum unit	 Confirm that the drum or the drum screw can rotate. If it won't rotate, replace the drum unit. Check that the discharger lamp is properly connected.
	less than 5.	Charger roller unit	 Check that the high-voltage contacts are not distorted or adhered with foreign objects. Reinstall the chrager roller unit.Or, replace the charger roller unit (see page 1-5-23).
		High voltage PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. High voltage PWB (CN1) and Engine PWB (YC19) If the FCC wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the FCC wiring. Replace the High voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 2 temperature Input from fuser thermistor 2 is abnormal value continu- ously for 1 s.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser thermistor 2 and Engine PWB (YC9) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
6030	Broken fuser thermistor 2 wire The center thermistor A/D value is 4/1024 bit (19°C) or less, even if the main heater is turned on 10[sec] in succes- sion.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, con- nect the connector all the way in. Fuser thermistor 2 and Engine PWB (YC9) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors.
		Fuser thermistor 2	Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
6200	Broken fuser edge heater wire Even if 50 seconds pass after a warm-up start, when it will not be in a stable state. When the difference in tem- perature 4 seconds and 12 seconds after heater lighting is less than 45 °C. Even if 8 seconds pass during test mode operation, when change of AD is less than three.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Power source PWB (YC7) and Engine PWB (YC10) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors.
		Fuser thermostat	Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Fuser heater	
		Powe source PWB	Replace the power source PWB (see page 1-5-64).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
6220	Abnormally high fuser edge thermistor temperature Input from fuser thermistor 1 is abnormal value continu- ously for 1 s.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser thermistor 1 and Engine PWB (YC9) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors.
		Fuser thermistor 1	Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
6230	Broken fuser edge thermis- tor wire A/D value of the fuser thermis- tor 1 exceeds 252 bit (10 °C) continuously for 4 s during warming up.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser thermistor 1 and Engine PWB (YC9) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors.
		Fuser thermistor 1	Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6250	Abnormally low fuser edge thermistor temperature When the detection tempera- ture of the fixing thermistor 1 is falling target temperature by 100 °C or more for 1 second after secondary stable tem- perature attainment.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser thermistor 1 and Engine PWB (YC9) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. If the I/F connector pins of the fuser unit and the main unit are deformed owing to foreign matters, such as paper dusts, replace the connectors or the units including the connectors.
		Fuser thermostat Fuser heater	Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
6400	Zero-cross signal error While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero- cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Fuser unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Power source PWB (YC7) and engine PWB (YC10) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the fuser heater PWB.
6910	Engine software ready error The device won't engage in ready state in 60 minutes after warming-up has began. (A previous timeout process has not been cancelled.)	Engine PWB	 Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. Reinstall the engine software. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7200	Broken outer temperature sensor 2 wire The sensor input sampling is greater than 818.	APC PWB	 Confirm External Temp is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-70). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. APC PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the BD PWB.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
7210	Short-circuited outer tem- perature sensor The temperature sensor input sampling is less than 353.	APC PWB	 Confirm External Temp is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-70). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. APC PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the BD PWB. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-
7800	Broken outer temperature sensor wire The temperature sensor input sampling is more than 244.	Thermistor PWB	 59). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Thermistor PWB and Engine PWB (YC12). If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the thermistor PWB. Check the engine software and upgrade
			to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7810	Short-circuited external thermistor wire The temperature sensor input sampling is less than 11.	Thermistor PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Thermistor PWB and Engine PWB (YC6) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the thermistor PWB.
			 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
7901	Drum EEPROM error No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	Drum unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Durm unit and Drum relay PWB (YC2) Drum relay PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC12) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the Drum unit (see page 1-5- 21). Check the engine software and upgrade
			to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
7911 Develop error No resp the devi for 5 ms problem success Mismate two loca success Mismate data and	Developer unit EEPROM error No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs	Developer unit	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer unit and developer relay PWB (YC1) Developer relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the Developer unit (see page 1- 5-18).
	8 times successively.	Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
------	--	-------------------------------	---
			corrective measures
8010	Punch motor 1 error When the punch motor is driven, punch home position sensor does not turn on within 200 ms.	Punch motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch home position sensor	 Execute U241 Punch - Punch HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch home position sensor and Punch PWB (YC8) Replace the Punch home position sensor.
		Punch PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) (3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
8020	Bunch motor 2 orror	Runch motor	Corrective measures Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check
8020	Home position is not obtained in 3 s after home position is initialized or in standby.	Punch motor	 Execute 0240 Motor - Putter to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7)(3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8)(1000-sheet finisher) Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
8030	Punch motor 3 error Home position does not turn from On to Off in 50 ms after home position has been ini- tialized.	Punch motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) (3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
	oontento		corrective measures
8090	DF paddle motor error When the DF paddle motor is driven, DF paddle sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF paddle motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Beat to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Check that the paddle can rotate. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the paddle. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle motor and DF main PWB (YC15) (3000-sheet finisher) DF paddle motor and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF paddle motor.
		DF paddle sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Lead Paddle to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF paddle sensor and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the DF paddle sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
8100	DF eject release motor error When the DF eject release motor is driven, DF bundle discharge sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF eject release motor DF bundle discharge unit sensor	 Execute U240 Motor - Eject Unlock (Full) to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Check that the eject guide of the process tray is opened and, if not, cor- rect the guide. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the eject guide. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC22)(3000-sheet finisher) DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC20)(1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF eject release motor.
		DF bundle discharge unit sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Bundle Eject HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC22)(3000-sheet finisher) DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC20)(1000-sheet finisher) Replace the DF bundle eject unit sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
8110	DF shift motor 1 error (3000-sheet finisher) DF shift sensor 1 won't turn on when it has travelled 160 mm after DF shift motor 1 is driven.	DF shift motor 1 front	 Execute U240 Motor - Sort Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the front shift guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front shift guide. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift motor 1 front and DF main PWB (YC14) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF shift motor 1 front.
		DF shift sensor 1 front	 Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Front HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1- 3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift sensor 1 front and DF main PWB (YC23) Replace the DF shift sensor 1 front.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
8120	DF shift motor 2 error (3000-sheet finisher) DF shift sensor 2 won't turn on when it has travelled 160 mm after DF shift motor 2 is driven.	DF shift motor 2 rear	 Execute U240 Motor - Sort Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the rear shift guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the rear shift guide. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift motor 2 rear and DF main PWB (YC14) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF shift motor 2 rear.
		DF shift sensor 2 rear	 Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Tail HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift sensor 2 rear and DF main PWB (YC23) Replace the DF shift set sensor2 rear.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
Coue	Contents		corrective measures
8130	DF shift release motor error (3000-sheet finisher) When the DF shift release motor is driven, DF shift release sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF shift release motor	 Check that cancelling the maintenance mode after executing U240 Motor - Sort for the finisher operation check lets the rear and forth cursors returns to the home position (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the front and rear shift guide to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the shift guide front and rear. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift release motor and DF main PWB (YC14) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF shift release motor.
		DF shift release sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Unlock HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1- 3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift release sensor and DF main PWB (YC23) Replace the DF shift release sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Rolated parts	Check procedures/
Coue	Contents	Related parts	corrective measures
8140	DF tray error 1 When the main tray has ascended, DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor does not turn on within 30 s.	DF tray motor DF tray sensor 1 DF tray upper surface sensor	 Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF Main PWB(YC16) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray motor and DF Main PWB(YC14) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF tray motor. Execute U241 Finisher - Tray U-Limit, Tray Top to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 1 and DF Main PWB(YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) Tray Sensor 1 and DF Main PWB(YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF Main PWB(YC21,YC13) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF Main PWB(YC21,YC13) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF Main PWB(YC21,YC13) (3000-sheet finisher)
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Codo	Contonts	Polated parts	Check procedures/
Code	Contents	Related parts	corrective measures
8150	DF tray error 2 When the main tray has descended, DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sen- sor does not turn off within 5 s.	DF tray motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC16) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC14) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF tray sensor 1 DF tray upper surface sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Tray U-Limit, Tray Top to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 1 and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF main PWB (YC21,YC13) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray sensor 1 and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF main PWB (YC18) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
0000	Contenta		corrective measures
8160	DF tray error 3 When the main tray has descended, DF tray sensor 4 does not turn on within 20 s.	DF tray motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC16) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC14) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF tray sensor 4	 Execute U241 Finisher - Tray Middle to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 4 and DF main PWB (YC23) (3000-sheet finisher) DF tray sensor 4 and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the DF tray sensor 4.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	corrective measures
8170	DF side registration motor 1 error 1 When initial operation, DF side registration sensor 1 does not turn on within 3 s.	DF side registration motor 1 DF side registration	 Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the front side registration guide to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front side registration guide. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC15) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF side registration motor 1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width Front to
		sensor 1	 check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 1. and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration sensor 1. and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) 4. Replace the DF side registration sensor 1.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
ooue	oontents		corrective measures
8180	DF side registration motor 1 error 2 JAM6810 (jam in front of width alignment) is detected twice.	DF side registration motor 1	 corrective measures 1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). 2. Manipulate the front side registration guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front side registration guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC15) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		DF side registration sensor 1.	 Replace the DF side registration motor Replace the DF side registration motor Execute U241 Finisher - Width Front to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 1 and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration sensor 1 and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF side registration sensor 1.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
8190	DF side registration motor 2	DF side registration	1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to
	error 1	motor 2	check the finisher operation (see page
	When initial operation, DF		1-3-94).
	side registration sensor 2		2. Manipulate the rear side registration
	does not turn on within 3 s.		guide back and forth to check it is
			smoothly operable.
			3. Check that the drive from the motor
			reaches the rear side registration guide.
			4. Commit that the winning connector is
			connect the connector all the way in
			DE side registration motor 2 and DE
			main PWB (YC15) (3000-sheet finisher)
			DF side registration motor 2 and DF
			main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher)
			5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or
			grounded, replace the wiring.
			6. Replace the DF side registration motor
			2.
		DF side registration	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width tail HP
		sensor 2	to check the finisher switch (see page 1-
			3-96).
			2. Check that the sensor and its mounting
			bracket are correctly positioned.
			3. Confirm that the wiring connector is
			firmly connected and, if necessary,
			connect the connector all the way in.
			DF side registration sensor 2 and DF
			DE side registration sensor 2 and DE
			main PW/B (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher)
			4 Replace the DE side registration sensor
			2.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
8200	DE side registration motor 2	DE side registration	Corrective measures Lize Motor Width Test to
8200	DF side registration motor 2 error 2 JAM6910 (jam in rear of width alignment) is detected twice.	DF side registration motor 2	 Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the rear side registration guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the rear side registration guide. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 2 and DF main PWB (YC15) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration motor 2 and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or
			grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF side registration motor 2.
		DF side registration sensor 2	 Execute U241 Finisher - Width tail HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1- 3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 2 and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF side registration sensor 2 and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the DF side registration sensor 2.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
8210	DF slide motor error When initial operation, DF staple sensor does not turn on within 3 s.	DF slide motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Staple Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the staple unit back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the staple unit. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF slide motor and DF main PWB (YC12) (3000-sheet finisher) DF slide motor and DF main PWB (YC10) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF slide motor.
		DF staple sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Width Staple HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF staple sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) (3000-sheet finisher) DF staple sensor and DF main PWB (YC20) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF staple sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
9220	DE stanla motor arror 4		1 Demove the staple unit and check that
8230	DF staple motor error 1 Staple JAM (DF) has been detected twice in a row. (The second JAM detection condition fullfilled with the home position did not detected in 600 ms after the motor was driven.)	DF staple motor	 Remove the staple unit and check that stapling is possible without a jam. Confirm that the FCC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FCC wiring all the way in. Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC17) (3000-sheet finisher) Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the staple unit. (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
		DF staple sensor	Replace the staple unit.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.
8240	DF staple motor error 2 (3000-sheet finisher) Staple JAM (DF) has been detected twice in a row. (The second JAM detection condition fullfilled with a lock detection signal maintained 1 V for 500 ms continuously, while the stapler motor was driven.)	DF staple motor	 Remove the staple unit and check that stapling is possible without a jam. Confirm that the FCC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FCC wiring all the way in. Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC17) (3000-sheet finisher) Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC11) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the staple unit. (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
0.050	Main troy orror 4		Corrective measures
8250	In case the lock signal is 0.7V or less for 10 s in succession during the DF tray motor drive. (35/40 ppm model only)	DF tray motor	 Execute [Motor] > [Tray] in 0240 Check- ing the operation of the finisher. (see page P.1-6-305) Check if the main tray can be moved up and down manually without getting caught. Check if the motor drive is delivered to the main tray. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected, and if necessary, con- nect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor - DF main PWB(YC11) If the wiring is disconnected, short-cir- cuited or has a ground fault, replace the wire. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.
8260	DF middle motor error When the DF middle motor is driven, DF paddle sensor does not turn on within 1s.	DF middle motor	 Execute U240 Motor - Middle(L) to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Check that the drive from the motor reaches the middle roller. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF middle motor and DF main PWB (YC12) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF middle motor.
		DF paddle sensor	 Execute U241 Finisher - Lead Paddle to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle sensor and DF main PWB (YC19) Replace the DF paddle sensor.
			Replace the DF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
0000	Contents		corrective measures
8410	Punch slide motor error 1 The punch slide sensor won't turn On when home position has been moved by 30 mm.	Punch slide motor	 Execute U240 Booklet - Punch Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the punch slide part of the punch unit back and forth to check it can smoothly move. Check that the drive from the motor reaches punch part. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide motor and Punch PWB (YC3) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the punch slide motor.
		Punch slide sensor	 Execute U241 Punch - Punch HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide sensor and Punch PWB (YC6) Replace the punch slide sensor.
		Punch PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) (3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB

Code	Contents	Rolated parts	Check procedures/
Code	Gontenta	Related parts	corrective measures
8420	Punch slide motor error 2 In detection of paper edges, the paper edge cannot be detected in 30 mm move.	Punch slide motor	 Execute U240 Booklet - Punch Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-94). Manipulate the punch slide part of the punch unit back and forth to check it can smoothly move. Check that the drive from the motor reaches punch part. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide motor and Punch PWB (YC3) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the punch slide motor.
		Punch paper edge sensor 1,2	 Execute U241 Punch - Edge Face 1,2,3,4 to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch paper edge sensor 1,2 and Punch PWB (YC5,YC7) Replace the punch paper edge sensor 1,2.
		Punch PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) (3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8) (1000-sheet finisher) Replace the Punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			Corrective measures
8430	Punch unit communication error Communication with the punch unit is not possible.	Punch PWB	 Confirm that the winng connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) (3000-sheet finisher) Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC8) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the Punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB
8500	Mailbox communication error (3000-sheet finisher) Communication failed to be established after the mailbox was hooked up.	MB main PWB	 Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB main PWB (YC3) and DF main PWB (YC6) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the MB main PWB
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB
8510	MB conveying motor error 1 (3000-sheet finisher) When initial operation, MB home position sensor does not turn on within 5 s.	MB conveying motor	 If the transfer roller won't rotate smoothly, repair its mechanism. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB conveying motor and MB main PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the MB conveying motor.
		MB home position sensor	 Execute U241 Mail Box - Motor HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB home position sensor and MB main PWB (YC2) Replace the MB home position sensor.
		MB main PWB	Replace the MB main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
		p	corrective measures
8520	0 MB conveying motor error 2 (3000-sheet finisher) When standby operation, MB home position sensor does not turn off within 1 s.	MB conveying motor	 Execute Mail Box - Conv of U240 finisher operation check (see page 1-3- 94). Manipulate the conveying roller of the mailbox to check it can smoothly rotate. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the conveying roller. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB conveying motor and MB main PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the MB conveying motor.
		MB home position sensor	 Execute U241 Mail Box - Motor HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3- 96). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB home position sensor and MB main PWB (YC2) Replace the MB home position sensor.
		MB main PWB	Replace the MB main PWB
8800	Document finisher main program error Document finisher main pro- gram error at power up.	DF main PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF main PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC18) (3000-sheet finisher) DF main PWB (YC7) and Engine PWB (YC18) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF main PWB. Check the engine software and upgrade
		J	to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			corrective measures
8900	Document finisher backup error Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	DF main PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF main PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC18) (3000-sheet finisher) DF main PWB (YC7) and Engine PWB (YC18) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DF main PWB.
8990	DF Setup error When a bridge unit is unde- tectable in the state where DF is connected. When a bridge unit is detected in the state where DF is not connected.	Bridge unit Document finisher	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF main PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC18) (3000-sheet finisher) DF main PWB (YC7) and Engine PWB (YC18) (1000-sheet finisher) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB.
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB. (see page 1-5-59)
9000	Document processor com- munication error Communication with the docu- ment processor is not possi- ble.	DP main PWB	 Check that the versions of the main unit firmware and the DP firmware are identical. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP main PWB(YC1) and Engine PWB(YC33) Engine PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC64) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DP main PWB
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB. (see page 1-5-59)

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9010	Coin vender communica- tion error A communication error from coin vender is detected 10 times in succession.	U206 setting	Set maintenance mode U206 to off when a coin vender is not installed (see page 1-3-84).
		Coin vender control PWB	 Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Coin vender control PWB and Engine PWB (YC22) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the Coin vender control PWB.
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
9040	DP lift motor going up error When the DP lift motor is driven, DP lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 1500 pulse. (Three recovery times.) The above has been detected 5 times. * : The number of detec- tion should be weighted with one for the rise at job start and two for the irregular rise during transpot- ing. The accumulated	DP lift motor	 Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). Execute U243 Lift Motor to check the DP motor operation (see page 1-3-98). Check that the original document lift guide can move upwards. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift motor and DP main PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DP lift motor.
	number must be cleared at completion of a normal rise. The default threshold is 5.	DP lift sensor 1	 Execute U244 Lift L-Limit to check DP switch (see page 1-3-99). Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift sensor 1 and DP main PWB (YC4) Replace the DP lift sensor 1.
		DP main PWB	Replace the DP main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
			1 Evenue 1000 Concreting Operation
9050	DP lift motor going down error When the DP lift motor is driven, DP lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 1500 pulse. (Three recovery times.) The above has been detected 5 times.	DP lift motor	 Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). Execute U243 Lift Motor to check the DP motor operation (see page 1-3-98). Check that the original document lift guide can move downwards. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift motor and DP main PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DP lift motor.
		DP lift sensor 2	 Execute U244 Lift L-Limit to check DP switch (see page 1-3-99). Confirm that the DP lift sensor 2 has been firmly fitted. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift sensor 2 and DP main PWB (YC2) Replace the DP lift sensor2.
		DP main PWB	Replace the DP main PWB
9060	DP EEPROM error Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 3 times successively. Mismatch between writing	DP main PWB	 Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. Replace the DP main PWB
	3 times successively.	Device damage of EEPROM	Contact the Service Support.
9070	Communication error between DP and SHD A communication error is detected.	DP SHD PWB	 Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP SHD PWB (YC1) and DP main PWB (YC10) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the DP SHD PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9080	LED fault detection A block is existent below a peak which was obtained by activating the LEDs in the four CIS blocks at power on, which is less than 80hex.	DP CIS	 Execute CIS automatic original document alignment by U411 (see page 1-3-130). Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CIS and DP SHD PWB (YC2) DP SHD PWB (YC1) and DP main PWB (YC10) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Replace the CIS and execute U411.
		DP SHD PWB	Replace the DP SHD PWB.
9100	Coin vender control PWB error Communication error has been detected at the coin mec of the coin vender control PWB.	Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9110	Coin vender rejector error Communication error has been detected in connection with the coin mec and the rejector.	Rejector	 Check that the rejector is firmly installed and, if not, install firmly. Replace the rejector.
9120	Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 10)	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
	Change is empty despite change is enough.	Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9130	Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 50)	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
	Change is empty despite change is enough.	Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9140	Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 100)	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
	Change is empty despite change is enough.	Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9150	Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 500)	Change tube	Check no exchange jam is observed at the outlet and, if necessary, repair it.
	Change is empty despite change is enough.	Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9160	Coin vender pay-out error Coin is paid out despite the pay-out motor is determined not active.	Pay-out motor	Replace the coin mec.
9170	Coin vender pay-out sensor error	Pay-out area	Check no exchange jam is observed at the outlet and, if necessary, repair it.
	Coin is paid out despite the	Pay-out motor	Replace the coin mec.
	pay-out motor is determined not active.	Pay-out sensor	Replace the coin mec.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
0190	DB food chift motor orror	DR food obift	1 Upplug the power cord from the well out
9180	The HP cannot be detected even after executing the HP detection retrial 3 consecu- tive times. HP detection: when the DP feed-shift motor is driven to move to the HP, the HP is not detected after it is rotated once.	motor	 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and wait five seconds. Then plug in the power cord and then turn on the power switch. Confirm that the connector of the DP feed-shift motor is firmly connected, and if necessary, push the unit all the way in. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected, and if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. If the wire is disconnected, short-circuited or has a ground fault, or the connector pin is deformed, replace the wire. Replace the DF feed-shift motor.
		DP feed-shift sensor	 Rotate the DP feed-shift motor manually to check that it is not unusually difficult to rotate. Check if the DP feed-shift sensor is out of position because it has dropped off and if the sensor light is interrupted by the actuator. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected, and if necessary, con- nect the connector all the way in. If the wiring is disconnected, short-cir- cuited or has a ground fault, replace the wire. Replace the DP feed-shift sensor.
9500	Image processing circuit fault (Platen side)	Main PWB Engine PWB	 Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Main PWB (YC65 and Engine PWB (YC37) Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5- 54). Replace the Engine PWB Contact the Service Support.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9510	Image processing circuit fault (DP side)	Main PWB DP SHD PWB	 Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. DP relay PWB (YC2) and DP SHD PWB (YC3) Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5- 54). Replace the DP SHD PWB. Contact the Service Support.
F000	Communication error between main PWB and operation PWB	Main PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Check that the wirings and connetors between the main circuit PWB and the operation circuit PWB and between the main circuit PWB and the HDD are normal. Main PWB (YC12,YC6) and Operation PWB (YC5,YC8) Check that the DDR memories in the main circuit PWB are well conducted and, if not, replace. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). Execute U021 to initialize memory. (see page 1-3-28) Replace the Main PWB. Copy the log File saved in the HDD by U964 in USB memory and contact the service support (see page 1-3-205). Replace the operation PWB (see page 1-5- 70).
F010	Main PWB checksum error	Defective main PWB.	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
F020 F021 F022	System memory error Controller detection error	Defective main PWB.	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/
F040	Communication error between Main PWB and Print engine	Main PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Repair or replace the wire from the engine PWB, that may be grounded. (Check short-circuit between 5V and 3.3V.) Check that the FCC wire connecting between the main PWB (YC3) and the engine PWB (YC46) is normal and, if necessary, re-insert.Or, replace the FCC wire. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
		Engine PWB	 Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5- 59).
		HDD	Replace the HDD.
F041	Communication error between Main PWB and Scanner engine	Main PWB	 Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Check that the wires between the main PWB and the engine PWB are normal. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).
		Engine PWB	Replace the Engine PWB.
F050	Print engine ROM check- sum error	Engine software Engine PWB	 Install the latest engine software. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. If not corrected, Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
F051	Scanner engine ROM checksum error	Scanner software Engine PWB	 Install the latest scanner software. 1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. 3. If not corrected, Replace the Engine PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
F052	Panel ROM checksum error	Panel software	Install the latest panel software.
F052	Panel ROM checksum error	Panel software Main PWB	 Install the latest panel software. 1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Repair or replace the wire from the engine PWB, that may be grounded. (Check short-circuit between 5V and 3.3V.) 3. Check that the FCC wire connecting between the main PWB (YC64, YC65) and the engine PWB (YC3, YC37) is normal and, if necessary, re-insert.Or, replace the FCC wire. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-54).

NOTE:

The other F codes are indicated to the appendix (see page 2-4-18).

Image formation problems 1-4-3

(2) No image

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement.

(3) Image is too

light.

(1) No image appears (entirely white).





appears (entirely

See page 1-4-70

(6) Black streaks are printed vertically.



printed horizontally.

(7) Streaks are



See page 1-4-73

edge of the

image is spo-

radically misaligned with the

(12)The leading

original.

See page 1-4-72

(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



See page 1-4-74 (16)Fusing is loose.



See page 1-4-74 (17)Image is out of focus.



See page 1-4-75

See page 1-4-75

See page 1-4-71 See page 1-4-71

(8) A part of image

is dark or light.

See page 1-4-73 (13)Paper is wrinkled.



See page 1-4-74

(18)Image center does not align with the original



See page 1-4-76

(4) The background is colored.



See page 1-4-72 (9) Spots are

printed.



See page 1-4-73 (14)Offset occurs.

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.



See page 1-4-72 (10)Image is blurred.



See page 1-4-74 (15)Part of image is missing.



See page 1-4-75



See page 1-4-75









(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Print example	le Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	The trans- fer unit is not prop- erly attached.	Defective the transfer roler unit.	Reattach the transfer roller unit. Or replace the transfer roller unit.
	Defective transfer bias output.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. High voltage PWB and engine PWB (YC19)
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Replace the high voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
	Defective developer bias output.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. High voltage PWB and engine PWB (YC19)
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the high voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
	No laser scanner unit	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
	laser is out- put.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. LED PWB and CCD PWB (YC2) CCD PWB and engine PWB (YC29)
		Defective laser CCD PWB.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.

(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Print example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. High voltage PWB and engine PWB (YC19)
		Defective charger roller unit.	Replace the charger roller unit (see page 1-5-23).
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Replace the high voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. LED PWB and CCD PWB (YC2) CCD PWB and engine PWB (YC29)
		Defective CCD PWB.	Replace the image scanner unit (see page 1-5-34).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-54).
	The laser scanner unit beams con- tinuously.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. APC PWB and engine PWB (YC4)
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.

(3) Image is too light.

Print example	e Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective transfer charger out- put.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. High voltage PWB and engine PWB (YC19)
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Replace the high voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Deteriorated	toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(4) The background is colored.

Print example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective main charger out- put.	Defective connector cable or poor contact in the con- nector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for conti- nuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. High voltage PWB and engine PWB (YC19)
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Replace the high voltage PWB (see page 1-5-66).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-59).
	Deteriorated	toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures	
	Foreign matter in the devel- oper unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developer unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-18).	
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.	
	Dirty laser scanner unit dust shield glass.	Perform the laser scanner unit dust shield glass cleaning.	
	Adhesion of foreign objects on the laser beam path.	Check adhesion of foreign objects on the laser beam path and remove them if any.	

(6) Black streaks are printed vertically.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty slit glass.	Clean the slit glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. Flawed drum. Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade in the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Defencive developer roller.	Clean the developer roller. Or replace the developer unit.
	Dirty or flawed chager roller.	Clearn the chager roller. Or replace the chager roller unit (see page 1-5-23).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.

(7) Streaks are printed horizontally.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. Flawed drum. Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Dirty developer section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developer section.
	Poor contact of grounding ter- minal of drum unit.	Check the installation of the drum unit. If it operates incorrectly, replace it (see page 1-5-21).

(8) A part of image is dark or light.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the LED PWB (see page 1-5-37).
	One-side-only closure of the right cover.	Close the right over again.
	The transfer unit is not prop- erly attached.	Reattach the transfer roller. Or replace the transfer roller unit.
	The developer unit is sepa- rated from the drum unit.	Clean the developer pulley. Or replace the developer unit.
		Clean the Drum. Or relpace the drum unit.
	Dirty laser scanner unit dust shield glass.	Perform the laser scanner unit dust shield glass cleaning.

(9) Spots are printed.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. Flawed drum. Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Dirty or flawed chager roller.	Clearn the chager roller. Or replace the chager roller unit (see page 1-5-23).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade in the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Flawed developer roller.	Replace the developer unit (see page 1-5-18).
	Dirty heat roller and press roller.	Clean the heat roller and press roller.
(10) Image is blurred.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the fuse unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted leading edge reg- istration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-36).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-47).

(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper feed clutch, registra- tion clutch or duplex clutch operating incorrectly.	Check the installation of the clutch. If it operates incor- rectly, replace it.

(13) Paper is wrinkled.

	Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.	
		Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	5 7	One-side-only closure of the right cover.	Close the right over again.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).	

(14) Offset occurs.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade in the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Defective discharger lamp.	Clean the discharger lamp. Or replace the drum unit.
	Defective fuser unit.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.

(15) Part of image is missing.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Replace the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. Flawed drum. Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-21).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller. Replace the transfer roller if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-24).

(16) Fusing is loose.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications, replace paper.
	Flawed heat roller or press roller.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Defective pressure springs.	
	Defective fuser heater.	

(17) Image is out of focus.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-34).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-36).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner lead- ing edge registration (see page 1-3-48).
	Original is not placed cor- rectly.	Place the original correctly.

1-4-4 Electric problems

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement. Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does	1. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	2. The power cord is not plugged in prop- erly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	 Defective main power switch. 	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	Replace the power source PWB (see page 1-5-64).
	6. Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-54).
(2) Eject motor does not operate.	 Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector. 	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Eject motor and engine PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective drive trans- mission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(3) Power source fan motor does not	 Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector. 	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Power source fan motor and main PWB (YC10)
operate.	2. Defective motor.	Replace the power source fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(4) Eject fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Eject fan motor and engine PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the eject fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(5)	1. Defective connector	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the
does not operate.	tact in the connector.	LSU fan motor and engine PWB (YC12)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the LSU fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(6) ISU motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. ISU motor and Engine PWB (YC34)
	2. Defective drive trans- mission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the ISU motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the Engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(7)Paper feed clutch1, 2 does not operate.	 Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector. 	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper feed clutch 1 and engine PWB (YC3) Paper feed clutch 2 and engine PWB (YC17)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the paper feed clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(8) Registration clutch does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Registration clutch and engine PWB (YC13)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the registration clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(9) Duplex clutch does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Duplex clutch and engine PWB (YC13)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the duplex clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(10) Middle clutch does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Middle clutch and engine PWB (YC17)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the middle clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) MP solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP solenoid and engine PWB (YC13)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the MP solenoid.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(12) Feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Feedshift solenoid and engine PWB (YC7)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the Feedshift solenoid.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(13) The message requesting paper to	 Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector. 	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper sensor and engine PWB (YC14)
be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cas-	2. Deformed actuator of the paper sensor.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
sette 1,2.	 Defective paper sen- sor. 	Replace the cassette PWB.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(14) The message requesting paper to	 Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector. 	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP paper sensor and engine PWB (YC15)
be loaded is shown when paper is present on the MP	2. Deformed actuator of the MP paper sensor.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
tray.	 Defective MP paper sensor. 	Replace the MP paper sensor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(15) The size of paper on the cassette is not displayed cor-	1. Defective connector cable or poor con- tact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper size width switch and engine PWB (YC14) Paper size length switch and engine PWB (YC14)
rectly.	2. Defective cassette size switch.	Replace the paper size width switch or paper size length switch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).
(16) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying or eject section is indi- cated when the main power switch is turned on.	 A piece of paper torn from paper is caught around registration sensor, duplex sen- sor, feed sensor or eject sensor. 	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective sensor.	Replace the registration sensor, duplex sensor, feed sensor or eject sensor.
(17) A message indicat-	1. Deformed actuator of the interlock switch.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
ing cover open is displayed when the front cover or right cover is closed.	2. Defective interlock switch.	Replace the interlock switch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-59).

1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following roll- ers are dirty with paper powder. Pickup roller Paper feed roller MP paper feed roller	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the following rollers is deformed. Pickup roller Paper feed roller MP paper feed roller	Check visually and replace any deformed (see page 1-5-10, 1-5-11).
	Defective paper feed clutch installation.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following roll- ers are dirty with paper powder. Upper registration roller Lower registration roller	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Defective registration clutch installation.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Paper width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the paper width guide visually and remedy or replace if necessary.
(4)	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
Multiple sheets of	Paper is loaded incorrectly.	Load the paper correctly.
paper are red.	Check if the retard roller is worn.	Replace the retard roller if it is worn (see page 1-5-11).
(5)	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the upper and lower registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the heat roller or press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Check visually and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-25).
(6) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the drum unit or developer unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the drum unit or developer unit.
(7) Abnormal noise is	Check if the rollers, pulleys and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushes and gears.
heard.	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly. Paper feed clutch Registration clutch Duplex clutch	Check visually and remedy if necessary.

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement.

1-4-6 Send error code

This section describes the scanning errors and descriptions, preventive actions, as well as corrective actions. Error codes not described here could fall within software errors.

If such an error is encountered, turn power off then on, and advise the service representative.

(1) Scan to SMB error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Host destined does not exist on the net- work.	 Confirm the destined host. Confirm thedevice's network parameters. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct.
1102	Login to the host has failed.	 Confirm user name and password. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct. Check the host if the folder is properly shared.
1103	Destined host, folder, and/or file names are invalid.	 Check illegal characters are not contained within these names. Check the name of the folder and files conform with the naming syntax. Confirm destined host and folder.
1105	SMB protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's SMB protocols.
2101	Login to the host has failed.	 Confirm the destined host. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. Check the SMB port number. Confirm the device's network parameters. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct.
2201	Writing scanned data has failed.	 Check the file name to save the scanned data. Confirm the device's network parameters. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct.
2203	No response from the host during a cer- tain period of time.	 Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device.

(2) Scan to FTP error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	FTP server does not exist on the net- work.	 Check the FTP server name. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct.
1102	Login to the FTP server has failed.	 Confirm user name and password. Check the FTP server name.
1103	Destined folder is invalid.	 Check that the illegal characters are not contained within these names. Check the FTP server name.
1105	FTP protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's FTP protocols.
1131	Initializing TLS has failed.	1. Confirm device's security parameters.
1132	TLS negotiation has failed.	 Confirm device's security parameters. Check the FTP server name.
2101	Access to the FTP server has failed.	 Check the FTP server name. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. Check the FTP port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is con- nected. Check the FTP server name.
2102	Access to the FTP server has failed. (Connection timeout)	 Check the FTP server name. Check the FTP port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Check the FTP server name.
2103	The server cannot establish communi- cation.	 Check the FTP server name. Check the FTP port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Check the FTP server name.
2201	Connection with the FTP server has failed.	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Confirm destined folder. Check the FTP server name.
2202	Connection with the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2203	No response from the server during a certain period of time.	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
2231	Connection with the FTP server has	1. Confirm device's network parameters.
	failed.	2. Confirm the network parameters the device is con-
	(FTPS communication)	nected.
3101	FTP server responded with an error.	1. Confirm device's network parameters.
		2. Confirm the network parameters the device is con-
		nected.
		3. Check the FTP server.

(3) Scan to E-mail error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	SMTP/POP3 server does not exist on the network.	 Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the parameters of the network to which the device is connected are correct.
1102	Login to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	 Confirm user name and password. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
1104	The domain the destined address belongs is prohibited by scanning restriction.	1. Confirm device's SMTP parameters.
1105	SMTP protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's SMTP protocols.
1106	Sender's address is not specified.	1. Confirm device's SMTP protocols.
2101	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	 Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is con- nected. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2102	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout)	 Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2103	The server cannot establish communi- cation.	 Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2201	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2202	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Timeout)	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2204	The size of scanning exceeded its limit.	1. Confirm device's network parameters.
3101	SMTP/POP3 server responded with an error.	 Confirm device's network parameters. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
3102	Error: Server Response.	 Check the SMTP/POP3 server. Wait a minute and trye again.

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
3201	No SMTP authentication is found.	 Check the SMTP server. The device supports SMTP authentication services including CRAM-MD5, DIGEST-MD5, PLAIN and LOGIN.
4803	Failed to establish the SSL session.	LOGIN. 1. Verify the self certificate of the device. 2. Check the server certificate of the SMTP/POP3 server. 3. Check the SMTP/POP3 configuration of the device and the SMTP/POP3 server.

1-4-7 Error codes

(1) Error code

Error codes are listed on the communication reports, activity report, etc. The codes consist of an error code indication U followed by a 5-digit number. (Error codes for V34 communication errors start with an E indication, followed by five digits.)

The upper three of the five digits indicate general classification of the error and its cause, while the lower two indicate the detailed classification. Items for which detailed classification is not necessary have 00 as the last two digits.



Figure 1-4-4

(2) Table of general classification

Error code	Description
U00000/E00000	No response or busy after the set number of redials.
U00100/E00100	Transmission was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key.
U00200/E00200	Reception was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key.
U00300/E00300	Recording paper on the destination unit has run out during transmission.
U004XX/E004XX	A connection was made but interrupted during handshake with the receiver unit (See page 1-4-91).
U00500/E00500	Multiple communication was interrupted and call was not made on destination units after interruption.
U006XX/E006XX	Communication was interrupted because of a machine problem (See page 1-4-92).
U00700/E00700	Communication was interrupted because of a problem in the destination unit.
U008XX/E008XX	A page transmission error occurred in G3 mode (See page 1-4-92).
U009XX/E009XX	A page reception error occurred in G3 mode (See page 1-4-92).
U010XX/E010XX	Transmission in G3 mode was interrupted by a signal error (See page 1-4-93).
U011XX/E011XX	Reception in G3 mode was interrupted by a signal error (See page 1-4-95).
U01400/E01400	An invalid one-touch key was specified during communication.
U01500/E01500	A communication error occurred when calling in V.8 mode.
U01600/E01600	A communication error occurred when called in V.8 mode.
U017XX/E017XX	A communication error occurred before starting T.30 protocol during transmission in V.34 mode (See page 1-4-96).
U018XX/E018XX	A communication error occurred before starting T.30 protocol during reception in V.34 mode (See page 1-4-97).
U02000/E02000	Relay broadcast was refused by a relay station because of a mismatch in permit ID num- ber and permit telephone number when a relay command was issued.
U02100/E02100	A relay command failed because the destination unit (relay station) had no relay broad- cast capability.
U02200/E02200	A relay command from a command station failed because a telephone number that was not registered in the relay station was specified. Or, relay broadcast was requested to a relay station but failed because a telephone number that was not registered in the relay station was specified. Or, Subaddress-based relay broadcast transmission failed because the data registered in the Subaddress relay box was deleted.
U023XX/E023XX	Receiving station information was not normally received in reception of a relay command (See page 1-4-97).
U02400/E02400	An interoffice subaddress-based relay transmission was interrupted because of a mis- match in the specified relay box number.
U03000/E03000	No document was present in the destination unit when polling reception started.
U03100/E03100	In reverse polling, although no original was set in the destination unit, transmission was complete.
U03200/E03200	In confidential polling reception, data was not accumulated in the specified box in the destination unit. Or, in interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, data was not stored in the box specified by the destination unit.

Error code	Description
U03300/E03300	In polling reception from a unit of our make, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permit ID or telephone number. Or, in interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permit ID or telephone num- ber.
U03400/E03400	Polling reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in individual numbers (destina- tion unit is either of our make or by another manufacturer).
U03500/E03500	In confidential polling reception, the specified confidential box No. was not registered in the destination. Or, in interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, the specified Subaddress confidential box number was not registered in the destination unit. Or, the destination was being accessed.
U03600/E03600	Confidential polling reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in specified confi- dential box No. Or, an interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception was inter- rupted because of a mismatch in the specified subaddress confidential box number.
U03700/E03700	Confidential polling reception failed because the destination unit had no confidential poll- ing transmission capability or data was not accumulated in any box in the destination unit. Or, interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception failed because the desti- nation unit had no subaddress-based bulletin board transmission capability, or data was not stored in any subaddress confidential box in the destination unit.
U04000/E04000	The confidential box specified for confidential transmission was not registered in the des- tination unit. Or, in interoffice subaddress-based transmission mode, the specified sub- address box number was not registered in the destination unit. Or, the destination was being accessed.
U04100/E04100	Confidential transmission failed because the destination unit had no confidential capabil- ity. Or, subaddress-based transmission failed because the destination unit had no sub- address-based reception capability.
U04200/E04200	In encrypted transmission, the specified encryption box was not registered in the desti- nation unit.
U04300/E04300	Encrypted transmission failed because the destination unit had no encrypted communi- cation capability.
U044XX/E044XX	Communication was interrupted because of an encryption key error during encrypted transmission (See page 1-4-97).
U04500/E04500	Encrypted reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in encryption keys.
U05000/E05000	In transmission with a specified number, the set number of originals was different from the number of transmitted originals.
U05100/E05100	Password check transmission or restricted transmission was interrupted because the permit ID's did not agree with.
U05200/E05200	Password check reception or restricted reception was interrupted because the permit ID's did not match, the rejected FAX number's did match, or the destination receiver did not return its phone number.
U05300/E05300	The password check reception or the restricted reception was interrupted because the permitted numbers did not match, the rejected numbers did match, or the machine in question did not acknowledge its phone number.
U09000/E09000	G3 communication was attempted but failed because the destination unit was a G2 machine.

Description
Relay broadcast was requested from a command station but memory overflowed during reception. Or, in subaddress-based relay reception, memory overflowed.
Relay was commanded but memory overflowed in the destination unit (relay station).
Memory overflowed during confidential reception. Or, in subaddress-based confidential reception, memory overflowed.
Memory overflowed in the destination unit during confidential transmission. Or, in interof- fice subaddress-based transmission, memory overflowed in the destination unit.
Memory overflowed during memory reception.
Memory overflowed in the destination unit during transmission.
Memory transmission failed because a decoding error occurred.
Transmission failed because an error occurred during JBIG encoding.
Reception failed because an error occurred during JBIG decoding.

(2-1) U004XX error code table: Interrupted phase B

Error code	Description
U00420/E00420	A relay request was received from the host center but interrupted because of a mismatch in permit ID or telephone number.
U00421/E00421	Subaddress-based relay reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in the speci- fied subaddress relay box number.
U00430/E00430	Polling request (confidential or reverse) was received but interrupted because of a mis- match in permit number. Or, subaddress-based bulletin board transmission request was received but interrupted because of a mismatch in permit ID in the transmitting unit.
U00431/E00431	Confidential polling transmission was interrupted because the specified confidential box No. was not registered. Or, an subaddress-based bulletin board transmission was inter- rupted because the specified subaddress confidential box was not registered.
U00432/E00432	Confidential polling transmission was interrupted because of a mismatch in confidential box ID number. Or, an subaddress-based bulletin board transmission was interrupted because of a mismatch in Subaddress confidential box numbers.
U00433/E00433	Confidential polling request was received but data was not present in the confidential box. Or, subaddress-based bulletin board transmission request was received but data was not present in the subaddress confidential box.
U00434/E00434	Confidential polling request was received but interrupted because the specified confidential box No. was intended for encryption.
U00435/E00435	Confidential polling request was received but interrupted because the specified confi- dential box was being accessed. Or, subaddress-based bulletin board transmission request was received but interrupted because the specified subaddress confidential box was being accessed.
U00440/E00440	Confidential reception was interrupted because the specified confidential box No. was not registered. Or, subaddress-based confidential reception or subaddress-based relay reception was interrupted because the specified subaddress box was not registered. Or, subaddress based confidential reception or subaddress relay command reception was interrupted because the specified subaddress box No. was being accessed.
U00441/E00441	Confidential reception was interrupted because the specified confidential box No. was intended for encryption.
U00450/E00450	The destination transmitter disconnected because the permit ID's did not agree with while the destination transmitter is in password-check transmission or restricted transmission.
U00460/E00460	Encrypted reception was interrupted because the specified encryption box number was not registered. Or, encrypted reception request was received but interrupted because the specified encryption box was being accessed.
U00462/E00462	Encrypted reception was interrupted because the encryption key for the specified encryption box was not registered.

Error code	Description
U00600/E00600	The document processor cover is open.
U00601/E00601	Document jam or the document length exceeds the maximum.
U00602/E00602	Image scanning section problem.
U00603/E00603	No document feed.
U00604/E00604	Document length exceeded the limit of the bitmap memory capacity.
U00610/E00610	Recording section cover is open.
U00611/E00611	Recording paper JAM
U00613/E00613	Image writing section problem
U00614/E00614	Nearly empty of recording paper
U00615/E00615	Empty of recording paper
U00620/E00620	Copier fixing unit problem
U00622/E00622	Copier drive motor problem
U00655/E00655	CTS was not activated after RTS due to a modem error.
U00656/E00656	Data was not transmitted after CTS was activated due to a modem error.
U00670/E00670	Power was cut off during communication.
U00677/E00677	There was no file to transmit in the memory transmission mode.
U00690/E00690	System error.

(2-2) U006XX error code table: Problems with the unit

(2-3) U008XX error code table: Page transmission error

Error code	Description
U00800/E00800	A page transmission error occurred because of reception of a RTN or PIN signal.
U00811/E00811	A page transmission error reoccurred after retry of transmission in the ECM mode.

(2-4) U009XX error code table: Page reception error

Error code	Description
U00900/E00900	An RTN or PIN signal was transmitted because of a page reception error.
U00910/E00910	A page reception error remained after retry of transmission in the ECM mode.

(2-5) U010XX error code table: G3 transmission

Error code	Description
U01000/E01000	An FTT signal was received for a set number of times after TCF signal transmission at 2400 bps. Or, an RTN signal was received in response to a Q signal (excluding EOP) after transmission at 2400 bps.
U01001/E01001	Function of the unit differs from that indicated by a DIS signal.
U01010/E01010	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a DNL (MPS or EOM) signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (between units of our make).
U01011/E01011	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a DCS, TCF signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded.
U01012/E01012	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an NSS1, NSS2 (TCF) signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (between units of our make).
U01013/E01013	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an NSS3, TCF signal, and the pre- set number of command retransfers was exceeded (between units of our make).
U01014/E01014	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an MPS signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded.
U01015/E01015	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an EOM signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded.
U01016/E01016	An MCF signal was received but no DIS signal was received after transmission of an EOM signal, and T1 timeout was detected.
U01017/E01017	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an EOP signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded.
U01018/E01018	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PRI-EOP signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded.
U01019/E01019	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a CNC signal, and the preset num- ber of command retransfers was exceeded (between units of our make).
U01020/E01020	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a CTC signal, and the preset num- ber of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01021/E01021	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an EOR.Q signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01022/E01022	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an RR signal, and the preset num- ber of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01023/E01023	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PSS.NULL signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01024/E01024	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PSS.MPS signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01025/E01025	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PPS.EOM signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01026/E01026	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PPS.EOP signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01027/E01027	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PPS.PRI-EOP signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01028/E01028	T5 time-out was detected during ECM transmission (ECM).

Error code	Description
U01040/E01040	A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received during standby for DIS signal reception.
U01041/E01041	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DNL (MPS or EOM) signal (between units of our make).
U01042/E01042	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DCS, TCF signal.
U01043/E01043	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an NSS1, NSS2 (TCF) signal (between units of our make).
U01044/E01044	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an NSS3, TCF signal (between units of our make).
U01045/E01045	A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received after transmission of an MPS signal.
U01046/E01046	A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received after transmission of an EOM signal.
U01047/E01047	A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received after transmission of an EOP signal.
U01048/E01048	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PRI-EOP signal.
U01049/E01049	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a CNC signal (between units of our make).
U01050/E01050	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a CTC signal (ECM).
U01051/E01051	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an EOR.Q signal (ECM).
U01052/E01052	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an RR signal (ECM).
U01053/E01053	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPS.NULL signal (ECM).
U01054/E01054	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPS.MPS signal (ECM).
U01055/E01055	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPS.EOM signal (ECM).
U01056/E01056	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPS.EOP signal (ECM).
U01057/E01057	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPS.PRI-EOP signal (ECM).
U01070/E01070	Polarity reversal was detected during handshake.
U01071/E01071	Polarity reversal was detected during message transmission.
U01072/E01072	A break in loop current was detected during transmission.
U01073/E01073	During reverse polling in V.34 mode at the receiver unit, a CM signal was not detected when transmitting after reception.
U01080/E01080	A PIP signal was received after transmission of a PPS.NULL signal.
U01091/E01091	During transmission in V.34 mode, communication was interrupted because a PPR sig- nal was received over 10 times even after reducing the communication speed to the min- imum with the symbol speed maintained at the level of connection.
U01092/E01092	During transmission in V.34 mode, communication was interrupted because of an impossible combination of the symbol speed and communication speed.

(2-6) U011XX error code table: G3 reception

Error code	Description
U01100/E01100	Function of the unit differs from that indicated by a DCS signal.
U01101/E01101	Function of the unit (excl. communication mode select) differs from that indicated by an NSS signal.
U01102/E01102	A DTC (NSC) signal was received when no transmission data was in the unit.
U01110/E01110	No response after transmission of a DIS signal.
U01111/E01111	No response after transmission of a DTC (NSC) signal.
U01112/E01112	No training reception after reception of a DCS or NSS signal.
U01113/E01113	No response after transmission of an FTT signal.
U01114/E01114	No message reception after transmission of a CFR signal.
U01115/E01115	No message reception after transmission of an MCF signal.
U01116/E01116	No message reception after transmission of a PPR signal.
U01117/E01117	No message reception after transmission of a CTR signal.
U01118/E01118	No message reception after transmission of an ERR signal.
U01119/E01119	No further signals were received after reception of a message.
U01120/E01120	No response after transmission of an MCF signal.
U01121/E01121	No response after transmission of an RTP signal.
U01122/E01122	No response after transmission of an RTN signal.
U01123/E01123	No response after transmission of a PIP signal.
U01124/E01124	No response after transmission of a PIN signal.
U01125/E01125	No response after transmission of a CNS signal (between units of our make).
U01126/E01126	No response after transmission of a PPR signal (ECM).
U01127/E01127	No response after transmission of an ERR signal (ECM).
U01128/E01128	No response after transmission of an RNR signal (ECM).
U01129/E01129	No response after transmission of an SPA signal (short protocol).
U01140/E01140	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DIS signal.
U01141/E01141	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DTC signal.
U01142/E01142	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DCS or NSS signal.
U01143/E01143	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an FTT signal.
U01144/E01144	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a CFR signal.
U01145/E01145	A DCN signal was received after reception of a message.
U01146/E01146	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an MCF signal (interoffice communica- tion after reception of an MPS, EOM signal or confidential interoffice communication).
U01147/E01147	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an RTP signal.
U01148/E01148	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an RTN signal.
U01149/E01149	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PIP signal.
U01150/E01150	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PIN signal.
U01151/E01151	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a PPR signal (ECM).

Error code	Description
U01152/E01152	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a CTR signal (ECM).
U01153/E01153	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an ERR signal (ECM).
U01154/E01154	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an RNR signal (ECM).
U01155/E01155	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an SPA signal (short protocol).
U01160/E01160	During message reception, transmission time exceeded the maximum transmission time per line.
U01161/E01161	Number of error lines exceeded limits during message reception.
U01162/E01162	A break in loop current was detected during message reception.
U01163/E01163	Polarity reversal was detected during message reception.
U01164/E01164	One page length exceeded the specified length during message reception.
U01170/E01170	A decoding error occurred during MMR message reception.
U01172/E01172	During reverse polling in V.34 mode at the transmitting unit, a JM signal was not detected after transmission of a CM signal when receiving after transmission.
U01191/E01191	Communication was interrupted because an error occurred during an image data reception sequence in the V.34 mode.
U01199/E01199	A DIS signal with different FIF was received after transmission of a DIS signal.

(2-7) U017XX error code table: V.34 transmission

Error code	Description
U01700/E01700	A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).
U01720/E01720	A communication error occurred in phase 4 (modem parameter exchange).
U01721/E01721	Operation was interrupted due to the absence of a common communication speed between units.

U01700: A communication error that occurs at the transmitting unit in the period after transmission of INFO0 before entering phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). For example, INFO0/A/Abar (B/Bbar, for polling transmission)/INFOh was not detected.

U01720: A communication error that occurs at the transmitting unit in the period after initiating the control channel before entering the T.30 process. For example, PPh/ALT/MPh/E was not detected.

U01721: In the absence of a common communication speed between units (including when an impossible combination of communication speed and symbol speed occurs) after MPh exchange; 1) a DCN signal was received from the destination unit, and the line was cut; or 2) a DIS (NSF, CSI) signal was received from the destination unit and, in response to the signal, the unit transmitted a DCN signal, and the line was cut.

(2-8) U018XX error code table: V.34 reception

Error code	Description
U01800/E01800	A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).
U01810/E01810	A communication error occurred in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training).
U01820/E01820	A communication error occurred in phase 4 (modem parameter exchange).
U01821/E01821	Operation was interrupted due to the absence of a common communication speed between units.

U01800: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in the period after transmission of INFO0 before entering phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). For example, INFO0/B/Bbar (A/Abar, for polling reception)/probing tone was not detected.

U01810: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training).

For example, S/Sbar/PP/TRN was not detected.

U01820: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in the period after initiating the control channel before entering the T.30 process. For example, PPh/ALT/MPh/E was not detected.

U01821: In the absence of a common communication speed between units (including when an impossible combination of communication speed and symbol speed occurs) after MPh exchange, a DCN signal was transmitted to the destination unit and the line was cut.

(2-9) U023XX error code table: Relay command abnormal reception

Error code	Description
U02303/E02303	Timeout was detected before a correct DNL signal was received.
U02304/E02304	A signal other than MPS or EOM signal was received after a DNL signal was received.

(2-10) U044XX error code table: Encrypted transmission

Error code	Description
U04400/E04400	Encrypted transmission was interrupted because encryption keys did not agree.
U04401/E04401	Calling failed during encrypted transmission because the encryption key was not regis- tered.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off.Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch.Unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands. The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

(2) Storage and handling of the drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum unit.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the place where an ambient temperature is between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a ambient humidity is not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum unit.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Do not touch the bare hand and glove etc. When touch the surface of the drum by hand or adhere to the oil etc, make sure to clean it.

(3) Storage of the toner container

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place. Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this. Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container.

Seeing through each of two windows, validate genuineness or spuriousness by appearances of the brand protection seal.

The brand protection seal is black color when seen through the left side window (\bullet) The brand protection seal is Gold color when seen through the right side window (\Leftrightarrow)

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.



Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.



1-5-2 OUTER COVERS

(1) Detaching and attaching the front cover

Procedures

- 1. Remove the cassette. (See page1-5-10
 -)
- 2. Open the front cover.



Figure 1-5-3

3. Unhitch the straps by squeezing the hooks inward as shown.





- 4. Remove two fulcrum axes of the front cover.
- 5. Remove the front cover.



Figure 1-5-5

(2) Detaching and attaching the rear upper cover

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-6

(3) Detaching and attaching the rear lower cover

Procedures

- 1. Remove the rear upper cover.
- 2. Detach four screws.
- Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-7

(4) Detaching and attaching the inner tray

Procedures

1. Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



Figure 1-5-8

- 2. Detach three screws.
- 3. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-9

- 4. Detach four screws.
- 5. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-10

- 6. Remove the cassette.
- 7. Open the front cover.
- 8. Detach six screws.
- 9. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10. Remove the left lower cover.



Figure 1-5-11

11. While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



Figure 1-5-12

(5) Detaching and attaching the front upper cover

Procedures

- 1. Pull the cassette forward.
- 2. Open the right cover 1 and 2.
- 3. Remove the inner tray.
- 4. Release the projection of the front upper cover.
- 5. Tilt the front upper cover forward and then unhook two hooks by taking out it upward.



Figure 1-5-13

(6) Detaching and attaching the eject rear cover

Procedures

1. Remove the screw and the eject rear cover.



Figure 1-5-14

(7) Detaching and refitting the eject rear cover

Procedures

- 1. Release two hooks by using a flat screwdriver.
- 2. Remove the tray left cover by releasing two projections.



Flat screwdriver

Figure 1-5-15

1-5-3 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and attaching the primary paper feed unit

Procedures

1. Pull the cassette, remove in the direction of the arrow.





- 2. Release the paper feed lever and then remove the primary paper feed unit.
- 3. Check or replace the primary paper feed unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 4. When replacing the new unit,proceed as follows:1)Performs maintenance mode U901

(Checking copy counts by paper feed locations). (See page1-3-187)



Figure 1-5-17

(2) Detaching and attaching the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad

Procedures

1. Open the right cover 1.





2. While squeezing the holders inward, remove the MP paper feed roller.



Figure 1-5-19

- 3. Tilt the MP separation pad forward and then remove it upwards.
- 4. Check or replace the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad and refit all the removed parts.
- 5. When replacing the new unit,proceed as follows:

1)Performs maintenance mode U901 (Checking copy counts by paper feed locations).

(See page1-3-187)



Figure 1-5-20
(3) Detaching and attaching the registration cleaner

Procedures

- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.



Figure 1-5-21



3. Release the toner container lever and then remove the toner container.

Figure 1-5-22

4. Release the lock lever.



Figure 1-5-23

5. Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.





- 6. Set the cleaner lever up and draw the registration cleaner frontward.
- 7. Check or replace the registration cleaner and refit all the removed parts.



Figure 1-5-25

(4) Detaching and attaching the MP tray

Procedures

- 1. Open the right cover 1.
- 2. Remove the MP wire cover and then remove the connector.
- 3. Close the right cover 1.



Figure 1-5-26

- 4. Open the MP tray.
- 5. Remove two stop rings by using the flat-bladed screwdriver.
- 6. Pull two straps upwards and remove them.



Figure 1-5-27

- 7. Release two fulcrums of the MP tray by using a flat screwdriver.
- 8. Remove the MP tray.



Figure 1-5-28

1-5-4 Developer section

(1) Detaching and reattaching the developer unit

Procedures

- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.



Figure 1-5-29

3. Release the toner container lever and then remove the toner container.



Figure 1-5-30

4. Release the lock lever.



Figure 1-5-31

5. Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.



Figure 1-5-32

- 6. Release the lock lever and then remove the developer unit.
- 7. Check or replace the developer unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 8. When replacing the new unit,proceed as follows:

1)Performs maintenance mode U130 (Set Toner Install) . (See page1-3-68) 2)Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page1-3-128)



Figure 1-5-33

1-5-5 Drum section

(1) Detaching and reattaching the drum unit

Procedures

- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.



Figure 1-5-34

3. Release the lock lever (yellow).



Figure 1-5-35

4. Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.



Figure 1-5-36

- 5. Open the right cover 1.
- 6. Release the lock lever and then remove the drum unit.
- 7. Check or replace the drum unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 8. When replacing the new unit,proceed as follows:

1)Performs maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page1-3-128)



(2) Detaching and attaching the charger roller unit

Procedures

- 1. Remove the drum unit. (See page1-5-21)
- 2. Release the lock lever and then remove the charger roller unit.
- 3. Check or replace the charger roller unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 4. When replacing the charger roller, execute as following procedures.
 1)Execute maintenance mode U930 (Clear or check charger roller counts). (See page1-3-198)
 2)Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page1-3-128)



Figure 1-5-38

1-5-6 Transfer/separation section

(1) Detaching and attaching the transfer roller unit

Procedures

- 1. Open the right cover 1.
- 2. Release two lock levers and then remove the transfer roller unit.
- 3. Check or replace the transfer roller unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 4. When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:

 Performs maintenance mode U127 (Clear Transfer Roller Counter).
 (See page1-3-67)
 Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment)

(See page1-3-128)

CAUTION:

Inserting the transfer roller unit in place until it click in,when reattaching it.



Figure 1-5-39

1-5-7 Fuser section

(1) Detaching and attaching the fuser unit

Procedures

- 1. Open the right cover 1.
- 2. Release the lock by pushing down the lock lever and then remove the fuser unit by griping the knobs.
- 3. Check or replace the fuser unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 4. When replacing the new unit, execute as following procedure.
 1)Performs maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page1-3-128)



Figure 1-5-40

1-5-8 Drive section

(1) Detaching and attaching the drive unit 1

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-41

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-42

- 5. Remove three connectors.
- 6. Detach five screws and then remove the drive unit 1.
- 7. Check or replace the drive unit 1 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-43

- *: When refitting the drive unit 1, checks that the position of a cam is in the A side from the upper limit line.
- *: When cam isn't in the A side from the upper limit line, turn the motor by hand and bring the cam into the A side.



Figure 1-5-44

(2) Detaching and attaching the drive unit 2

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-45

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-46

- 5. Remove five connectors.
- 6. Detach four screws and then remove the drive unit 2.
- 7. Check or replace the drive unit 2 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-47

1-5-9 Optical section

(1) Detaching and attaching the Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-48

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-49

5. Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



Figure 1-5-50

- 6. Remove the cassette.
- 7. Open the front cover.
- 8. Detach six screws.
- 9. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10. Remove the left lower cover.



Figure 1-5-51

11. While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



Figure 1-5-52

- 12. Release two hooks and remove the temperature sensor assy.
- 13. Remove the connector of LSU fan motor.
- 14. Detach the screw and then remove the LSU fan motor.



Figure 1-5-53

- 15. Remove the connector.
- 16. Detach four screws and then remove the laser scanner unit.
- 17. Check or replace the laser scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.



Figure 1-5-54

(2) Detaching and attaching the image scanner unit

Procedures

1. Detach two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

CAUTION:

When installing, attach close to the contact glass.



Figure 1-5-55

2. Remove the contact glass by pulling rightward.



Figure 1-5-56

3. Detach five screws and then remove the scanner cover.



Figure 1-5-57

- 4. Remove the FFC and the connector.
- 5. Remove four screws and then remove the image scanner unit.



Figure 1-5-58

Attaching the ISU

6. When reinstalling, fix by adjusting to the scale of a original position.

When replacing, decide the fix position of ISU by the following.

The right and left direction of machine: Check the marked number (a) and then adjust the frame side of positioning line (b) of the same number and the line (c) of ISU.

(Line (c) is the side which is marked corresponding number of the two lines.)

The rear and front of machine: Match the edge (e) of ISU to the positioning line (d) on frame side.

- 7. Fix the ISU as before with four screws.
- 8. Check or replace the image scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.



Figure 1-5-59

(3) Detaching and attaching the LED unit

Procedures

1. Detach two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

CAUTION:

When installing, attach close to the contact glass.



Figure 1-5-60

2. Remove the contact glass by pulling rightward.



Figure 1-5-61

3. Detach two screws and then remove the scanner rear cover.

4. Detach two screws and remove the

scanner front upper cover.



Figure 1-5-63

- 5. Move the exposure unit to the cutting lack part.
- 6. Peel off the sheet.
- 7. Release the hook and then remove the FFC cover.



Figure 1-5-64

- 8. Remove the FFC from the connector.
- 9. Detach two screws and then remove the LED unit.
- 10. Check or replace the LED unit and reattach the removed parts in original position.



Figure 1-5-65

(4) Detaching and reattaching the scanner wires

Follow the procedures below when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

(4-1) Detaching the scanner wires

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-66

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-67

- 5. Remove the cassette.
- 6. Open the front cover.
- 7. Detach six screws.
- 8. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 9. Remove the left lower cover.

10. Release three hooks upwards.

backward.

11. Remove the left upper cover by sliding it



Figure 1-5-69

- 12. Detach two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
- 13. Remove the right upper cover.

scanner rear cover.





Screw 14. Detach two screws and remove the Scanner rear cover Screw



15. Detach two screws and remove the scanner front upper cover.



Figure 1-5-72

- 16. Raise the operation panel.
- 17. Detach the screw and then remove the operation panel lower cover.





 Twist the A section of card reader cover in front and remove to pull in the left direction.



Figure 1-5-74

19. Detach one screw, slide the keyboard cover in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



20. After lifting the protrusion, remove the ISU front cover.



Figure 1-5-76

21. Slide the controller box cover in sideway, and remove it.



Figure 1-5-77

- 22. Remove seven connectors and release two wire saddles.
- 23. Detach six screws and then remove the controller box.



Figure 1-5-78

- 24. Remove the wire from the saddle of the wire guide.
- 25. Release the hook, lift the wire guide in front and remove it.



Figure 1-5-79

26. Remove FFC from the engine PWB.



Figure 1-5-80

- 27. Remove two connectors from the engine PWB.
- 28. Release the wires from two wire saddles.



Figure 1-5-81

29. Remove the four screws and then remove the scanner unit upward.





- 30. Remove the two screws.
- 31. Remove the scanner left cover and the contact glass assy.




- 32. Move the exposure unit to the cutout portion.
- 33. Peel off the sheet.
- 34. Release the hook and then remove the FFC cover.



Figure 1-5-84

- 35. Remove the FFC from the connector.
- 36. Detach two screws and then remove the LED unit.



Figure 1-5-85

- 37. Remove each screw and remove front and rear wire holder plates.
- 38. Remove the mirror frame 1 from the scanner unit.



Figure 1-5-86

- 39. Remove the scanner wire springs from the hooks.
- 40. Remove the scanner wires.



Figure 1-5-87

(4-2) Fitting the scanner wires

NOTE

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below. Machine front:(P/N:302K317150), gray Machine rear:(P/N:302K317140), black

Fitting requires the following tools Two frame securing tools (P/N 302FZ17100) Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 302RH94010)

Procedures

- 1. Remove the screw and remove the scanner wire drum gear.
- 2. Remove the screw at two scanner wire drums.
- 3. Remove the stop ring and bush from the front of the scanner wire drum shaft.
- 4. Remove the scanner wire drum shaft from the scanner unit.



Figure 1-5-88

5. Insert the locating ball of each scanner wires into the hole in the respective scanner wire drum and wind the scanner wire three turns inward and four turns outward.
With the locating ball as the reference

point, wind the shorter end of each of the wires outward.

6. Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.





- 7. Refit the scanner wire drum shaft to the scanner unit.
- 8. Insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to fix the mirror frame 2 in position.





- 9. Wind the outer scanner wires from above to below on the outside grooves in the pulleys at the secondary mirror frame.(1)
- 10. Hook the round terminals to the catches inside the scanner unit.(2)
- 11. Wind the inner scanner wires from below to above in the grooves of left side scanner unit.(3)
- 12. Wind from below to above inside grooves of the secondary mirror frame pulley.(4)
- 13. Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit(5)
- 14. Hook the round terminals to the scanner wire springs.(6)



Figure 1-5-91

- 15. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and the mirror frame securing tools.
- 16. Move to center the portion of the locating ball in the scanner wire drum, and the scanner wires to inside.
- 17. Move the mirror frame 2 from side to side in order to correctly locate the wires in position.
- 18. Refit the mirror frame 1.
- 19. Move the mirror frame 1 and 2 to the left side of the machine, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
- 20. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to the mirror frame 1 with the screw.
- 21. Remove the two frame securing tools.
- 22. Refit all the removed parts.

Frame securing tool



1-5-10 PWBs

(1) Detaching and reattaching the main PWB

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-93

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-94

5. Slide the controller box cover in sideway, and remove it.



Figure 1-5-95

- 6. Detach the USB connector and three screws.
- 7. Unplug the connector and detach DPIF PWB.



Figure 1-5-96

- 8. Remove all connectors and FFC from the main PWB.
- 9. Detach eight screws and then remove the main PWB.
- 10. Check or replace the main PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-97

(1-1) Notes when replacing the main PWB

When replacing the main PWB, make sure to remove the SSD from the old board and install it in the new main board. (1-5-77Reference)

IMPORTANT

A machine without the SSD does not start up.

Do not replace the main PWB, engine PWB and SSD at the same time.

Execute the following setting after replacing the main PWB.

1. Machine No. (maintenance mode U004)

- *: If the C0180 error occurs, execute U004 to match the serial numbers in the PWBs. Execute it after confirming the engine PWB machine serial number matches the main unit serial number. Wrong data will be written when there is a discrepancy in U004.
- *: Before executing U004, execute U026/ Flash, return to the SSD back up data.

(1)Input "004" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

(2)Select [Execute] and press the [Start] key.

(3)Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

2. Firmware update (See page 1-6-1)

*: Check the latest firmware and upgrade it.

3. Adjusting the halftone automatically (maintenance mode U410)

(1)Input "410" using the numeric keys.

(2)Press the [Start] key.

*: Execution information screen is displayed.

*: Test patterns 1 and 2 are output on the A4 paper.

(3)Set the output test pattern 1 as original, in the back side which the direction of the arrow is, looking down the side which is printing to the original glass.

*: Set test pattern 1 and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on it.



Figure 1-5-98

(4)Press the [Start] key.

*: The 1st auto adjustment is executed.

(5)Set the output Test Pattern 2 as the original.

*: Set test pattern 2 and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on it.

(6)Press the [Start] key.

*: The 2nd auto adjustment is executed.

(7)[Finish] displays after normal completion.

4. Resetting the initial settings

.

Reset the user default setting and FAX default setting (e.g. the local FAX information) from the System Menu or Command Center.

5. Resetting the maintenance mode

Reset the following maintenance mode if necessary

No.	Maintenance mode relating to the main unit	No.	Maintenance mode relating to the main unit
U250	Maintenance counter preset	U603	User data 1
U251	Maintenance counter clear	U604	User data 2
U253	Double/single count switch	U610	System 1
U260	Feed/eject counter switch	U611	System 2
U345	Maintenance timing pre-caution setting	U612	System 3
U402	Print margin adjustment	U625	Communication Setting
U403	Scanning margin adjustment (table)	U695	FAX function customization
U404	Scanning margin adjustment (DP)		
U425	Target adjustment		

6. Exiting from the maintenance mode

Input "001" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

(2) Detaching and reattaching the engine PWB

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-99

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-100

- 5. Remove the cassette.
- 6. Open the front cover.
- 7. Remove six screws.
- 8. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 9. Remove the left lower cover.



Figure 1-5-101



Figure 1-5-102

10. Slide the controller box cover in sideway, and remove it.

- 11. Remove seven connectors and release two wire saddles.
- 12. Detach six screws and then remove the controller box.



Figure 1-5-103

- 13. Remove the wire from the saddle of the wire guide.
- 14. Release the hook, lift the wire guide in front and remove it.



Figure 1-5-104

- 15. Remove all connectors and FFC from the engine PWB.
- 16. Detach six screws and then remove the engine PWB.
- 17. Check or replace the engine PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.

CAUTION:

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM from the engine PWB and reattach it to the new engine PWB.



Figure 1-5-105

(2-1) Notes when replacing the engine PWB

NOTE: When replacing the PWB, remove the EEPROM (U3) from the PWB and then reattach it to the new PWB.



Figure 1-5-106

Detaching of EEPROM

- 1. The flat screwdriver is inserted between EEPROM and socket.
- 2. Detach it little by little right and left and alternately while noting the transformation and the damage of the pin.



Figure 1-5-107

Execute the following setting after replacing the engine PWB.

Scanner auto adjustment (maintenance mode U411): Table(ChartA)

*: Adjusts using the digital color chart (Parts number: 7505000005).

(3) Detaching and reattaching the power source PWB

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-108

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-109

5. Detach one screw and then remove the power source box cover.



Figure 1-5-110

- 6. Remove all connectors from the power source PWB.
- 7. Detach eight screws and then remove the power source PWB.
- 8. Check or replace the power source PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-111

(4) Detaching and reattaching the high voltage PWB

Procedures

1. Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



Figure 1-5-113

- 2. Detach three screws.
- 3. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

- 4. Detach four screws.
- 5. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-114

- 6. Remove the cassette.
- 7. Open the front cover.
- 8. Detach six screws.
- 9. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10. Remove the left lower cover.



11. While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



Figure 1-5-116

12. Remove the screw and the eject rear cover.



Figure 1-5-117

- 13. Remove FFC from the high voltage PWB.
- 14. Detach four screws and remove the high voltage PWB.
- 15. Check or replace the high voltage PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-118

(5) Detaching and reattaching the operation panel PWB 1

Procedures

1. Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



- 2. Detach three screws.
- 3. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-120

- 4. Detach four screws.
- 5. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-121

- 6. Remove the cassette.
- 7. Open the front cover.
- 8. Detach six screws.
- 9. Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10. Remove the left lower cover.



Figure 1-5-122

11. While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



Figure 1-5-123

- 12. Open the right cover 1 and 2.
- 13. Release the projection of the front upper cover.
- 14. Tilt the front upper cover forward and then unhook two hooks by taking out it upward.



Figure 1-5-124

15. Detach the screw and then remove the operation panel lower cover in the direction of the arrow.





16. Remove the screw and then remove the operation panel cover d from the operation panel upper unit.



- 17. Remove the wire holder in the fulcrum.
- 18. Remove USB connector.
- 19. Remove three connectors.





- 20. Remove two screws in the upper portion of the fulcrum.
- 21. Knock down the operation panel and detach two screws in front of the fulcrum.
- 22. Remove the operation panel in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-128

- 23. Detach one screw from operation panel upper unit and remove the operation panel cover a.
- 24. Detach two screws and then remove the operation panel cover b.
- 25. Detach two screws and then remove the operation panel cover c.





- 26. Remove the connector and FFC and release from the hook.
- 27. Lift the protrusion of the wire guide, slide in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



Figure 1-5-130

- 28. Remove all connectors and FFC from the operation panel PWB 1.
- 29. Detach four screws and remove the operation panel PWB 1.
- 30. Check or replace the operation panel PWB 1 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



Figure 1-5-131

1-5-11 Others

(1) Detaching and reattaching the SSD

Procedures

- 1. Detach three screws.
- 2. Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-132

- 3. Detach four screws.
- 4. Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



Figure 1-5-133

5. Slide the controller box cover in sideway, and remove it.



Figure 1-5-134

- 6. Remove one screw (M2).
- 7. Remove the SSD from the connector .
- *: Use a Phillips 1 screwdriver and take care not to damage the screws.
- *: Do not use other screw than the item below that is dedicated to securing the SSD.

(7BB000204H BIND M SCREW 2x4)



IMPORTANT

To avoid damage when attaching the SSD, align the screw hole to the positioning boss. Do not replace the main PWB, engine PWB and SSD at the same time.

SSD replacement procedures when the SSD replacement is indicated.

*: Data transfer by U026 is not available since data cannot be read when SSD is broken or it is in Read Only mode.

Procedures

Preparation: 2 USB memory (for firmware and data backup) Before operating, perform data backup in U917.

(1)Firmware storage in a USB memory (USB memory A)

- 1. Store the firm upgrade pack of latest version in USB memory or release firmware (Main/MMI/ BROWSER/DICTIONARY/LANGUAGE/OCR).
- *: Check the firmware applicable to the target model. When inputting the software of outside the target, becomes unstable in action.

In order to reboot, require minimum main.

(2)SSD data backup (USB memory B)

- *: When fully back up 32G SSD, it need 64GB USB memory.
- 1. Install the USB memory B.
- 2. Execute maintenance mode U026
- Input "026" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key. Select [SSE].

Select [Backup]. Press the [Start] key. Turn the power off after completion.

- 3. Replace the new SSD.
- *: When equipping with SSD (8G/32G) which the capacity is different from the specification, pay attention as F010 SSD and communication error happen.
- 4. Turn ON the power with equipping with USB memory A. As the program from SSD can't load, SSD recovery program which is SNOR on the main PWB start up, is formatted automatically.
- *: When forgot the USB memory equipment, pay attention as F010 displays.
- 5. If UPDATE completion is displayed on the control panel, turn OFF/ON the power with inserted USB memory A.

(3)Update firmware. (See page 1-6-1)

(4)Retrieve the data backed up in the USB memory B.

- (5)Install from HyPAS application(FMU), application screen.
 - *: Check the kind of HyPAS application which is displayed in the application screen before replacing and reinstall.

(2) Detaching and reattaching the conveying unit

Procedures

- 1. Open the right cover 1.
- 2. Remove the MP wire cover and then remove the connector.
- 3. Close the right cover 1.



Figure 1-5-1

- 4. Open the MP tray.
- 5. Remove two stop rings by using the flat-bladed screwdriver.
- 6. Pull two straps upwards and remove them.



Figure 1-5-2

- 7. Release two fulcrums of the MP tray by using a flat screwdriver.
- 8. Remove the MP tray.

 9. Remove the MP tray. (See page1-5-13)
 10. Open the right cover 1.



Figure 1-5-3





11. Remove two screws and then remove two straps.



Figure 1-5-6

- 12. Rotate the wire cover.
- 13. Remove the connector.
- 14. Rotate the fulcrum axis and slide it forward.
- 15. Pull the right cover 1 backward and then remove it.

(3) Direction of installing the principal fan motors

When detaching or reattaching the fan motor, take careful of the installing direction (intake or exhaust).



Figure 1-5-7

1-6-1 Firmware update

Execute the following to update the firmware below.

*: The processing time is reduced with simultaneous processing by group.

[GROUP1 UPDATE]

UPDATE step	Target	Master file name	Message
1	Controller firmware	DL_CTRL.2RH	CTRL
2	Panel data	DL_PANL.2ND	PANL
3	Optional language data	DL_OPT.2ND	OPT
4	Dictionary data	DL_DIC.2ND	DIC
5	Browser data	DL_BRWS.2ND	BRWS
6	OCR dictionary data	DL_OCR.2R6	OCR

[GROUP2 UPDATE]

UPDATE step	Target	Master file name	Message
1	Slot 1 FAX firmware	DL_FAX.3R2	FAX1
2	Slot 2 FAX firmware		FAX2

[GROUP3 UPDATE]

UPDATE step	Target	Master file name	Message
1	MAIL BOX	DL_03N0.2ND	MAIL-BOX
2	PUNCH UNIT	DL_03NK.2RH	P-UNIT
3	1000-sheets DF	DL_03RW.2ND	1000DF
4	3000?DF	DL_03NB.2RH	3-4000DF
5	500-sheets×2 PF	DL_03N4.2RH	500X2PF1
6	3000-sheets PF	DL_03PC.2RH	3000PF1
7	Engine firmware	DL_ENGN.2RH	ENGN

[GROUP4 UPDATE]

UPDATE step	Target	Master file name	Message
1	DP(inversion)	DL_03R7.2ND	DP-REV
2	DP(CIS)	DL_03R8.2ND	DP-CIS
3	DP(inversion: bargain price)	DL_03RJ.2ND	DP-LOW
4	Scanner	DL_SCAN.2RH	SCAN

[GROUP5 UPDATE]

UPD	ATE ep	Target	Master file name	Message
1	1	Panel firmware	DL_SPNL.2ND	SPNL
Verify the signature at firmware update

Verify the signature of the update file to prevent the firmware update with illegally falsified data.

Target	Signature file name	Firmware certificate file name
Controller data	2RH_CTRL_sign.bin	2RH_CTRL_cert.pem
Panel data	2ND_PANL_sign.bin	2ND_PANL_cert.pem
Optional language data	2ND_OPT_sign.bin	2ND_OPT_cert.pem
Dictionary data	2ND_DIC_sign.bin	2ND_DIC_cert.pem
Browser data	2ND_BRWS_sign.bin	2ND_BRWS_cert.pem
OCR dictionary data	2R6_OCR_sign.bin	2R6_OCR_cert.pem
FAX PWB	3R2_FAX_sign.bin	3R2_FAX_cert.pem
PUNCH UNIT	2RH_03NK_sign.bin	2RH_03NK_cert.pem
MAIL BOX	2ND_03N0_sign.bin	2ND_03N0_cert.pem
3000-sheets DF	2RH_03NB_sign.bin	2RH_03NB_cert.pem
1000-sheets DF	2ND_03RW_sign.bin	2ND_03RW_cert.pem
3000-sheets PF	2RH_03PC_sign.bin	2RH_03PG_cert.pem
500-sheets×2 PF	2RH_03N4_sign.bin	2RH_03N4_cert.pem
Engine PWB	2RH_ENGN_sign.bin	2RH_ENGN_cert.pem
	2ND_03R7_sign.bin	2ND_03R7_cert.pem
DP	2ND_03R8_sign.bin	2ND_03R8_cert.pem
	2ND_03RJ_sign.bin	2ND_03RJ_cert.pem
Scanner PWB	2RH_SCAN_sign.bin	2RH_SCAN_cert.pem
Panel PWB	2ND_SPNL_sign.bin	2ND_SPNL_cert.pem

File names of the signature and firmware certificate

Preparations

Unzip the file containing the downloaded firmware and then copy the firmware and high-speed master file (skip files: ES_SKIP.ON) in the root folder of the USB memory.

*: If the high-speed master file exists, the same version firmware update is skipped.

Procedures

- 1. After turning the power switch on and the screen is properly displayed, turn the power switch off.
- 2. Insert the USB memory with the firmware into the USB memory slot.
- 3. Turn the power switch on.





- 4. [FW-UPDATE] and the progress indicator is displayed.
- *: Several kinds of firmware updates are processed simultaneously.

		FW-UPDATE			
CTRL PANL OPT DIC BRWS OCR FAX1 FAX2	100% 100% 20%	MAIL-BOX 8 P-UNIT 1000DF 3-4000DF 500×2PF1 3000PF1 ENGN DP-REV DP-CIS DP-LOW SCAN	30%		
		SPNL			

Figure 6-2

- 5. "Completed" is displayed when the firmware update is completed.
- 6. Check if the new firmware versions are displayed.

	FW-U	IPDATE	Completed
CTRL PANL OPT DIC BRWS OCR FAX1 FAX2	2RH_2000.001.03 No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change	MAIL-BOX P-UNIT 1000DF 3-4000DF 500×2PF1 3000PF1 ENGN DP-REV DP-CIS DP-LOW SCAN SPNL	No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change 2RH_1000.001.005* No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change

Figure 6-3

- *: When there is no corresponding master file, "No Change" is displayed.
- * is displayed after the firmware version update that has been skipped.
- *: -----is displayed when the FAX PWB, the option equipment, etc. is not installed.

For the case of an error

When an error occurs during the firmware upgrade, the process is immediately interrupted and the error code and error message are indicated.

	FW-UPDATE	Error
CTRL 2RH_2000 PANL No Chang OPT No Chang DIC No Chang BRWS No Chang OCR No Chang FAX1 FAX2	0.001.03 MAIL-BOX 39 P-UNIT 39 1000DF 39 3-4000DF 39 500×2PF1 3000PF1 ENGN DP-REV DP-CIS DP-LOW SCAN SPNL	No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change Error 0801 No Change No Change No Change No Change No Change

Figure 6-4

Error code	Error content	Error code	Error content
0000	Other	S000	Other signature verification error *1
0100	No Master file	S001	Signature verification file is inadequate
0200	Version mismatch of the master file	N001	Network connection failed. *2
03xx	No Download File (No.xx)		(There is no upgrade target interrupted)
04xx	File (No.xx) Checksum mismatch	N002	Network connection failed. *3
05xx	File (No.xx) Preparation failure	1	(There is an upgrade target interrupted)
06xx	File (No.xx) Oversize	•	
08xx	File (No.xx) Writing failure	1	

*1: Including the expired FM certificate

*2: Automatically restarted for the normal start-up since the normal start-up is available next time.

*3: Transferred to the USB upgrade mode instead of the automatic restart since the normal start-up may not be available next time.

Indication of the signature verification result

Official signature verification file	Result indication
Both certificate and signature files exist and verification is successful.	Version number
Both certificate and signature files exist but verification is unsuccessful.	S000
Neither certificate nor signature files exist. Or either of them does not exist.	S001

7. Unplug the power cord and disconnect the USB memory.

- 8. Plug in the power cord and turn the power switch (a) on.
- 9. Check that the "Home" screen is displayed and then turn the power switch (a) off.

Precautions

Never turn the power switch (a) off or disconnect the USB memory (b) during the firmware update.

Safe-Update

When the firmware update was interrupted by power shut-off or disconnecting the USB memory during the firmware update, the firmware update is retried at the next power-on.

Turn the main power on again while the USB memory is installed.

*: The firmware update that was already completed before power shut-down is skipped.

2-1-1 Paper feed/conveying section

The paper feed/conveying section consists of the paper feed unit that feeds paper from the cassette and the MP tray paper feed unit that feeds paper from the MP tray, and the paper conveying section that conveys the feed paper to the transfer/separation section.

(1) Cassette paper feed section

The cassette can contain 500 sheets. The sheet from the cassette is pulled out by rotation of the pickup roller and sent to the paper conveying section by rotation of the paper feed roller. Also the retard roller prevents multiple feeding of paper.



Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

- 1. Pickup roller
- 2. Paper feed roller
- 3. Feed holder
- 4. Retard roller
- 5. Retard holder
- 6. Paper length guide
- 7. Bottom plate
- 8. Lift work plate

- 9. Cassette base
- 10. Actuator (paper sensor)
- 11. Cassette 1
- 12. Cassette 2
- 13. Acutuator (feed sensor 1)
- 14. Acutuator (feed sensor 2)



Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram

(2) MP tray paper feed section

The MP tray can contain 100 sheets. Feeding from the MP tray is performed by the rotation of the MP paper feed roller. Also, function of the MP separation pad prevents paper from multiple feeding.



Figure 2-1-3 MP tray paper feed section

- 1. MP paper feed roller
- 2. MP separation pad
- 3. MP bottom plate
- 4. Actuator(MP paper feed sensor)
- 5. MP (multi purpose)tray
- 6. MP tray extension
- 7. MP paper width guide
- 8. Actuator (MP paper length switch)



Figure 2-1-4 MP tray paper feed section block diagram

(3) Conveying section

The conveying section conveys paper to the transfer/separation section as paper feeding from the cassette or MP tray, or as paper refeeding for duplex printing. Paper by feeding is conveyed by the paper feed roller to the position where the registration sensor (RS) is turned on, and then sent to the transfer/separation section by the right registration roller and left registration roller.



Figure 2-1-5 Conveying section

- 1. Left registration roller
- 2. Right registration roller
- 3. Actuator (registration sensor)
- 4. Registration cleaner



Figure 2-1-6 Paper conveying section block diagram

2-1-2 Drum section

The drum section consists of the drum, the charger roller unit, and the cleaning unit, and the drum surface is uniformly charged in preparation for formation of residual image by laser beam.

After transfer is complete, toner remaining on the drum surface is chipped off with the cleaning blade and is collected to the waste toner box with the drum screw. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging.



Figure 2-1-7 Drum section

- 1. Drum
- 2. Charger roller
- 3. Charger cleaning roller
- 4. Charger case
- 5. Cleaning blade

- 6. Cleaning roller
- 7. Scraper
- 8. Sweep roller
- 9. Drum frame
- 10. Cleaning lamp (CL)



Figure 2-1-8 Drum section block diagram

2-1-3 Developing section

The developing unit consists of the developing roller that forms the magnetic brush, the developing blade and the developing screws that agitate the toner. Also, the toner sensor (TS) checks whether or not toner remains in the developing unit.



Figure 2-1-9 Developing section

- 1. Developing roller
- 2. Developing screw A
- 3. Developing screw B
- 4. Developing blade

- 5. Magnet blade
- 6. Developer case
- 7. Upper developer cover
- 8. Toner container



Figure 2-1-10 Developing section block diagram

2-1-4 Optical section

The optical section consists of the image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner section for printing.

(1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD image sensor in the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) via the three mirrors and ISU lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.

If a document processor is used, the image scanner unit stops at the position of the DP contact glass and scans sequentially one row of the image on the original in synchronization with the moving timing of the original in the sub scan direction by driving the DP.



Figure 2-1-12 Image scanner unit (ISU)

- 1. The first mirror frame
- 2. Exposure lamp (EL)
- 3. Exposure lens
- 4. Reflector
- 5. Mirror A
- 6. The second mirror frame
- 7. Mirror B
- 8. Mirror C
- 9. ISU lens
- 10. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
- 11. Scanner cover



Figure 2-1-13 Scanner unit block diagram

(2) Laser scanner section

The charged surface of the drum is then scanned by the laser beam from the laser scanner unit. The laser beam is dispersed as the polygon motor (PM) revolves to reflect the laser beam over the drum. Various lenses and mirror are housed in the laser scanner unit, adjust the diameter of the laser beam, and focalize it at the drum surface. Also the LSU cleaning motor (LSUCM) is activated to conduct automatically cleaning of the LSU dust shield glass.



Figure 2-1-14 Laser scanner unit (LSU)

- 1. Polygon motor (PM)
- 2. Polygon mirror
- 3. fθ sub lens

- 4. fθ main lens
- 5. LSU dust shield glass



Figure 2-1-15 Laser scanner unit block diagram

2-1-5 Transfer/Separation section

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws.

A high voltage generated by the high voltage PWB (HVPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging.

Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation charging that is output from the high voltage PWB (HVPWB) to the separation electrode.



Figure 2-1-16 Transfer/Separation section

1. Transfer roller

- 3. Separation needle holder
- 2. Separation needle
- 4. Paper chute guide



Figure 2-1-17 Transfer/Separation section block diagram

2-1-6 Fuser section

The paper sent from the transfer/separation section is interleaved between the heat roller and the press roller. The heat roller is heated by the fuser heater (FH), and the toner is fused by heat and pressure and fixed onto the paper because the press roller is pressed by the fuser press spring. The surface temperature of heat roller is detected by the fuser thermistor (FTH) and controlled by the engine PWB (EPWB). If the fuser section shows extremely high temperature, the power line will be shut off and the fuser heater (FH) is forced to turn off.



Figure 2-1-18 Fuser section

- 1. Heat roller
- 2. Press roller
- 3. Fuser heater 1 (FH1)
- 4. Fuser heater 2 (FH2)
- 5. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH 1) (contact / edge)
- 6. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH 2) (noncontact / center)
- 7. Fuser thermostat (FTS)
- 8. Actuater (eject sensor)
- 9. Fuser paper guide



Figure 2-1-19 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-7 Eject/Feedshift section

The paper eject/feedshift section consists of the conveying path which sends the paper that has passed the fuser section to the inner tray, the job separator tray or the duplex conveying section.



Figure 2-1-20 Eject/Feedshift section

- 1. Eject roller A
- 2. Eject pulley A
- 3. Eject roller B
- 4. Eject pulley B
- 5. Feedshift guide

- 6. Actuator (paper full sensor)
- 7. Actuator
 - (job paper full sensor)
- 8. Actuator (job eject paper sensor)



Figure 2-1-21 Eject/Feed shift section block diagram

2-1-8 Duplex conveying section

The duplex conveying section consists of conveying path which sends the paper sent from the eject/feedshift section to the paper feed/conveying section when duplex printing.





- 1. Right cover 1
- 2. Duplex feed roller A
- 3. Duplex feed pulley A
- 4. Duplex feed roller B
- 5. Duplex feed pulley B
- 6. Duplex feed roller C
- 7. Duplex feed pulley C
- 8. Actuater(duplex sensor)



Figure 2-1-23 Duplex conveying section block diagram

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs



6. Operation panel PWB 2 (OPPWB 1) Consists of the LCD, LED indicators and key switches.

7. LCD PWB (LCDPWB)	Controls the LCD display.
8. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)	Reads the image of originals.
9. APC PWB (APCPWB)	Generates and controls the laser beam.
10. NFC PWB (NFCPWB)	Antenna circuit for wireless communication.
11. Drum PWB (DRPWB)	Relays wirings from electrical components on the drum unit.
	Drum individual information in EEPROM storage.
12. Drum relay PWB (DRRPWB)	Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and the drum unit.
13. Developing PWB (DEVPWB)	Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit. Developing individual information in EEPROM storage.
14. Developing relay PWB (DEVRPWB)	Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and the developer unit and contain the temperature sensor inside the machine.
15. RFID PWB (RFPWB)	Reads the container information.
16. LED PWB (LEDPWB)	Exposes originals.
17. Touch Panel (TP)	Operation panel.
18. USB PWB (USBPWB)	USB PWB slot distribution.

List of correspondences of PWB names

No.	Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
1	Main PWB (MPWB)	PATRS PWB MAIN ASSY SP		
2	Engine PWB (EPWB)	PATRS PWB ENGINE ASSY SP		
3	High voltage PWB (HVPWB)	PARTS HIGH VOLTAGE SP		
4	Power source PWB (PSPWB)	PARTS LOW VOLTAGE 100 SP PARTS LOW VOLTAGE 200 SP		
5	Operation panel PWB 1 (OPPWB 1)	PARTS OPERATION UNIT SP		
6	Operation panel PWB 2 (OPPWB 2)			
7	LCD PWB (LCDPWB)			
8	CCD PWB (CCDPWB)	PARTS ISU		
9	APC PWB (APCPWB)	LK-7105		
10	NFC PWB (NFCPWB)	PARTS PWB NFC ASSY SP		
11	Drum PWB (DRPWB)	DK-7105		
12	Drum relay PWB (DRRPWB)	PARTS PWB DRUM CONNECT ASSY SP		
13	Developing PWB (DEVPWB)	DV-7105		
14	Developing relay PWB (DEVRPWB)	PARTS DEVE CONNECT ASSY SP		
15	RFID PWB (RFPWB)	PARTS PWB RFID ASSY SP		
16	LED PWB (LEDPWB)	PARTS PWB SCANNER LED ASSY SP		
17	Touch panel (TP)	PARTS OPERATION UNIT SP		
18	USB PWB (USBPWB)	PARTS PWB USB HUB ASSY SP		

(2) Switches and sensors





- 1. Home position sensor (HPS) Detects the ISU in the home position.
- 2. Original detection switch (ODSW) Operates the original size detection sensor.
- 3. Original size sensor (OSS) Detects the size of the original.
- 4. Front cover switch (FCSW)..... Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
- 5. Right cover switch 1 (RCSW 1) Detects the opening and closing of the right cover1.
- 6. Right cover switch 2 (RCSW 2) Detects the opening and closing of the right cover2.
- 7. Paper sensor 1 (PS1) Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1.
- 8. Paper sensor 2 (PS2) Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1.
- 9. Paper sensor 3 (PS3) Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2.
- Paper sensor 4 (PS4) Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2.
 MP paper sensor (MPPS) Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.

12.	Lift sensor 1 (LS1)	Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate in the cassette 1.
13.	Lift sensor 2 (LS2)	Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate in the cassette 2.
14.	Feed sensor 1 (FS1)	Detects a paper misfeed in the vertical conveying section.
15.	Feed sensor 2 (FS2)	Detects a paper misfeed in the vertical conveying section.
16.	Registration sensor (RS)	Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
17.	Eject sensor (ES)	Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser or eject section.
18.	Duplex sensor (DUS)	Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.
19.	Paper full sensor (PFS)	Detects the paper full in the inner tray.
20.	Job paper full sensor (JPFS)	Detects the paper full in the job separator tray.
21.	Job eject papersensor (JEPS)	Detects the presence of paper in the job separator.
22.	Paper size width switch 1 (PWSW1)	Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1.
23.	Paper size width switch 2 (PWSW2)	Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2.
24.	Paper size length switch 1 (PLSW1)	Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1.
25.	Paper size length switch 2 (PLSW2)	Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2.
26.	Toner container lock sensor (TCLS)	Detects the lock of toner in the toner container.
27.	Main power switch (MSW)	Turns ON/OFF the AC power source.
28.	Cassette heater switch (CHSW)	Turns ON/OFF the cassette heater power source.
29.	Temperature sensor (TEMS)	Detects the temperature and absolute humidity outside the machine.
30.	Toner sensor (TS)	Detects the amount of toner remaining in the toner container.
31.	Waste toner sensor (WTS)	Detects when the waste toner box is full.
32.	Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)	Detects the heat roller temperature. (contact / edge)
33.	Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)	Detects the heat roller temperature. (noncontact / center)
34.	Toner container switch (TCSW)	Detects the presence of toner container.
35.	MP tray switch (MPTSW)	Detects the position of the MP sub tray.
36.	MP paper width switch (MPPWSW)	Detects the width of paper in the MP tray.
37.	MP paper length switch (MPPLSW)	Detects the length of paper in the MP tray.
38.	Power source switch(PSSW)	Power source of Main PWB, engine PWB and Operation panel

PWB

39. Motors



Figure 2-2-3 Motors

- 1. Main motor (MM)..... Drives the paper feed section and conveying section.
- 2. Paper feed motor (PFM) Drives the cassette 2.
- 3. ISU motor (ISUM) Drives the ISU.
- 4. Polygon motor (PM)..... Drives the polygon mirror.
- 5. Eject motor (EM)..... Drives the fuser section and eject section.
- 6. Lift motor 1 (LM1)..... Operates the bottom plate in the cassette 1.
- 7. Lift motor 2 (LM2)..... Operates the bottom plate in the cassette 2.
- 8. Eject fan motor (EFM)..... Cools the fuser and eject sections.
- 9. LSU fan motor (LSUFM) Cools the LSU section.
- 10. Power source fan motor (PSFM) Cools the power source PWB and the laser scanner unit.

(3) Others





- 1. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) Controls the primary paper feed from cassette 1.
- 2. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) Controls the primary paper feed from cassette 2.
- 3. Registration clutch (RCL)..... Controls the secondary paper feed.
- 4. Duplex clutch (DUCL) Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.
- 5. Mid clutch (MCL)..... Controls the paper conveying.
- 6. MP solenoid (MPSOL) Controls the MP bottom plate.
- 7. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)..... Operates the feedshift guide.
- 8. Cleaning lamp (CL)..... Eliminates the residual electrostatic charge on the drum.
- 9. Fuser heater 1 (FH1) Heats the heat roller.
- 10. Fuser heater 2 (FH2) Heats the heat roller.
- 11. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)..... Prevents overheating of the heat roller.
- 12. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)..... Prevents overheating of the heat roller.

- 13. Cassette heater (CH)..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.
- 14. Hard disk (HDD)......Storages the image data and information of job accounting mode.
- 15. Speaker (SPK) Generates an error sound.

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-3-1 Main PWB





Figure 2-3-1 Main PWB silk diagram

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	SATATXDP_C2H	0	-	HDD data signal
nected to	3	SATATXDN_C2H	0	-	HDD data signal
עשה אווי	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SATARXDN_H2C	I	-	HDD data signal
	6	SATARXDP_H2C	I	-	HDD data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	TD1+	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
Ethernet	2	TD1-	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TD2+	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	TD2-	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	5	CT1	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	6	CT2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	7	TD3+	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	8	TD3-	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	9	TD4+	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	10	TD4-	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	11	GRLED_A	0	0/3.3 V DC	LED emission signal
	12	GRLED_K	0	0/3.3 V DC	LED emission signal
	13	YWLED_A	0	0/3.3 V DC	LED emission signal
	14	YWLED_K	0	0/3.3 V DC	LED emission signal
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	LCD_OFF	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
nected to	3	LOCKN	0	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
tion panel	4	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	5	TX0N	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	6	TX0P	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC8	1	VBUS1	0	5 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to IFPWB
Con-	2	USB_DN1	I/O	-	USB data signal
Nected to	3	USB_DP1	I/O	-	USB data signal
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO1	I	Analog	AUDIO signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	6	WAKEUP1	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
Con-	7	RESET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
nected to	8	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	9	VBUS0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to IFPWB
	10	USB_DN0	I/O	-	USB data signal
	11	USB_DP0	I/O	-	USB data signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	AUDIO0	I	Analog	AUDIO signal
	14	WAKEUP0	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	15	RESET	Т	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
YC9	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	5.0V4_1	I	0/5 V DC	5 V DC cut signal
nected to	3	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	4	5.0V1	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to IFPWB
	5	GND			
	6	5.0V4_2	Ι	5 V DC	5 V DC cut signal
YC10	1	GND			
Con- nected to	2	GND(DP_CONN ECTN)	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
the DPIF	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	PCIEEP_TXDP0	0		Image data signal
	5	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	PCIEEP_TXDN0	0		Image data signal
	7	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	12	PCIEEP_RXDP0	Ι		Image data signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	PCIEEP_RXDN0	I		Image data signal
	15	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	18	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	19	5.0V3	-	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con- nected to	20	PCIEP_REFCLK _DP	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
the DPIF	21	GND	-	-	Ground
PVD	22	PCIEN_REFCLK _DP	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	PCIERC_SWRST _N_M2DP	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	DP_RST_N	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	GND	-	-	Ground
	35	GND	-	-	Ground
	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	GND	-	-	Ground
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	SCN_E2C_IR	0	0/3.3 V DC	G6 interrupt signal
the engine	3	SCN_E2C_SDIR	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication direction signal
PWB	4	SCN_E2C_SBSY	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication busy signal
	5	SCN_C2E_SDAT	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 data input signal
	6	SCN_E2C_SDAT	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 data output signal
	7	SCN_C2E_SCK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Main communication clock signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12	A1	I2C_SCL_NFC	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	I2C clock signal
Con-	A2	3.3V2_CPU	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Energy Saver key interrupt signal
nected to	A3	FPRST	0	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
tion panel	A4	P2C_SDAT	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
PWB 1	A5	C2P_SDAT	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A6	P2C_SDIR	0	0/3.3 V DC	Panel communication direction signal
	A7	P2C_SBSY	0	0/3.3 V DC	Panel busy signal
	A8	C2P_SCK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Panel clock signal
	A9	DISPLAY_POWE RON	0	0/3.3 V DC	LCD backlight lighting-off signal
	A10	INT_ANYKEY	0	0/3.3 V DC	Main recovery signal
	A11	GND	-	-	Ground
	A12	5.0V6	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A13	5.0V6	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A14	5.0V6	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A15	5.0V6	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B1	POWER_SW	0	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	В3	JOB_LED	0	0/3.3 V DC	JOB LED control signal
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	GND	-	-	Ground
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	BEEP_POWERO N	0	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep recovery signal
	B8	LED_MEMORY	0	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	B9	LED_ATTENTIO N	0	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	B10	LED_PROCESSI NG	0	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	B11	AUDIO	0	Analog	Audio output signal
	B12	PNL_WKUP_RE Q	0	0/3.3 V DC	Panel recovery signal
	B13	INT_ENERGYSA VEKEY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Energy Saver key interrupt signal
	B14	NIRQ	0	0/3.3 V DC	NFC interrupt signal
	B15	I2C_SDA_NFC	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	I2C clock signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC20	A1	VBUS_A	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con- nected to USB2.0 host, USB2.0 device	A2	DA	I/O	-	USB data signal
	A3	D+_A	I/O	-	USB data signal
	A4	GND_A	-	-	Ground
	B1	VBUS_B	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B2	DB	I/O	-	USB data signal
	В3	D+_B	I/O	-	USB data signal
	B4	GND_B	-	-	Ground
YC31	1	CD/DAT3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
SD card	2	CMD	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
slot	3	VSS	-	-	Ground
	4	VDD	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	5	CLK	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	6	VSS	-	-	Ground
	7	DAT0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	8	DAT1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	9	DAT2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	10	CD	Т	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	11	COMMON	-	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	12	WP	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
YC32	1	GND	-	-	
Con-	2	5.0V5	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HDD
the HDD	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC42	1	5.0V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to the power supply PWB	3	5.0V0	Ι	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5.0V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	5.0V0	Ι	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
----------------	-----	----------	-----	--------------------	--
YC42	9	5.0V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC59	1	VBUS	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con-	2	DATA-	I/O	LVDS	USB data signal
nected to	3	DATA+	I/O	LVDS	USB data signal
PWB	4	ID	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC60	1	5.0V7	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con-	2	5.0V7	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
nected to	3	5.0V7	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC62	1	SD_D3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
Con-	2	SD_D2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
Nected to	3	SD_CMD	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
ule	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SD_CLK	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	SD_D1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
	8	SD_D0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	VIO	ΡI	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	11	VBAT	ΡI	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	PAVDD	ΡI	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	HOSTWAKE	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Interrupt signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	RESET	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	18	DETECT	-	-	Ground
	19	USB_+	I/O	LVDS	USB data signal
	20	USB	I/O	LVDS	USB data signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC63	1	JS_LED_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	JOB separator LED lighting signal
Con- nected to	2	ENG_WKUP_RE Q	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine sleep recovery signal
the engine	3	HLD_ENG	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Engine stop signal
FVD	4	E2C_SDAT	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication data output signal
	5	C2E_SDAT	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication data input signal
	6	C2E_SCLK	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication clock signal
	7	E2C_SBSY	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication busy signal
	8	E2C_IR	0	0/3.3 V DC	G6 communication interrupt signal
	9	E2C_SDIR	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication direction signal
	10	ENG_POWOFF_ N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine power off signal
	11	HLD_SCAN	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner stop signal
	12	DP_WAKEUP_R EQ	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	DP sleep recovery signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
YC64	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	SRIF_SDR1N	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
nected to	3	SRIF_SDR1P	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SRIF_SDR2N	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	6	SRIF_SDR2P	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	SRIF_SDR3N	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	9	SRIF_SDR3P	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	SRIF_SCLKRN	Ι	LVDS	Serializer transfer data
	12	SRIF_SCLKRP	Ι	LVDS	Serializer transfer data
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	SRIF_SDR4N	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	15	SRIF_SDR4P	Ι	LVDS	Serializer output data
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC65	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	V1_DATA0_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
nected to	3	V1_DATA0_P	Т	LVDS	Image data signal
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	V1_DATA1_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	6	V1_DATA1_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	V1_DATA2_N	Т	LVDS	Image data signal
	9	V1_DATA2_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	V1_CLK_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	12	V1_CLK_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	V0_DATA0_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	15	V0_DATA0_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	V0_DATA1_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	18	V0_DATA1_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	V0_DATA2_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	21	V0_DATA2_P	I	LVDS	Image data signal
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	V0_CLK_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	24	V0_CLK_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	VSYNC_D_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	27	VSYNC_D_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	28	VSYNC_C_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	29	VSYNC_C_P	I	LVDS	Image data signal
	30	VSYNC_B_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	31	VSYNC_B_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	32	VSYNC_A_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	33	VSYNC_A_P	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	34	HSYNC_D_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	35	HSYNC_D_P	I	LVDS	Image data signal
	36	HSYNC_C_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
	37	HSYNC_C_P	I	LVDS	Image data signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC65	38	HSYNC_B_N	Ι	LVDS	Image data signal
Con-	39	HSYNC_B_P	Т	LVDS	Image data signal
nected to	40	HSYNC_A_N	Т	LVDS	Image data signal
PWB	41	HSYNC_A_P	Т	LVDS	Image data signal

2-3-2 Engine PWB





Figure 2-3-2 Engine PWB silk diagram

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	OS_SAD4P	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	8	OS_SAD4N	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	OS_SACKP	0	LVDS	Serializer transfer data
	11	OS_SACKN	0	LVDS	Serializer transfer data
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	OS_SAD3P	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	14	OS_SAD3N	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	OS_SAD2P	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	17	OS_SAD2N	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	OS_SAD1P	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	20	OS_SAD1N	0	LVDS	Serializer output data
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	5VIL	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	VDATA2N	0	LVDS	Video data LVDS(-)
PWB	4	VDATA2P	0	LVDS	Video data LVDS(+)
	5	VDATA1N	0	LVDS	Video data LVDS(-)
	6	VDATA1P	0	LVDS	Video data LVDS(+)
	7	SAMPLEN2	0	0/3.3 V DC	Laser output enabling signal
	8	SAMPLEN1	0	0/3.3 V DC	Laser output enabling signal
	9	OUTPEN	0	0/3.3 V DC	Laser output enabling signal
	10	VCONT	0	Analog	Laser control signal
	11	PDN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronizing signal
	12	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	13	NC	-	-	Not used

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	24V2	0	DC4V	24 V DC power output to PM
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	POL_REM	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	PM: On/Off
gon motor	4	POL_READY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	PM ready signal
	5	POL_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	JS_SET	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	JEPS: On/Off
nected to	3	24VF2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EFM
paper sen-	4	EJE_FAN_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	EFM: On/Off
sor, the					
motor					
YC7	1	EJE_SOL_PULL	0	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On?Pressure?/Off
Con-	2	24VF2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FSSOL
nected to	3	EJE_SOL_RETU	0	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On?Release)/Off
the feed- shift sole-		RN			
noid					
YC8	1	EJECT A	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	EM drive control signal
Con-	2	EJECT B	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	EM drive control signal
nected to	3	EJECT / A	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	EM drive control signal
motor, the	4	EJECT /B	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	EM drive control signal
job paper	5	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to JPFS
sor, the	6	GND	-	-	Ground
paper full sensor	7	EJE_FULL_UPP ER	I	0/3.3 V DC	JPFS: On/Off
and the	8	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFS
eject sen-	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	EJE_FULL_DOW NER	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFS: On/Off
	11	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to ES
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	FUSER_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	ES: On/Off

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Con-	2	NC	-	-	Not used
nected to	3	NC	-	-	Not used
thermistor	4	NC	-	-	Not used
1,2	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	NC	-	-	Not used
	7	3.3V0	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to FTH
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	CTHERM	Т	Analog	FTH1 detection voltage (edge)
	10	FSR_SET	Ι	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage (center)
YC10	1	AC_DETECTOR	-	-	Not used
Con-	2	DR_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	FH: On/Off
nected to	3	SHREM	0	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off
source	4	MHREM	0	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
PWB,	5	ZEROCROSS	Т	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero cross signal
power source fan	6	RELAYREM	0	0/3.3 V DC	Power relay signal: On/Off
motor	7	LVU_SLEEP	0	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	24VIL3	Ι	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	10	LVU_FAN	0	0/24 V DC	PSFM: On/Off
	11	24V2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PSFM
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	DLP_SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB EEPROM data signal
nected to	3	DLP_SCL	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB EEPROM clock signal
toner con-	4	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DEVPWB
tainer	5	DLP_TH	I	Analog	DLPTH detection signal
toner con-	6	GND	-	-	Ground
tainer lock	7	TCON_EMP	I	0/3.3 V DC	TS: On/Off
switch,	8	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to TS
sor, devel-	9	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to TCLS
oper relay	10	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	11	TCON_LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCLS: On/Off
	12	TCON_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCSW: On/Off
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	15	RFID_SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RFPWB EEPROM data signal
	16	RFID_SCL	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RFPWB EEPROM clock signal
	17	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to RFPWB
	18	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
YC12	1	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DRPWB
Con-	2	DRUM_SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB EEPROM data signal
nected to	3	DRUM_SCL	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB EEPROM clock signal
perature	4	GND	-	-	Ground
sensor,	5	WT_LED	0	0/3.3 V DC	WTL: On/Off
motor and	6	WT_SENS	T	Analog	WTS detection signal
the drum	7	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to WTS
relay PWB	8	ERASE	0	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	9	24VF3	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CL
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	LSU_FAN	0	0/24 V DC	LSUFM: On/Off
	12	HUMID_OUT	Ι	Analog	Temperature/humidity sensor detection voltage (humidity)
	13	HUMID_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC	Temperature/humidity sensor clock sig- nal
	14	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to TEMP
	15	TEMP	I	Analog	Temperature/humidity sensor detection voltage (temperature)
YC13	A1	FEED1_CL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
Con-	A2	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PDCL1
nected to	A3	REG1_CL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
feed clutch	A4	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to RCL
1, the reg-	A5	DU_CL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	DUCL: On/Off
stration	A6	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DUCL
dual	A7	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MPSOL
clutch, the	A8	MPF_SOL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off
noid, the	A9	LMOT1_REM2	0	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
lift motor	A10	LMOT1_REM1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to LM1
1, the main	A11	DLPCL_REM	-	-	Not used
motor, the	A12	24VF1	-	-	Not used
paper feed	B1	24VILF3	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MM
motor	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	В3	MAIN_REM	0	0/24 V DC	MM: On/Off

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13	B4	MAIN_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	B5	MAIN_READY	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM ready signal
	B6	MAIN_DIR	0	0/3.3 V DC	MM drive switch signal
	B7	24VILF3	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFM
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	FSRMOT_REM	0	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	B10	FSRMOT_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	B11	FSRMOT_RDY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	PFM ready signal
	B12	FSRMOT_DIR	0	0/3.3 V DC	PFM drive switch signal
YC14	1	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PS1
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	PAPEMP1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS1: On/Off
sensor 1	4	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PS2
to 4, the	5	GND	-	-	Ground
paper	6	PAPEMP2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS2: On/Off
switch 1,2,	7	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PS3
the paper	8	GND	-	-	Ground
switch 1,2	9	PAPEMP3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS3: On/Off
	10	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PS4
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	PAPEMP4	Т	0/3.3 V DC	PS4: On/Off
	13	PAP1LSIZE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	PAP1LSIZE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	16	PAP1LSIZE3	Т	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	17	PAP1WSIZE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	PAP2LSIZE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	PAP2LSIZE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	22	PAP2LSIZE3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	23	PAP2WSIZE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	24	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC15	1	DU_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS: On/Off
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DUS
sensor,	4	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPPS
MP paper	5	GND	-	-	Ground
sensor, the	6	MPF_PPR_SET	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
sor 1	7	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to FS1
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	FEED1_SENS	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	FS1: On/Off
YC16	1	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPPWSW
Con-	2	MPF_WID	Т	Analog	MPPWSW: On/Off
nected to	3	MPF_LNG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
tray	4	GND	-	-	Ground
switch, MP	5	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPPLSW
paper length	6	MPF_TRAY	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPTDSW: On/Off
switch, MP	7	GND	-	-	Ground
paper					
switch					

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC17	A1	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to LS2
Con-	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	A3	CAS2_LIFT_UP	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	LS2: On/Off
sor 2, the	A4	LMOT2_REM2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to LM
lift motor	A5	LMOT2_REM1	0	0/24 V DC	LM: On/Off
2, the feed sensor 2	A6	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to FS2
the right	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
cover	A8	FEED2_SENS	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	FS2: On/Off
the middle	A9	COVER_OPEN	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	RCSW2: On/Off
switch, the	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
paper feed	A11	24VF1	-	-	Not used
the lift sen-	A12	INNERFAN	-	-	Not used
sor 1, the	A13	24VF1	-	-	Not used
tion sensor	A14	CONVEYFAN	-	-	Not used
	B1	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MCL
	B2	REG2_CL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	MCL: On/Off
	B3	24VF1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL2
	B4	FEED2_CL_REM	0	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	B5	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to LS1
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	CAS1_LIFT_UP	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	LS1: On/Off
	B8	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to RS
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	REG_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	RS: On/Off
	B11	3.3V2	-	-	-
	B12	GND	-	-	-
	B13	SEC_DATA	-	-	-
	B14	SEC_CLK	-	-	-
YC18	1	BRIDGE_FAN	-	-	Not used
Con-	2	BRIDGE_VREF	-	-	Not used
nected to	3	BRIDGE_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM: On/Off
the bridge	4	BRIDGE_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BRCM clock signal
	5	BRIDGE_PH0	0	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM control signal
	6	BRIDGE_PH1	0	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM control signal
	7	BRIDGE_DET			Bridge set signal
	8	BRIDGE_SEN1	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	BRCS1: On/Off

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	9	BRIDGE_SEN2	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	BRCS2: On/Off
Con-	10	COVER_OPEN	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	BRCSW: On/Off
nected to	11	GND	-	-	Ground
the bridge	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to BRES
	14	24VF5	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to BRPWB
YC19	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	DLP_CNT	0	Analog	The developer DC output switch signal
voltage	4	DLP_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developer AC clock signal
PWB	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	SEP_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	Separation DC output: On/Off
	7	TRA_CNT	0	Analog	Transfer DC output control signal
	8	DC_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	Transfer DC/ Transfer DC output On/ Off
	9	MC_ISENS	I	Analog	Charger output current detection signal
	10	MC_DCCNT	0	Analog	Charger DC output control signal
	11	MC_ACCNT	0	Analog	Charger AC output control signal
	12	MC_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Charger AC clock signal
	13	24VIL3	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVPWB
	14	24VIL3	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVPWB
YC20	1	EH_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
Con-	2	EH_SI	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
nected to	3	EH_SO	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	PF_SEL	0	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed select signal
	5	PF_RDY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed ready signal
	6	PF_SET	0	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed set signal
	7	PF_PAUSE	0	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed control signal
	8	24VF6	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to the paper feed
	9	3.3V3_FUSE	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to the paper feed
	10	3.3V2	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to the paper feed
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC21	1	DF_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
Con-	2	DF_SDO	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
nected to	3	DF_SEL	0	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	4	DF_SDI	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	5	DF_RDY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	6	DF_DET	0	0/3.3 V DC	Set signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC22	1	24VF7	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to the coin ven- dor
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	GND	-	-	Ground
vendor	4	MCV_ENBL	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vendor enable signal
	5	NC	-	-	Ground
	6	MCV_FED_COU NT	0	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vendor control signal
	7	MCV_EJ_COUN T	0	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vendor control signal
	8	MCV_COPY_SIG	0	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vendor control signal
	9	MCV_UART_TX D	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal output
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	MCV_UART_RX D	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MCV: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC23	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	DC1_SET	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter set signal
nected to	3	DC1_COUNT	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter count signal
counter	4	24VF7	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to the key counts
(Referenc e)					
YC24	1	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to the key card
Con-	2	5V2	-	-	Not used
nected to	3	5V2	-	-	Not used
card(Refer	4	5V2	-	-	Not used
ence)	5	5V2	-	-	Not used
	6	5V2	-	-	Not used
	7	5V2	-	-	Not used
	8	5V2	-	-	Not used

2RG/2RH-2

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC24	9	MK2_ENBL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key card enable signal
Con-	10	24V2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to the key counts
nected to	11	MK2_RKEY7	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
card	12	MK2_RKEY6	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
(Referenc	13	MK2_RKEY5	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
e)	14	MK2_RKEY4	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	15	MK2_RKEY3	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	16	MK2_RKEY2	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	17	MK2_RKEY1	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	18	MK2_RKEY0	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	MK2_COUNT	0	0/3.3 V DC	Key card count signal
YC27	1	SC_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scanner clock signal
Con-	2	SC_SO	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
nected to	3	SC_SI	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
PWB	4	SC_BSY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner busy signal
	5	SC_DIR	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner communication direction signal
	6	SC_IRN	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner interrupt signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC29	1	12V5	0	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
Con-	2	12V5	0	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
nected to	3	12V5	0	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
PWB	4	12V5	0	12 V DC	12 V DC power output
	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	LED_PWM	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LED driver PWM signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	DSI_CIS_5P	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	9	DSI_CIS_5N	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	DSI_CIS_4P	I	LVDS	Serial input data
	12	DSI_CIS_4N	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	DSI_CIS_3P	I	LVDS	Serial input data
	15	DSI_CIS_3N	I	LVDS	Serial input data
	16	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC29	17	DSI_CIS_CKP	Ι	LVDS	Transfer clock
Con-	18	DSI_CIS_CKN	Ι	LVDS	Transfer clock
nected to	19	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	20	DSI_CIS_2P	I	LVDS	Serial input data
	21	DSI_CIS_2N	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	DSI_CIS_1P	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	24	DSI_CIS_1N	Ι	LVDS	Serial input data
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	AFE_RD	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	AFE serial communication read signal
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	AFE_WD	0	0/3.3 V DC	AFE serial communication write signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	AFE_CLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	AFE serial communication clock signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	AFE_CS	0	0/3.3 V DC	AFE serial communication select signal
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	AFE_MCLK_P	0	LVDS	AFE clock signal
	35	AFE_MCLK_N	0	LVDS	AFE clock signal
	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	NC	-	-	Not used
	38	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	39	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	40	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC30	1	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
Con-	2	24V2	Ι	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
nected to	3	GND	-	-	Ground
supply	4	GND	-	-	Ground
PWB	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	5∨0	Ι	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
YC31	1	24V2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Con- nected to the front cover switch	2	24VIL1	1	24 V DC	24 V DC power input

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC32	1	24VIL1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
Con- nected to the right coverr switch	2	24VIL2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC33	1	DP_CLK(ENG to DP)	0	0/3.3 V DC	Serial communication clock signal
Con- nected to	2	DP_SED(ENG to DP)	0	0/3.3 V DC	Serial communication data output signal
the DP	3	DP_TMG(DP to ENG)	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	DP scanning start signal
	4	DP_CO(DP to ENG)	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	DP cover open/close detection signal
	5	DP_RDY(DP to ENG)	I	0/3.3 V DC	Serial communication ready signal
	6	DP_PAGE_END	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	DP conveying sensor: On/Off
	7	DP_ORG_SEN	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Original detection sensor: On/Off
	8	3.3V3_FUSE	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	24VF8	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	13	24VF8	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	14	24VF8	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	15	DP_SEL(ENG to DP)	0	0/3.3 V DC	Serial communication select signal
	16	DP_SDI(DP to ENG)	I	0/3.3 V DC	Serial communication data input signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC34	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	ORG_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	OSS: On/Off
nected to	3	5V2	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OSS
size sen-	4	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to ODSW
sor, the	5	GND	-	-	Ground
original detection	6	PLT_OPEN	Т	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
switch, the	7	3.3VLED	0	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to HPS
home	8	GND	-	-	Ground
sensor	9	HP_SENS	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	HPS: On/Off
and ISU	10	SCAN_MOT_1_B	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	ISU drive control signal
motor	11	SCAN_MOT_1_A	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	ISU drive control signal
	12	SCAN_MOT_2_A	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	ISU drive control signal
	13	SCAN_MOT_2_B	0	0/24 V DC(pulse)	ISU drive control signal
YC35	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con- nected to	2	DP_WAKEUP_R EQ(M to E)	0	0/3.3 V DC	DP sleep recovery signal
the main PWB	3	HLD_SCN(M to E)	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner stop signal
	4	ENG_POWEROF F_N (M_E)	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine power off signal
	5	ENG_G6_DIR(E_ M)	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication direction signal
	6	ENG_G6_IR(E_ M)	0	0/3.3 V DC	G6 communication interrupt signal
	7	ENG_G6_BSY(E _M)	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication busy signal
	8	ENG_G6_CLK(M _E)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication clock signal
	9	ENG_G6_SDI(M _E)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication data input signal
	10	ENG_G6_SDO(E _M)	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	G6 communication data output signal
	11	ENG_HOLD	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Engine stop signal
	12	ENG_WKUP_RE Q	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine sleep recovery signal
	13	JS_LED_REM	0	0/3.3 V DC	JOB separator LED lighting signal
	14	NC	-	-	Not used

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC37	1	SAT_2_HSYNC_ A_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
Con- nected to	2	SAT_2_HSYNC_ A_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
the main PWB	3	SAT_2_HSYNC_ B_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	4	SAT_2_HSYNC_ B_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	5	SAT_2_HSYNC_ C_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	6	SAT_2_HSYNC_ C_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	7	SAT_2_HSYNC_ D_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	8	SAT_2_HSYNC_ D_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	9	SAT_2_VSYNC_ A_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	10	SAT_2_VSYNC_ A_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	11	SAT_2_VSYNC_ B_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	12	SAT_2_VSYNC_ B_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	13	SAT_2_VSYNC_ C_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	14	SAT_2_VSYNC_ C_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	15	SAT_2_VSYNC_ D_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	16	SAT_2_VSYNC_ D_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	SAR_2_VCLK1_ P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	19	SAR_2_VCLK1_ N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	SAR_2_CH13_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	22	SAR_2_CH13_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	SAR_2_CH12_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC37	25	SAR_2_CH12_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
Con-	26	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	27	SAR_2_CH11_P	0	LVDS	Image data signal
PWB	28	SAR_2_CH11_N	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	31	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	34	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	35	GND	-	-	Ground
	36	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	37	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	38	GND	-	-	Ground
	39	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	40	TP	0	LVDS	Image data signal
	41	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-3 Operation panel PWB 1





Figure 2-3-3 Operation panel PWB 1 silk diagram

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	5V6	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Operation	2	LED0	0	0/5 V DC	LED control signal 0
panel	3	NC	-	-	Not used
FVVDZ	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	ATTENTION	0	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	6	MEMORY	0	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	7	PROCESSING	0	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	8	ENER- GYSAVERLED	0	0/3.3 V DC	Energy Saver LED control signal
	9	INT_ENERGYSA VERLED_N	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Energy Saver key interrupt signal
	10	KEY0	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
	11	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	12	KEY2	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	13	KEY3	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	14	SCAN0	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	15	SCAN1	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	16	SCAN2	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	17	SCAN3	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	18	JOB_LED	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator LED control signal
	19	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	20	LED2	0	0/5 V DC	LED control signal 2
YC4	1	SPEAKER_P	0	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
Con- nected to the speaker	2	SPEAKER_N	0	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
YC5	A1	5V6	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Con-	A2	5V6	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
nected to	A3	5V6	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
the main PWB	A4	5V6	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	ANYKEY	0	0/3.3 V DC	Main recovery signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	A7	DISPLAY_POWE RON	I	0/3.3 V DC	LCD backlight lighting-off signal
Con-	A8	C2P_SCK	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Panel clock signal
nected to	A9	P2C_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Panel busy signal
PWB	A10	P2C_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Panel communication direction signal
	A11	C2P_SDAT	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A12	P2C_SDAT	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A13	FPRST	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel reset signal
	A14	3.3V_MAIN	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	A15	I2C_SCL_NFC	Т	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	I2C clock signal
	B1	I2C_SDA_NFC	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	12C data signal
	B2	NIRQ	Т	0/3.3 V DC	NFC interrupt signal
	B3	INT_ENERGYSA VEKEY_N	0	0/3.3 V DC	Energy Saver key interrupt signal
	B4	PNL_WKUP_RE Q	I	0/3.3 V DC	Panel recovery signal
	B5	AUDIO	Ι	Analog	Audio output signal
	B6	LED_PROCESSI NG_N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	B7	LED_ATTENTIO N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	B8	LED_MEMORY	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	B9	BEEP_POWERO N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Alert sound recovery signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	JOB_LED	I	0/3.3 V DC	JOB separator LED control signal
	B14	GND	-	-	Not used
	B15	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC6	1	LED_A	0	0/3.3 V DC	LED control signal
Con- nected to the LCD	2	LED_C	I	0/3.3 V DC	LED control signal
YC7	1	YP-Bottom	Ι	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
Con-	2	XN-Left	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
nected to	3	YN-Top	Ι	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
panel	4	XP-Right	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	2	LCD_OFF	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
nected to	3	LOCKN_GPIO0	0	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RX0N	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	6	RX0P	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC9	1	VGH	0	19.83 V DC	LCD High power output
Con-	2	VDD	0	3.3 V DC	LCD Driver power output
nected to	3	VGL	0	9.1 V DC	LCD Low power output
	4	VCOM	0	3.67 V DC	LCD Common power output
	5	VCOM	0	3.67 V DC	LCD Common power output
	6	AGND	-	-	Ground
	7	AVDD	0	0.34 V DC	LCD Analog power output
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	V1	0	9.55 V DC	LCD V1 power output
	11	V2	0	9.21 V DC	LCD V2 power output
	12	V3	0	7.72 V DC	LCD V8 power output
	13	V4	0	7.72 V DC	LCD V4 power output
	14	V5	0	6.86 V DC	LCD V5 power output
	15	V6	0	6.11 V DC	LCD V6 power output
	16	V7	0	5.02 V DC	LCD V7power output
	17	HSD	0	0/3.3 V DC	Control bit select signal
	18	GND_LVDS	-	-	Ground
	19	RxIN3+	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	20	RxIN3-	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	RxIN2+	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	23	RxIN2-	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	RxIN1+	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	26	RxIN1-	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	RxIN0+	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	29	RxIN0-	0	LVDS	Display data signal

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	30	GND	-	-	Ground
Con-	31	RxINCK+	0	LVDS	Display data signal
nected to	32	RxINCK-	0	LVDS	Display data signal
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	VDD_LVDS	0	3.3 V DC	LVDS power output
	35	V8	0	5.02 V DC	LCD V8 power output
	36	V9	0	3.83 V DC	LCD V9 power output
	37	V10	0	3.18 V DC	LCD V10 power output
	38	V11	0	2.78 V DC	LCD V11 power output
	39	V12	0	2.32 V DC	LCD V12 power output
	40	V13	0	0.83 V DC	LCD V13 power output
	41	V14	0	0.5 V DC	LCD V14 power output
	42	AGND	-	-	Ground
	43	AVDD	0	10.34 V DC	LCD Analog power output
	44	VDD	0	3.3 V DC	LCD Driver power output
	45	MODE	0	0/3.3 V DC	Mode select signal
	46	GBR	0	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	47	SHLR	0	0/3.3 V DC	Left/Right writing start point setting sig- nal
	48	UPDN	0	0/3.3 V DC	Upper/Lower writing start point setting signal
	49	СОМ	0	DC3.67V	LCD Common power output
	50	СОМ	0	DC3.67V	LCD Common power output
YC10	1	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
Con- nected to	2	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
the 10 key PWB	3	KEY2	Ι	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	4	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	5	SCAN4	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	6	SCAN5	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	7	SCAN6	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	8	SCAN7	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 7
	9	10key_detect	I	DC0V/3.3V	Keyboard detect signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	3.3V_main	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	NFC_SWCLK	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	12C clock signal
PWB	4	NFC_SWDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	12C data signal
	5	NIRQ	0	0/1.8 V DC	Interrupt signal

2-3-4 Power supply PWB







Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB1	1	LIVE	Ι	100 V AC	AC power input
TB2	1	NEUTRAL	I	100 V AC	AC power input
Con- nected to the inlet					
YC1	1	LIVE	0	100 V AC	AC power output to MSW
Con-	2	LIVE	I	100 V AC	AC power input from MSW
nected to	3	NEUTRAL	I	100 V AC	AC power input from MSW
power switch	4	NEUTRAL	0	100 V AC	AC power output to MSW
YC2	1	LIVE	0	100 V AC	AC power output to FH1,2
Con-	2	МН	0	100 V AC/0V	FH1: On/Off
nected to the fuser	3	SH	0	100 V AC/0V	FH2: On/Off
heater 1,2, the fuser thermo- stat 1,2					
YC3	1	DH_LIVE	0	100 V AC	AC power supply to CH
Con-	2	DH_LIVE	-	-	Not used
nected to	3	NC	-	-	Not used
sette	4	NC	-	-	Not used
heater	5	DH_NEUTRAL	0	100 V AC	AC power supply to CH
	6	DH_NEUTRAL	-	-	Not used
YC4	1	DH_LIVE	Ι	100 V AC	AC power input from CHSW
Con-	2		-	-	Not used
nected to the cas- sette heater switch	3	DH_LIVE	0	100 V AC	AC power output to CHSW

Connec- tor	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	24V1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
Con-	2	24V1	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
nected to	3	24V2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DF
PWB, DF	4	24V2	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DF
	5	GNDDF	-	-	Ground
	6	GNDDF	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to EPWB
YC6	1	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
PWB	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	5V0	0	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7	1	24V3IL	0	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
Con-	2	GND	-	-	Ground
nected to	3	POWER_OFF	0	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal
PWB	4		I	0/3.3 V DC	Power relay signal: On/Off
	5	ZCROSS	0	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero cross signal
	6	MH_REM	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
	7	SH_REM	Ι	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off

2-4-1 Appendixes

(1) List of maintenance parts

Maintena	Part No	Alternative	
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list	Fart NO.	part No.
Registration cleaner	PARTS CLEANER REGIST ASSY SP	302NL94040	2NL94040
Primary paper feed unit	PARTS PRIMARY FEED ASSY SP	302MV94061	2MV94061
MP paper feed roller	PARTS ROLLER MPF ASSY SP	302MV94021	2MV94021
MP separation pad	PARTS PAD SEPARATION ASSY SP	302RH94180	2RH94180
Eject unit	PARTS EXIT UNIT SP	302NL94050	2NL94050
	PARTS EXIT UNIT J SP	302NL94060	2NL94060
Contact glass	PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(I) SP	302RH94150	2RH94150
	PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(C) SP	302RH94160	2RH94160
Mirror A/B/C	MIRROR A/B/C	-	-
ISU lens	LENS ISU	-	-
LED unit	PARTS MOUNT LED ASSY SP	302L793100	2L793100
ISU rail	RAIL ISU R/F	-	-
Original detection switch	SENSOR ORIGINAL	302ND94800	2ND94800
ISU	PARTS ISU ASSY H SP	302ND93110	2ND93110
Roller	ROLLERS	-	-
Pulley	PULLEYS	-	-
Guide	GUIDES	-	-
Clutch	CLUTCHS	-	-
Sensor	SENSORS	-	-
Cover	OUTER COVERS	-	-

(2) Maintenance kits

Mainte	Barta No	Alternative	
Name used in service	Name used in parts list	Faits NO.	part No.
MK-7105/MAINTENANCE	MK-7105/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702NL8NL0	072NL8NL
KIT (600,000sheet)			
Transfer roller unit	TR-7105	-	-
Drum unit	DK-7105	-	-
Developier unit	DV-7105	-	-
Fuser unit	FK-7105	-	-
MK-7106/MAINTENANCE	MK-7106/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702NL9JP0	072NL9JP
KIT (600,000sheet)			
Transfer roller unit	TR-7105	-	-
Drum unit	DK-7105	-	-
Developier unit	DV-7105	-	-
Fuser unit	FK-7106	-	-
MK-7107/MAINTENANCE	MK-7107/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702NL7US0	072NL7US
KIT (600,000sheet)			
Transfer roller unit	TR-7105	-	-
Drum unit	DK-7105	-	-
Developerunit	DV-7105	-	-
Fuser unit	FK-7107	-	-
MK-7109/MAINTENANCE	MK-7109/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702NL8AS0	072NL8AS
KIT (600,000sheet)			
Transfer roller unit	TR-7105	-	-
Drum unit	DK-7105	-	-
Developier unit	DV-7105	-	-
Fuser unit	FK-7105	-	-

(3) Periodic maintenance procedures

Check the maintenance counts by the maintenance mode U901.

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts) 600/1200/1800	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Image Quality	CH AD	CH AD	Perform at the maximum copy size	-

CH: Check, CL: Clean, AD: Adjust, LU: Lubrication, RE: Replace

\checkmark

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)	Points and cautions	Page
DE and	Pagistration closer		600/1200/1800		D1512
Convey-	Registration cleaner	CL	CL		P.1-5-15
ing sec- tion	Primary paper feed unit	CL	RE	CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement. RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K.	P.1-5-10
	MP paper feed roller	CL	RE	CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement. RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K.	P.1-5-11
	MP separation pad	CL	RE	CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement. RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K.	P.1-5-13
	Rollers ,Pulleys	CL	CL	CL: alcohol or dry cloth	-
	Guides	CL	CL	CL: alcohol or dry cloth	-



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts) 600/1200/1800	Points and cautions	Page
Exit and	Eject unit		CL	CL: VACUUM	
Duplex Section	Rollers ,Pulleys	CL	CL	CL: alcohol or dry cloth	
Occion	Guides		CL	CL: alcohol or dry cloth	

\bigtriangledown

					i
Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)	Points and cautions	Page
			600/1200/1800		
Image scanner section	Contact glass	CL	CL	CL: Slit glass for DP: Clean by dry cloth or alcohol when inatalling DP,clean with dry cloth. Contact glass for putting the original on: Dry cloth after cleaning with alcohol (FACE SIDE) Wipe the back side with dry cloth after cleaning with alcohol only when unusual image (line or stain) appears. (BACK SIDE)	P.1-5-34
	Mirror A/B/C	CL		CL: Airblow after dry cloth only when unusual image(line) appears	-
	ISU lens	CL		CL: Airblow after dry cloth only when unusual image(line) appears	P.1-5-34
	Exposure unit	CL RE		RE: Replace if there are image problems	P.1-5-37
	ISU rail	LU		Check abnormal noise and jitter. LU: scanner rail grease PG-671(P/ N 60170000)	-
	Original detection switch	CH CL		CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if there is problem. (lighting part and light reception part.)	P.1-5-37
	ISU	CH RE		Replace if there are image prob- lems	P.1-5-34

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts) 600/1200/1800	Points and cautions	Page
Drive and other section	Clutch	CH RE	СН	CH: Check the copy registration and paper feed condition on registration and paper feed section	-
	Sensor	СН	СН	CH: Dry cloth or airblow if light reception part of photo sensor is dirt or paper dust	-

$\overline{\mathbf{\nabla}}$

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts) 600/1200/1800	Points and cautions	Page
Cover	Cover		CL	CL: Alcohol or dry cloth	-
	Inside of machine	CL	CL	CL: VACUUM: Remove toner and paper dust especially at the paper conveying part and around the image formation part.	-

* : Please do not use spray containing flamable gas for air-blow or air-brush purposes.

* : The repetitive marks interval may vary depending on operating conditions.

(5) Firmware environment commands

The printer maintains a number of printing parameters in its memory. There parameters may be changed permanently with the FRPO (Firmware RePrOgram) commands.

This section provides information on how to use the FRPO command and its parameters using examples.

Using FRPO commands for reprogramming firmware

The current settings of the FRPO parameters are listed as optional values on the service status page.

Note: Before changing any FRPO parameter, print out a service status page, so you will know the parameter values before the changes are made. To return FRPO parameters to their factory default values, send the FRPO INIT (FRPO-INITialize) command.(IR! FRPO INIT; EXIT;)

The FRPO command is sent to the printer in the following sequence: !R! FRPO parameter, value; EXIT; Example: Changing emulation mode to PC-PR201/65A !R! FRPO P1, 11; EXIT;

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Top margin	A1	Integer value in inches	0
	A2	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	0
Left margin	A3	Integer value in inches	0
	A4	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	0
Page length	A5	Integer value in inches	17
	A6	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	30
Page width	A7	Integer value in inches	17
	A8	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	30
Default pattern resolution	B8	0: 300 dpi 1: 600 dpi	0
Copy count	C0	Number of copies to print:1-999	1
Page orientation	C1	0: Portrait 1: Landscape	0
Default font No. *	C2	Middle two digits of power-up font	0
	C3	Last two digits of power-up font	0
	C5	First two digits of power-up font	0
PCL font switch	C8	0:HP compatibility mode (Characters higher than 127 are not printed.) 32:Conventional mode (Characters higher than 127 are printed. Supported symbol sets: ISO- 60 Norway [00D], ISO-15 Italian [00I], ISO-11 Sweden [00S], ISO-6 ASCII [00U], ISO-4 U.K. [01E], ISO-69 France [01F], ISO-21 Germany [01G], ISO-17 Spain [02S], Symbol [19M] ^a)	0

FRPO parameters
ltem	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Printing concentration	D4	1: Thin. 2: Slightly Thin. 3: Standard 4: Slightly Deep. 5: Deep.	3
Total host buffer size	H8	0 to 99 in units of the size defined by FRPO S5	5
Form feed time-out value	H9	Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)	100V: 1 120V: 6 220-240V: 6
Page reduction function	JO	0: 100 % 5: 70 % 6: 81 % 7: 86 % 8: 94 % 9: 98 %	0
KIR mode	N0	0: Off 2: On	2
Duplex mode	N4	0: Off 1: Long edge binding 2: Short edge binding	0
Sleep timer time-out time	N5	Value in units of 1 minute (1 to 240)	30 ppm: 30 35 ppm: 45
Ecoprint level	N6	0: Off 2: On	0
Default emulation mode	P1	6: PCL 6 9: KPDL	100V: 6 120V: 9 220-240V: 6
Carriage-return action	P2	0: Ignores 1: Carriage-return 2: Carriage-return + linefeed	1
Linefeed action	P3	0: Ignores 1: Linefeed 2: Linefeed + carriage-return	1
Automatic emulation switching	P4	0: AES disabled 1: AES enabled	100V: 0 120V: 1 220-240V: 0
Alternative emulation	P5	Sam6: PCL 6 9: KPDL	6

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Automatic emulation switching trigger	P7	 0: Page eject commands 1: None 2: Page eject and prescribe EXIT commands 3: Prescribe EXIT commands 4: Formfeed (^AL) commands 6: Pescribe EXIT and formfeed commands 10: Page eject commands; if AES fails, resolves to KPDL 	100V: 10 120V: 11 220-240V: 10
Command recognition character	P9	ASCII code of 33 to 126	82 (R)
Default stacker	R0	1 (inner tray) 3 (1,000-sheet Finisher) 7 (3,000-sheet Finisher)	1 3 7

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Default paper size	R2	0: Size of the default paper cassette (See R4.) 1: Monarch $(3-7/8 \times 7-1/2 \text{ inches})$ 2: Business $(4-1/8 \times 9-1/2 \text{ inches})$ 3: International DL $(11 \times 22 \text{ cm})$ 4: International C5 $(16.2 \times 22.9 \text{ cm})$ 5: Executive $(7-1/4 \times 10-1/2 \text{ inches})$ 6: US Letter $(8-1/2 \times 11 \text{ inches})$ 7: US Legal $(8-1/2 \times 14 \text{ inches})$ 8: A4 $(21.0 \times 29.7 \text{ cm})$ 9: JIS B5 $(18.2 \times 25.7 \text{ cm})$ 10: A3 $(29.7 \cdot 42 \text{ cm})$ 11: B4 $(25.7 \cdot 36.4 \text{ cm})$ 12: US Ledger $(11 \cdot 17 \text{ inches})$ 13: ISO A5 14: A6 $(10.5 \times 14.8 \text{ cm})$ 15: JIS B6 $(12.8 \times 18.2 \text{ cm})$ 16: Commercial #9 $(3-7/8 \times 8-7/8 \text{ inches})$ 17: Commercial #6 $(3-5/8 \times 6-1/2 \text{ inches})$ 18: ISO B5 $(17.6 \times 25 \text{ cm})$ 19: Custom $(11.7 \times 17.7 \text{ inches})$ 20:B4toA4 21:A3toA4 22:A4toA4[98%] 23:STKtoA4 24:STKtoB4 30: C4 $(22.9 \cdot 32.4 \text{ cm})$ 31: Hagaki $(10 \times 14.8 \text{ cm})$ 32: Ofuku-hagaki $(14.8 \times 20 \text{ cm})$ 33: Officio II 38:12 × 18 39: 8K 40: 16K 42: 8.5 × 13.5 inches 50: Statement 51: Folio 52: Youkei 2 53: Youkei 4	0
Default cassette	R4	0: MP tray 1: Cassette 1 2: Cassette 2 3: Cassette 3 4: Cassette 4 5: Cassette 5	1
A4/letter equation	S4	0: Off 1: On	100V: 0 120V: 1 220-240V: 1
Host buffer size	S5	0: 10 KB 1: 100 KB 2: 1024 KB	1

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Wide A4	Τ6	0: Off 1: On	0
Line spacing *	U0	Lines per inch (integer value)	6
	U1	Lines per inch (decimal value)	0
Character spacing *	U2	Characters per inch (integer value)	10
	U3	Characters per inch (decimal value)	0
Country code	U6	0: US-ASCII 1: France 2: Germany 3: UK 4: Denmark 5: Sweden 6: Italy 7: Spain 8: Japan 9: US Legal 10: IBM PC-850 (Multilingual) 11: IBM PC-860 (Portuguese) 12: IBM PC-863 (Canadian French) 13: IBM PC-865 (Norwegian) 14: Norway 15: Denmark 2 16: Spain 2 17: Latin America 50 - 99: HP PCL symbol set coding	100V: 0 120V: 53 220-240V: 53
Code set at power up in daisywheel emulation	U7	0: Same as the default emulation mode (P1) 1: IBM 6: PCL	53
Font pitch for fixedpitch scalable	U8	Default font pitch (integer value)	10
tont *	U9	Default font pitch (decimal value)	0
Font height for the default scal-	V0	Integer value in 100 points: 0 to 9	0
able font *	V1	Integer value in points: 0 to 99	12
	V2	decimal value in 1/100 points: 0, 25, 50, 75	0
Default scalable font *	V3	Name of typeface of up to 32 characters, enclosed with single or double quotation marks	Courier

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Default weight (courier and letter Gothic)	V9	0: Courier = darkness Letter Gothic = darkness 1: Courier = regular Letter Gothic = darkness 4: Courier = darkness Letter Gothic = regular 5: Courier = regular Letter Gothic = regular	5
Paper type for the MP tray	XO	1: Plain 2: Transparency 3: Preprinted 4: Label 5: Bond 6: Recycle 7: Vellum 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 12: Envelope 13: Cardstock 14: Coated 16: Thick 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
Paper type for cassettes 1 and 2	X1 X2	1: Plain 3: Preprinted 5: Bond 6: Recycled 7: Vellum 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 16: Thick 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
Paper type for optional cas- settes 3 to 7	X3 X4	1: Plain 3: Preprinted 5: Bond 6: Recycled 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
PCL paper source	X9	 Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ5Si. Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ8000. 	0

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Automatic continue for 'Press GO'	Y0	0: Off 1: On	0
Automatic continue timer	Y1	Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)	6 (30 s)
Error message for device error	Y3	0: Not detect 127: Detect	127
Duplex operation for specified paper type (Prepunched, Preprintedand Letterhead)	Y4	0: Off 1: On	0
Default operation for PDF direct printing	Y5	 O: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads paper from the current paper cassette. Through the image. Loads paper which is the same size as the image. Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. Through the image. Loads paper from the current paper cassette. Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. 	0
e-MPS error	Y6	 Does not print the error report and display the error message. Prints the error report. Displays the error message. Prints the error report and displays the error message. 	3

*: Ignored in some emulation modes.

a. Characters higher than 127 are printed regardless of the C8 value. However, setting C8 to 0 does not print character code 160.

(6) System Error (Fxxxx) Outline

The document is described for the outline of the factors of the Fxxx errors that are not described in the self-diagnosis error code list. Please utilize it as the measures when the system is not recovered after power off/on or it frequently occurs.

*: Please initially check the following when the error (Fxxx) is indicated.

- Check the DIMM (DDR memory) and neighboring parts: Check the contact on the control PWB by releasing and reinserting the DIMM. If the error repeats after that, replace the DIMM.

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks	Content
-	It locks on a Welcome screen. (Even if time passes for a definite period of time in more than * notes, a screen does not change)	 Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Panel<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters. * : only HDD standard model 	* Execution of U024 will vanish user data and the software installed. Reinstallation is required.	[Main <=> Panel] Main PWB?YC12 Panel PWB?YC5
-	It locks on a starting logo (Taskalfa/Ecosys) screen. (Even if time passes for a definite period of time in more than * notes, a screen does not change)	 Check the mounting failure of optional equipment and perform an operation check. Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Engine<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check. Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Panel<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a Engine board and perform an operation check. Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters. * : only HDD standard model 	* Execution of U024 will vanish user data and the software installed. Reinstallation is required.	[Main <=> Engine] Main PWB: YC63 Engine PWB: YC35 [Main <=> DP I/F PWB] [Main <=> Panel] Main PWB: YC12 Panel PWB: YC5
F000	CF000 will be displayed if * notes progress is carried out for a definite period of time with a Welcome screen. The communication fault between Panel-Main boards Communication fault between Panel Core-Main Core Notes 2	 Check the harness of * (between Main board <=>HDD), and the connection state of a connector between Panel<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check. Check contact of a DDR memory (extracting) and perform an operation check. If exchangeable, it will exchange and will perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check. It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters. * : only HDD standard model * Note 2 : Only Dual Core CPU model 		[Main <=> Panel] Main PWB: YC12 Panel PWB: YC5
F12X	Abnormality detecting in a Scan control section	 Check the harness between Engine/DP<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a DP I/F, Engine and SHD board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 		[Main <=> Engine] Main PWB: YC64 Engine PWB: YC37 [Main <=> DP I/F PWB [DP I/F <=> SHD] DP I/F PWB: YC2 SHD PWB: YC3

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks	Content
F13X	Abnormality detecting in a Panel control section	 Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. 		[Main <=> Panel] Main PWB: YC12 Panel PWB: YC5
F14X	Abnormality detecting in a FAX control part	 Check the harness between FAX<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Perform a deed operation check for DIMM Clear by U671. * Notes (Since it disappears when received data remain, cautions are required.) Exchange FAX_DIMM and perform an operation check. * Notes Exchange a FAX board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Only HDD standard model * Note Only model which has Flash for FAX data in a Main board 		[Main <=> KUIO I/F] Main PWB: YC8, YC9 KUIO PWB: YC3, YC4
F15X	Abnormality detecting in an authentication device control section	 Check the harness between authentication device <=>Main boards, and the connection situation of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Authentication device: IC card reader etc.	[Main <=> USB I/F] Main PWB: YC59, YC60 USB-HUB PWB: YC3, YC5
F17X	Abnormality detecting in a printer data control part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 		
F18X	Abnormality detecting in a Video control section	 Check the harness between Engine<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange an Engine board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. 		[Main <=> Engine] Main PWB: YC65 Engine: YC3
F1DX	Abnormality detecting of the image memory Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024)* Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 		

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks
F21X F22X F23X	Abnormality detecting in an image-processing part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. 	
		 Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F24X	Abnormality detecting in the system Manage- ment Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. 	* F248 is the abnormalities of a pricess. In recurring by specific printer data give me cooperation at acquisition ture data and USBLOG.
		 Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F25X	Abnormality detecting in a network manage- ment department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and packet capture and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	* It may occur according to a visito work environment.
F26X	Abnormality detecting in the system Manage- ment Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F2BX F2CX F2DX F2EX F2FX F30X F31X F2BX	Abnormality detecting in a network control part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. (Depending on an analysis result, it is packet capture acquisition) * Only HDD standard model 	
F33X	Abnormality detecting in the Scan Management Department	 Check the harness between Engine/DP<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a Engine/DP Driver board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	

	Content
printer pro- ata, please on of cap-	[Controller failure] The solution method is only the power Off / On. USBLOG is required for the investiga- tion.
itor's net-	
	[Main <=> Engine] Main PWB: YC63 Engine PWB: YC35 [Engine <=> DP Driver PWB] Engine PWB: YC33 DP Driver PWB: YC3

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks
F34X	Abnormality detecting in the Panel Manage- ment Department	 Check the harness between Panel<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check. Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed. Exchange a Panel board and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F35X	Abnormality detecting in the printing controlling Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F37X	Abnormality detecting in the FAX Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Perform a deed operation check for DIMM Clear by U671. (Since it disappears when received data remain, cautions are required.) * notes Exchange FAX_DIMM and perform an operation check. * Notes Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. To Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model * Note Only model which has Flash for FAX data in a Main board 	
F38X	Abnormality detecting in the authentication authorized Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F3AX F3BX F3CX F3DX F3EX F3FX F40X F41X F42X F43X F44X F45X	Abnormality detecting in the Entity Manage- ment Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	

Content
[Main <=> Danal]
Panel PWB: YC5
No Flash for FAX data
When OFF of the security kit that
replaced the HDD to the SSD

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks
F46X	Abnormality detecting of a printer rendering part	 Exchange boards and perform an operation check. the acquisition wish of USBLOG carry out (Depending on the (2) case, it is print capture data acquisition) * Only HDD standard model 	* F46F is the abnormalities of a pricess. In recurring by specific printer data give me cooperation at acquisition ture data and USBLOG.
F47X F48X F49X	Abnormality detecting of an image editing pro- cessing part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F4AX F4CX	Abnormality detecting of a printer rendering part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F4DX	Abnormality detecting in the Entity Manage- ment Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F4FX	Abnormality detecting in the JOB Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Since the USB log immediately aft rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.
F50X	Abnormality detecting in the FAX Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Since the USB log immediately aft rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.

	Content
printer pro-	
ata nlease	
ion of cap-	
atter occur- ease give	
after occur-	No Flash for FAX data
ease give	When OFF of the security kit that
	replaced the HDD to the SSD.

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks
F51X F52X F53X F55X F56X F57X	Abnormality detecting in a JOB execution part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. 	Since the USB log immediately after rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.
		* Only HDD standard model	
F58X F59X F5AX F5BX F5CX F5CX F5DX F5EX	Abnormality detecting in the various-services Management Department	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Cell USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Since the USB log at the time of oc rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.
F5FX	Abnormality detecting in a service execution part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Since the USB log immediately after rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.
F62X	Abnormality detecting in a service execution part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. Set USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	Since the USB log at the time of or rence is needed for analysis, pleas me cooperation of acquisition.
F63X	Abnormality detecting in a device control sec- tion	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	
F68X	Abnormality detecting in a storage device con- trol section	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 	* F684 is the overwrite error at the an HDD security kit.

	Content
after occur- ease give	
f occur- ease give	F5DX (especially if X is 9,A,B,C or D) occurs when processing FAX reception and URDS related matter. When occurred, check data sent from PC.
after occur- ease give	
f occur- ease give	USB log at the time of occurrence is required for the analysis.
the time of	Each of the SSD / HDD to check the operation after initializing. (U024 of SSD / FULL, U024 of HDD / FULL)

Number	Contents	Verification procedure & check point	Remarks	Content
F69X F6AX F6BX F6CX	Abnormality detecting in a HyPAS-E part	 Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) * Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check. Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check. Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. * Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters. * Only HDD standard model 		

(7) Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting	Itom	Imago		Ма	aintenance mode	Original	Pago
order	item	inage	Description	Item No.	Mode	Original	Faye
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-42
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	MAIN	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-42
3	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT /MPT LSUOUT LEFT / DUPLEX	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36
4	Adjusting the center line of the cas- settes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT / CASSETTE 1 LSUOUT LEFT / CASSETTE 2 LSUOUT LEFT / CASSETTE 3 LSUOUT LEFT / CASSETTE 4	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36
5	Adjusting the leading edge registra- tion of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP /MPT(L) LSUOUT TOP / DUPLEX(L)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36
6	Adjusting the leading edge registra- tion of the cassette (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP CASSETTE(L)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)	*	LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-123
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-123

	Remarks
	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT LEFT /DUPLEX.
	Cassette 1: select Center /CASSETTE 1 Cassette 2: select Center /CASSETTE 2 Cassette 3: select Center /CASSETTE 3 Cassette 4: select Center /CASSETTE 4
	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT TOP /DUPLEX(L). PAPER WIDTH 218mm or more
	PAPER WIDTH 218mm or more
1	

Adjusting	Itom	Imaga	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Paga	Pomarka	
order	item	inage	Description	Item No.	Mode	- Original	Faye	Remarks	
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A MARGIN C MARGIN	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-123		
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direc- tion (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065 U070	MAIN SCAN MAIN SCAN(CIS)	Test chart	P.1-3-45 P.1-3-50	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP.	
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN SUB SCAN (F) SUB SCAN (B) SUB SCAN (CIS)	Test chart	P.1-3-45 P.1-3-50	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for second side: select SUB SCAN(B) :Mechanism reversal model To make an adjustment for second side: select SUB SCAN(B) :Double-sided simultaneous reading model	
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)	+	Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	FRONT ROTATE FRONT BACK CIS	Test chart	P.1-3-48 P.1-3-53	 U067: For copying an original placed on the platen. To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ROTATE. U072: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK. :Mechanism reversal model To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select CIS. :Double-sided simultaneous reading model 	
13	Adjusting the leading edge registra- tion (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066 U071	FRONT ROTATE FRONT HEAD BACK HEAD CIS HEAD	Test chart	P.1-3-47 P.1-3-51	 U066: For copying an original placed on the platen. To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ROTATE. U071: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK HEAD. :Mechanism reversal model To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select CIS HEAD. :Double-sided simultaneous reading model 	
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B MARGIN B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-124 P.1-3-125	U403: For copying an original placed on the con- tact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.	
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D MARGIN D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-124 P.1-3-125	U403: For copying an original placed on the con- tact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.	

Adjusting	Itom	Imago	Description	Ма	aintenance mode	Original	
order		inage	Description	Item No.	Mode		i uge
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	A MARGIN C MARGIN A MARGIN C MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-124 P.1-3-125

Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: ±0.8%
	Using DP: ±1.5%
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: ±1.0%
	Using DP: ±1.5%
Lateral squareness	Machine: ±1.5 mm/375 mm
	Using DP: ±2.5 mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: +1.0/-1.5 mm
	MP tray: +1.0/-1.5 mm
	Duplex: +1.0/-1.5 mm
Skewed paper feed	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less
(left-right difference)	MP tray: 1.5 mm or less
	Duplex: 2.0 mm or less
Lateral image shifting	Cassette: ±2.0 mm
	MP tray: ±2.0 mm
	Duplex: ±3.0 mm

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 750500005), the following adjustments are automatically made: Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065) Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066) Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the DP) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243), the following adjustments are automatically made:

* : When running this test chart, you first must clean the feed rollers with alcohol and ensure the DP width guides are correctly positioned against the original.

Adjusting the DP magnification (U070) Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071) Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

Remarks

U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.

(8) Wiring diagram



2RG/2RH





2RG/2RH-2













DP-7100 / (Document processor) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

DP-7100





English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 5,Page 10 to Page 28. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 6 to Page 28.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 5,Page 10 à Page 28. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 6 à Page 28.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 5,páginas de la 10 a la 28. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 6 a la 28.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 5, Seiten 10 bis 28.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 6 bis 28.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 5,pagine da 10 a 28. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 6 a 28.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到 MFP(A) 上时,请参见 P1-P5, P10-P28。 安装到 MFP(B) 上时,请参见 P6-P28。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 . MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~5 페이지 ,10 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오 . MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 6 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 MFP(A) に設置する場合;1ページ~5ページ、10ページ~28ページ MFP(B) に設置する場合;6ページ~28ページ



3

- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- $(\ensuremath{\mathtt{DE}})$ Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- **CN** 如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- (JP) 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。











A

































В





















[Operation check]

В

- 1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
- 2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
- 3.Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

[Vérification du fonctionnement]

- 1.Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
- 2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
- 3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

[Verifique el funcionamiento]

- 1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
- 2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
- 3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

[Funktionsprüfung]

- 1.Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
- 2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
- 3.Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

[Verifica del funzionamento]

- 1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
- 2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
- 3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

[动作确认]

- 1. 若要检查机器动作,准备一张 A3 原稿(a),距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线(b)并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线(c)。
- 2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
- 3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印,确认机器动作和复印样本。

[동작확인]

- 1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서 , A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비 .
- 2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다 .
- 3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플를 확인합니다.

[動作確認]

- 1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b)4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
- 2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.

NOTICE: If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4.Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart. <u>Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.</u> <u>REMARQUE:</u>Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio. AVISO: Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

4.Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung. ANMERKUNG:Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento. <u>Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.</u>

AVVISO: Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a),如果偏移值在标准值以上时,对偏移原稿进行调整。
 <u>对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。</u>
 (注意)如果图像出现底灰,用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置,则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈)의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다.
 MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것.
 (주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우, U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다. U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다.

4. 原稿(a)とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。
 MFPの画像確認及び調整を行ってから DPの画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。
 (注意)画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 14.For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 17.For checking the magnification, see page 21.Checking the magnification and the magnifica

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 14. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 17. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 21 <Valeur de référence>±1,5% max.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente. Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 14. <Valor de referencia>Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 17. Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 21. <Valor de referencia>Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm <Valor de referencia>Dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm <Valor de referencia>Dentro de ±1,5 %

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 14. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 17. Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 21. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm <Bezugswert> Innerhalb ±1,5 %

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente. Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 14. <Valore di riferimento>Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 17. Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 21. <Valore di riferimento>Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm <Valore di riferimento>Entro ±1,5%

必须按照以下步骤进行调整,否则不能达到准确调整的要求。 ・确认前端倾斜度 第14页 〈标准值〉 单面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认后端倾斜度 第17页 〈标准值〉 单面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认等倍值 第21页 〈标准值〉 ±1.5% 以内

반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것 . 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다. •선단경사확인 14 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내, 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •후단경사확인 17 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내, 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •등배도 확인 21 페이지 <기준치 > ±1.5% 이내

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。 ・先端斜め確認 14ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内 ・後端斜め確認 17ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内 ・等倍度確認 21ページ <基準値>±1.5%以内
For checking the leading edge timing, see page 23. <reference value=""> Within ±2.5 mm For checking the center line, see page 25. <reference value=""> Simplex copying: within ±2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±3.0 mm</reference></reference>
When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a <u>time.</u> For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 23. <valeur de="" référence=""> ±2,5 mm max. Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 25. <valeur de="" référence=""> Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; Copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max. Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la syn- chronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois. Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.</valeur></valeur>
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 23. <valor de="" referencia=""> Dentro de ±2,5 mm Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 25. <valor de="" referencia=""> Copia simple: dentro de ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±3,0 mm Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo. Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.</valor></valor>
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 23. <bezugswert> Innerhalb ±2,5 mm Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 25. <bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittel- Inie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 27.</bezugswert></bezugswert>
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 23. <valore di="" riferimento=""> Entro ±2,5 mm Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 25. <valore di="" riferimento=""> Copia simplex: entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±3,0 mm Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente. Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.</valore></valore>
 ·确认前端定时调整 第 23 页 〈标准值〉 ±2.5mm 以内 ·确认中心线 第 25 页 〈标准值〉 单面:±2.0mm 以内, 双面:±3.0mm 以内 使用调整用的原稿时,可以同时自动进行等倍值,前端定时以及中心线的调整。 ·通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页
·선단 타이밍 확인 23 페이지 <기준치 > ±2.5mm 이내 ·센터 라인확인 25 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±2.0mm 이내 , 양면:±3.0mm 이내 조정용 원고를 사용하면 등배도 조정 , 선단타이밍 조정 , 센터 라인조정의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다. ·조정용원고에 의한 자동조정 27 페이지
 ・先端タイミング確認 23ページ <基準値> ±2.5mm 以内 ・センターライン確認 25ページ <基準値>片面:±2.0mm 以内、 両面:±3.0mm 以内 調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。 ・調整用原稿による自動調整 27ページ

Α



[Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±3.0 mm. For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±4.0 mm.

[Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±3,0 mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±4,0 mm.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±3,0 mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±4,0 mm.

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1.Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±3,0 mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±4,0 mm liegen.

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3,0 mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ±4,0 mm.

[确认前端倾斜度]

 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值,则按照下列步骤进行调整 <标准值>单面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±3.0mm以内。 双面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±4.0mm以内。

[선단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다 . <기준체 > 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±4.0mm 이내

[先端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±4.0mm以内



4.





ENG

Adjust the position of the DP unit (A). Loosen the adjusting screw (5). For copy example (d): Slide the DP unit (A) to the machine rear (\blacklozenge). For copy example (e): Slide the DP unit (A) to the machine front (\Leftrightarrow). Tighten the adjusting screw (5). Perform a test copy.

FR

Régler la position de l'unité CD (A). Desserrez la vis de réglage (5). Pour l'exemple de copie (d): Faire glisser l'unité CD (A) à l'arrière de la machine (➡). Pour l'exemple de copie (e): Faire glisser l'unité CD (A) à l'avant de la machine (⇔). Serrez la vis de réglage (5). Effectuer une copie de test.

ES

Ajuste la posición de la unidad DP (A). Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (5). Para la copia de muestra (d): Deslice la unidad DP (A) hacia la parte posterior de la máquina (➡). Para la copia de muestra (e): Deslice la unidad DP (A) hacia el frente de la máquina (⇔). Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (5). Haga una copia de prueba.

DE

Stellen Sie die Position der DP-Einheit (A) ein. Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (5). Für Kopienmuster (d): Schieben Sie die DP-Einheit (A) zur Geräterückseite (➡). Für Kopienmuster (e): Schieben Sie die DP-Einheit (A) zur Gerätevorderseite (⇔). Die Einstellschraube (5) festziehen.

Eine Testkopie erstellen.

П

Regolare la posizione dell'unità DP (A). Allentare la vite di regolazione (5). Per un esempio di copia (d): Far scivolare l'unità DP (A) verso il retro della macchina (➡). Per un esempio di copia (e): Far scivolare l'unità DP (A) verso la parte anteriore della macchina (➡). Stringere la vite di regolazione (5). Eseguire una copia di prova.

CN

调节DP单元(A)的位置。 拧松调整螺丝(5)。 复印样张(d)时:DP单元(A)向机器后侧(→)移动。 复印样张(e)时:DP单元(A)向机器前侧(⇔)移动。 紧固调整螺丝(5)。 进行测试复印。

KO

DP유니트 (A) 의 위치를 조정하세요. 조정나사(5)를 느슨하게 합니다. 샘플 카피(d)의 경우 : DP유니트 (A) 를 기기의 뒤쪽(→) 으로 밀어주세요. 샘플 카피(e)의 경우 : DP유니트 (A) 를 기기의 앞쪽 (↔) 으로 당겨주세요. 조정나사(5)를 조입니다. 테스트 카피를 합니다.

JP

) DPユニット(A) の位置調整を行う。 調整ビス(5)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(d)の場合:DPユニット(A) を機械後側(→) にずらす。 コピーサンプル(e)の場合:DPユニット(A) を機械前側(↔) にずらす。 調整ビス(5)を締める。 テストコピーを行う。





[Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment. <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

[Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max. Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

 Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters pr
üfen.
Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuf
ühren.

<Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

[确认后端倾斜度]

 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值。如果超过标准值时,必须进行调整。
 <标准值>单面时:±3.0mm以内 双面时:±4.0mm以内

[후단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 > 단면의 경우:±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우:±4.0mm 이내

[後端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>片面の場合:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合:±4.0mm 以内













ENG

Adjust the height of DP. Loosen the nut (3). For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (4). For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (4). Retighten the nut (3).

FR

Réglez la hauteur du DP. Desserrez l'écrou (3). Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (4). Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (4). Resserrez l'écrou (3).

ES

Ajuste la altura del DP. Afloje la tuerca (3). Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (4). Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (4). Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (3).

DE

Die Höhe des DP einstellen. Lösen Sie die Mutter (3). Für Kopienmuster (f) : Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (4). Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (4) festziehen. Ziehen Sie die Mutter (3) wieder fest.

П

Regolazione dell'altezza del DP Allentare il dado (3). Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (4). Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (4). Stringere di nuovo il dado (3).

CN

调整DP的高度。
 松驰螺母(3)。
 复印样张(f)时:松弛调整螺丝(4)。
 复印样张(g)时:紧固调整螺丝(4)。
 将螺母(3)按原样紧固好。

(KO)

DP의 높이를 조정합니다. 너트(3)를 느슨하게 합니다. 벨크로(f)의 경우 : 조정나사(4)를 느슨하게 합니다. 벨크로(g)의 경우 : 조정나사(4)를 조입니다. 너트(3)를 원래대로 조입니다.

JP

DPの高さを調整する。 ナット(3)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(f)の場合:調整ビス(4)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(g)の場合:調整ビス(4)を締める。 ナット(3)を元通り締める。





12. Make a proof copy again.

13. Repeat steps 1 to 12 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.

<Reference value> For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

12.Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

13.Répétez les étapes 1 à 12 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.

Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

12. Haga otra copia de prueba.

13. Repita los pasos 1 a 12 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

12. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

13.Die Schritte 1 bis 12 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

12. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

13. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 12 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

12. 再次进行测试复印。

13. 反复操作步骤 1[~]12, 直至复印样张的线 (2) 为标准值内。
 <标准值 > 单面时:±3.0mm 以内
 双面时:±4.0mm 以内

 12. 다시 벨크로를 합니다.
 13. 벨크로 선 (2) 이 기준치내로 될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 12 을 반복합니다.
 <기준치 > 단면의 경우:±3.0m 이내 양면의 경우:±4.0mm 이내

12. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

13. コピーサンプルの線(2)が基準値内になるまで、手順1~12を繰り返す。 <基準値>片面の場合:±3.0mm以内



副走査方向の場合、線(2)の上下ずれ:±1.5%以内 主走査方向の場合、線(3)の左右ずれ:±1.5%以内 Α











4. テストコピーを行う。

26



 [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment] If there is no DP auto adjustment origina 1. Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the adjustment original. 2. Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key. 	 3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out surface adjustment. 4. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 2 and 3 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.
 [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage] Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP 1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer l'original de réglage. 2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la touche Start. 	 Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la tou- che Start pour procéder au réglage de la surface. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé.Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifi- fer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
 [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste] Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP 1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste. 2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start. 	 3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de anverso. 4. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 3 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
 [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals] Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist 1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken. 2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätigen. 	 3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 4. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 3, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
 [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale] Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per stampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione. 2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start. 	 3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 4. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 3 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
[通过调整用原稿进行自动调整] 没有 DP 调整用原稿时 1.进入维修保养模式 U411,选择 [DP Auto Adj],输出测试原稿。 2.将输出的原稿放在稿台上,按 Start 键。	 3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上,按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。 4. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤 2 和 3,直到 "OK" (完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。
[조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정] DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다. 2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작 키를 누릅니다.	 3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 본체로 세트하고 시작 키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다. 4. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 3를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조
 [調整用原稿による自動調整] DP 調整用原稿が無い場合 1.メンテナンスモードU411をセットし、[DP Auto Adj]を押し原稿を出 力する。 2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、Start キーを押す。 	 原稿を FaceUp で DP ヘセットし、Start キーを押し、表面の調整を行う。 ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順2~3を繰り返す。 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

2	

	j⇔,5mm
R A(149×5mm)	74±1mm
 Using a DP auto adjustment original 1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked. 2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment. 	3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.
 Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP 1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R. 2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface. 	 3.Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé.Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
 Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP 1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R. 2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso. 	 3.Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
 Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP 1.F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle set- zen. 2.Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start- Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 	3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlos- sen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstel- lung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
 Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP 1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R. 2 Impostare la modalità manutenzione LI411. Premere nell'ordine IDP 	3.Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2
FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superfi- cie.	fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
 FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 使用 DP 自动调整用稿时 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上,并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。 设置维护模式 U411,按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。 	 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni. 3. 如果屏幕上出现 " OK" (完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤 1 和 2,直到 " OK" (完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。
 FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 使用 DP 自动调整用稿时 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上,并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。 设置维护模式 U411,按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。 DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우 DP 자동조정원 원고를 사용하는 경우 DP 자동조정원 원고를 사용하는 경우 DP 자동조정원 원고를 사용하는 경우 DP 관심로 세트합니다. 메인터넌스 모드 U411을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작키의 순서로 놀러 표면 조정을 합니다. 	fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni. 3. 如果屏幕上出现 " OK " (完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤 1 和 2,直到 " OK " (完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。 3. 디스플레이에 "OK"가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확 인하고 "OK"가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.

DP-7110 / (Document processor) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

DP-7110





English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 7, Page 14 to Page 32. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 8 to Page 32.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 7,Page 14 à Page 32. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 8 à Page 32.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 7,páginas de la 14 a la 32. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 8 a la 32.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 7, Seiten 14 bis 32.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 8 bis 32.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 7,pagine da 14 a 32. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 8 a 32.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到 MFP(A)上时,请参见 P1-P7, P14-P32。 安装到 MFP(B)上时,请参见 P8-P32。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 . MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~7 페이지 ,14 페이지 ~32 페이지를 참조하십시오 . MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 8 페이지 ~32 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 MFP(A) に設置する場合;1 ページ~ 7 ページ、14 ページ~ 32 ページ MFP(B) に設置する場合;8 ページ~ 32 ページ



- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- **CN** 如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- КО 동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。











































[Operation check]

В

- 1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
- 2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
- 3.Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

[Vérification du fonctionnement]

- 1.Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
- 2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
- 3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

[Verifique el funcionamiento]

- 1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
- 2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
- 3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

[Funktionsprüfung]

- 1.Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
- 2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
- 3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

[Verifica del funzionamento]

- 1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
- 2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
- 3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

[动作确认]

- 1. 若要检查机器动作,准备一张 A3 原稿(a),距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线(b)并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线(c)。
- 2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
- 3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印,确认机器动作和复印样本。

[동작확인]

- 1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서 , A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비 .
- 2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다 .
- 3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플를 확인합니다.

[動作確認]

- 1.A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b)4本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a)を用意する。
- 2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.

NOTICE: If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4.Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart. <u>Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.</u> <u>REMARQUE:</u>Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio. AVISO: Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung. ANMERKUNG:Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento. <u>Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.</u>

AVVISO: Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a),如果偏移值在标准值以上时,对偏移原稿进行调整。
 <u>对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。</u>
 (注意)如果图像出现底灰,用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置,则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈)의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다.
 MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것.
 (주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우, U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다. U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다.

4. 原稿(a)とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。
MFPの画像確認及び調整を行ってから DPの画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。
(注意)画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 18.<Reference value> Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mmFor checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 21.<Reference value> Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mmFor checking the magnification, see page 24.<Reference value> Within ±1.5%

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 18. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 21. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 24. <Valeur de référence>±1,5% max.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente. Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 18. <Valor de referencia>Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 21. Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 24. <Valor de referencia>Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm <Valor de referencia>Dentro de ±1,5 %

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 18. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 21. Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 24. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb ±1,5 %

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente. Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 18. <Valore di riferimento>Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 21. Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 24. <Valore di riferimento>Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm <Valore di riferimento>Entro ±1,5%

必须按照以下步骤进行调整,否则不能达到准确调整的要求。 ・确认前端倾斜度 第18页 〈标准值〉 单面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认后端倾斜度 第21页 〈标准值〉 単面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认等倍值 第24页 〈标准值〉 ±1.5% 以内

반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것 . 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다. •선단경사확인 18 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내, 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •후단경사확인 21 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내, 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •등배도 확인 24 페이지 <기준치 > ±1.5% 이내

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。 ・先端斜め確認 18ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内 ・後端斜め確認 21ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内

For checking the leading edge timing, see page 26. <reference value=""> Within ±2.5 mm For checking the center line, see page 28. <reference value=""> Simplex copying: within ±2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±3.0 mm When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a</reference></reference>
time. For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 30.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 26. <valeur de="" référence=""> ±2,5 mm max. Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 28. <valeur de="" référence=""> Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; Copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max. Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la syn- chronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois. Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 30.</valeur></valeur>
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 26. <valor de="" referencia=""> Dentro de ±2,5 mm Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 28. <valor de="" referencia=""> Copia simple: dentro de ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±3,0 mm Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo. Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 30.</valor></valor>
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 26. <bezugswert> Innerhalb ±2,5 mm Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 28. <bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittel- linie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 30.</bezugswert></bezugswert>
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 26. <valore di="" riferimento=""> Entro ±2,5 mm Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 28. <valore di="" riferimento=""> Copia simplex: entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±3,0 mm Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente. Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 30.</valore></valore>
 ・确认前端定时调整 第 26 页 〈标准值〉 ±2.5mm 以内 ・确认中心线 第 28 页 〈标准值〉 单面:±2.0mm 以内, 双面:±3.0mm 以内 使用调整用的原稿时,可以同时自动进行等倍值,前端定时以及中心线的调整。 ・通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 30 页
·선단 타이밍 확인 26 페이지 <기준치 > ±2.5mm 이내 ·센터 라인확인 28 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±2.0mm 이내 , 양면:±3.0mm 이내 <u>조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우 , 등배도 , 선단타이밍 , 센터 라인의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다 .</u> ·조정용원고를 사용한 자동조정은 30 페이지 참조
 ・先端タイミング確認 26 ページ <基準値> ±2.5mm 以内 ・センターライン確認 28 ページ <基準値>片面:±2.0mm 以内、 両面:±3.0mm 以内 調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。 ・調整用原稿による自動調整 30 ページ


[Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±3.0 mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±4.0 mm.

[Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±3,0 mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±4,0 mm.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±3,0 mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±4,0 mm.

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1.Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±3,0 mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±4,0 mm liegen.

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3,0 mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ±4,0 mm.

[确认前端倾斜度]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值,则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>单面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±3.0mm以内。

双面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±4.0mm以内。

[선단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 > 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±4.0mm 이내

[先端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±4.0mm以内



- 2. Remove the left hinge cover (F) and the angle control fitting (E). Loosen the 2 M4 × 14 screws (C) on the left and right fixing fittings (B(L))(B(R)). 3. Turn adjusting screw (3) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.
- For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.
- For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.
- Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1.0 mm

4. Perform a test copy.

2. Déposer le couvercle de la charnière gauche (F) et la fixation d'angle (assurant le contrôle de l'ouverture) (E). Desserrer les 2 vis M4 × 14 (C) sur les fixations gauche et droite (B(L))(B(R)).

3. Tourner la vis de réglage (3) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP. Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur. Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant. Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1,0 mm

4. Effectuer une copie de test.

2. Quite la cubierta de la bisagra izquierda (F) y el herraje de control de ángulo (E). Afloje los 2 tornillos M4 × 14 (C) de los herrajes de fijación izquierdo y derecho (B(L))(B(R)).

3. Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP. Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado interno. Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado frontal. Magnitud del cambio por escala: aprox. 1,0 mm

4. Haga una copia de prueba.

2. Die linke Scharnierabdeckung (F) und die Winkeleinstellbefestigung (E) entfernen. Die 2 M4 × 14 Schrauben (C) an den linken und rechten Befestigungshalterungen (B(L))(B(R)) lösen.

3. Die Einstellschraube (3) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einstellen, um die DP-Position einzustellen. Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach innen schieben. Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach vorne schieben.

- Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1,0 mm
- Eine Testkopie erstellen.

2. Rimuovere il coperchio cerniera sinistra (F) e l'accessorio di regolazione angolare (E). Allentare le 2 viti M4 × 14 (C) sui lati destro e sinistro degli accessori di fissaggio (B(L))(B(R)) destro e sinistro.

- 3. Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP. Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP verso l'interno. Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP in avanti. Entità modifica per scala: circa 1,0 mm
- 4. Eseguire una copia di prova.

2. 拆下左部铰链盖板 (F) 以及角度限制工具 (E)。拧松左右固定工具 (B(L)) (B(R)) 的 2 颗 M4x14(C) 螺丝。

3. 旋转右部铰链的后部的调整螺钉(3)以调整 DP 位置。

- 对于复印样本 (d): 逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到内侧。
- 对于复印样本 (e):顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到正面。
- 按比例尺的更改量:约1.0mm
- 4. 进行测试复印。

2. 좌 힌지커버 (F) 및 각도 고정쇠 (E) 를 제거합니다 . 좌우의 고정쇠 (B(L))(B(R)) 의 나사 M4x14(C) 2 개를 느슨하게 합니다 .

- 3. 우 힌지 뒷측 조정나사 (3) 를 돌려 DP 의 위치를 조정합니다.
- 샘플 카피 (d) 의 경우:조정나사를 좌로 돌려 DP 를 안으로 넣습니다
- 샘플 카피 (e) 의 경우 : 조정나사를 오른쪽으로 돌려 DP 를 앞으로 뺍니다.
- 1개 변화량:약 1.0mm

4. 테스트 카피를 합니다.

2. 左ヒンジカバー(F) および角度規制金具(E) を取り外す。左右の固定金具(B(L))(B(R))のビス M4x14(C)2本を緩める。

3. 右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス(3)を回し、DPの位置を調整する。 コピーサンプル(d)の場合:調整ビスを左に回し、DPを奥へ動かす。 コピーサンプル (e) の場合:調整ビスを右に回し、DP を手前へ動かす。 1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約1.0mm

Α

^{4.} テストコピーを行う。





[Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment. <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

[Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max. Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1.Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

[确认后端倾斜度]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值。如果超过标准值时,必须进行调整。 <标准值>单面时:±3.0mm以内

双面时:±4.0mm 以内

[후단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 >단면의 경우:±3.0m 이내 양면의 경우:±4.0mm 이내

[後端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>片面の場合:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合:±4.0mm 以内

 2. Open the upper cover (3) of the DP (A). 3. Remove the 3 TP screws (4) and the screw (5), and remove the strap (6) from the rear cover (7). Then remove the DP (A) rear cover (7). 	 4. Adjust the height of DP. Loosen the nut (8). For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (9). For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (9). 	Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (10) Retighten the nut (8). 5. Refit the rear cover (7) removed in step 3.
 2. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (3) du DP (A) 3. Déposer les 3 vis TP (4) et la vis (5) puis déposer la courroie (6) du couvercle arrière (7). Déposer ensuite le couvercle arrière (7) du DP (A). 	 4. Réglez la hauteur du DP. Desserrez l'écrou (8). Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (9). Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (9). 	Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm (10) Resserrez l'écrou (8). 5. Reposer le couvercle arrière (7) déposé à l'étape 3.
 2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) del DP (A). 3. Quite los 3 tornillos TP (4) y el tornillo (5) y quite la correa (6) de la cubierta trasera (7). Después, quite la cubierta trasera (7) del DP (A). 	 4. Ajuste la altura del DP. Afloje la tuerca (8). Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (9). Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (9). 	Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (10) Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (8). 5. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (7) desmontada en el paso 3.
 2. Die obere Abdeckung (3) des DP (A) öffnen. 3. Die 3 TP-Schrauben (4) und die Schraube (5) entfernen und den Riemen (6) von der hinteren Abdeckung (7) abnehmen. Dann die hintere Abdeckung (7) des DP (A) abnehmen. 	 4. Die Höhe des DP einstellen. Lösen Sie die Mutter (8). Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (9). Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (9) festziehen. 	Anderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm (10) Ziehen Sie die Mutter (8) wieder fest. 5. Die in Schritt 3 entfernte hintere Abdeckung (7) wieder anbringen.
 2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) del DP (A). 3. Rimuovere le 3 viti TP (4) e la vite (5), e quindi rimuovere la cinghietta (6) dal coper- chio posteriore (7). Quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (7) del DP (A). 	 4.Regolazione dell'altezza del DP Allentare il dado (8). Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (9). Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (9). 	Variazione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm (10) Stringere di nuovo il dado (8). 5. Reinserire il coperchio posteriore (7) rimosso nel passo 3.
 打开 DP (A) 的上盖板 (3)。 拆除 3 颗 TP 螺丝 (4) 和 1 颗螺丝 (5),将塑料片 (6) 从后盖板 (7) 上拆除,拆下 DP 主机 (A) 的后盖板 (7)。 	 调整 DP 的高度。 松驰螺母(8)。 复印样张(f)时:松弛调整螺丝(9)。 复印样张(g)时:紧固调整螺丝(9)。 	每1格的移动量:约0.5mm(10) 将螺母(8)按原样紧固好。 5.重新安装在步骤3中拆下的后盖板(7)。
 DP(A) 의 DP 윗 커버 (3) 를 엽니다. TP 나사 (4) 3 개와 나사 (5) 1 개를 제거하고 스트랩 (6) 을 뒷면 커버 (7) 에서 제거해 DP(A) 의후면 커버 (7) 를 제거합니다. 	 4. DP 의 높이를 조정합니다 . 너트 (8) 를 느슨하게 합니다 . 샘플 카피 (f) 의 경우:조정나사 (9) 를 느슨 하게 합니다 . 샘플 카피 (g) 의 경우:조정나사 (9) 를 조입 니다 . 	1 개 변화량:약 0.5mm(10) 너트 (8) 를 원래대로 조입니다 . 5. 순서 3 에서 제거한 뒷 커버 (7) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
 DP (A) の DP 上カバー(3) を開く。 TP ビス (4)3本とビス (5)1本を外し、ストラップ (6) を後カバー(7) から外して、 DP (A) の後カバー(7) を取り外す。 	 4. DP の高さを調整する。 ナット(8)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(f)の場合:調整ビス(9)を ゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(g)の場合:調整ビス(9)を 	1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約0.5mm(10) ナット(8)を元通り締める。 5. 手順3で取り外した後カバー(7)を元通り 取り付ける。

A B







	m
[Checking the leading edge timing] 1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure. <reference value=""> Vertical gap of line (2): within ±2.5 mm</reference>	2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing. Front Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (surface) Front Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (surface) CIS Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing for CIS scanning. CIS Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing for CIS scanning.
 [Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant] 1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante. <valeur de="" référence=""></valeur> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ±2,5 mm 	2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071. Front Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (surface) Front Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (surface) CIS Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête pour le balayage par le CIS. CIS Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière pour le balayage par le CIS.
 [Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior] 1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento. <valor de="" referencia=""></valor> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±2,5 mm 	 2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071. Front Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (anverso). Front Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (anverso). CIS Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior para exploración CIS. CIS Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior para exploración CIS.
 [Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings] 1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen. <bezugswert></bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±2,5 mm 	2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden. Front Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Oberfläche) Front Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Oberfläche) CIS Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing für CIS-Scannen. CIS Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing für CIS-Scannen.
 [Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale] 1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura. <valore di="" riferimento=""></valore> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra ±2,5 mm 	 2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione. Front Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (superficie) Front Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (superficie) CIS Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale per scansione CIS. CIS Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita per scansione CIS.
[确认前端定时调整] 1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)之间的偏移值。如果偏 移值超过标准值,则按照下列步骤进行调整。 <标准值> 线(2)的上下偏移值:±2.5mm以内	 使用维修模式 U071 调整定时。 Front Head:调整前端定时(正面) Front Tail:调整后端定时(正面) CIS Head:调整 CIS 读取时的前段对位 CIS Tail:调整 CIS 读取时的后端定时
[선단 타이밍확인] 1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준 치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 > 선 (2) 의 상하차이 : ±2.5mm 이내	2. 메인터넌스 모드 U071 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다 . Front Head :선단 타이밍 (표면)을 조정합니다 . Front Tail :후단 타이밍 (표면)을 조정합니다 . CIS Head: CIS 스캔 시의 선단 타이밍을 조정합니다 . CIS Tail: CIS 스캔 시의 후단 타이밍을 조정합니다 .
 [先端タイミング確認] 1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。 <基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ:±2.5mm 以内 	 メンテナンスモードU071をセットし、調整を行う。 Front Head:先端タイミング(表面)を調整する Front Tail:後端タイミング(表面)を調整する CIS Head: CIS 読み込み時の先端タイミングを調整する CIS Tail: CIS 読み込み時の後端タイミングを調整する

A







4. テストコピーを行う。



[Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment] 4. Set the original on the DP face down and press the Start key to carry If there is no DP auto adjustment original. out rear-side adjustment. 1.Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the 5. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. adjustment original If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set 2.Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key. position and repeat steps 2 and 4 until "OK" appears. 3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out For details, see the service manual. surface adjustment. [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage] 4. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en bas et appuyer sur la touche Start pour Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP procéder au réglage du côté arrière. 1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer 5. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message l'original de réglage. ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de 2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 4 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" touche Start. apparaisse. 3. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la touche Start Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien. pour procéder au réglage de la surface. [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste] 4. Coloque el original en el DP cara abajo y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP aiuste de reverso 5. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. 1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición 2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start. ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 4 hasta que aparezca "OK" 3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un en la pantalla. ajuste de anverso. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio. [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals] 4. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach unten einlegen und die Start-Taste betäti-Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist gen, um die Rückseiteneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das 5. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 4, 2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätibis "OK" angezeigt wird. gen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung 3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale] 4. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso il basso e premere il tasto di Start per Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP eseguire la regolazione del lato posteriore. 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per 5. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazistampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione. 2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start. one dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 4 fino a quando appare "OK" 3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni. eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 4. 将原稿面朝下放在 DP 主机上,按 Start 键以进行反面的调整。 [通过调整用原稿进行自动调整] 没有 DP 调整用原稿时 5. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成),则表示调整完成。 1. 进入维修保养模式 U411, 选择 [DP Auto Adj], 输出测试原稿。 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤2和4,直到"OK"(完成)出现。

- 2. 将输出的原稿放在稿台上,按 Start 键。
- 3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上,按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。

[조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정]

DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다.

- 2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작키를 누릅니다.
- 3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 로 세트하고 시작키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다.

[調整用原稿による自動調整]

DP 調整用原稿が無い場合

- 1. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP Auto Adj] を押し原稿を出力 する。
- 2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、スタートキーを押す。 3. 原稿を FaceUp で DP ヘセットし、スタートキーを押し、表面の調整を行

4. 원고를 FaceDown 으로 DP 에 장착하고 시작키를 눌러 뒷면조정을 합 니다

详细内容请参照维修手册。

- 5. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다 ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다 . 원고 장착위치를 확 인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조 .
- 4. 原稿を FaceDown で DP ヘセットし、スタートキーを押し、裏面の調整を 行う。
- 5. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確 認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順2~4を繰り返す。 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

う.

F A(149×5mm) R	74±1mm	
 Using a DP auto adjustment original 1.Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked. 2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment. 	3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.	
 Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP 1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R. 2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface. 	 3. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien. 3. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio. 	
 Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP 1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R. 2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso. 		
 Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP 1.F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle set- zen. 2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start- Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 	3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlos- sen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstel- lung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.	
 Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP 1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R. 2. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 	 Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni. 	
 使用 DP 自动调整用稿时 1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上,并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。 2. 设置维护模式 U411,按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。 	3. 如果屏幕上出现"OK"(完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现 ERROR XX(错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤1和2,直到"OK"(完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。	
 DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우 1. DP 자동 조정 원고를 F, R 을 위로 향하게 하고 F, R 이라고 표시된 곳에서 부터 원고를 셋팅합니다. 2. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작키의 순서 로 눌러 표면 조정을 합니다. 	3. 디스플레이에 "OK"가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확 인하고 "OK"가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.	
 DP 自動調整原稿を使用する場合 1. DP 自動調整原稿のF、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP へ セットする。 2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、「DP FU(ChartB)] スタートキー 	3. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確 認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順1~2を繰り返す 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。	

2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP FU(ChartB)]、スタートキー の順に押し、表面の調整を行う。

1

R R	- 74±1mm
 4. After completing the surface adjustment, direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original downward and set the original by inserting the side where the F and R are marked into the DP first. 5. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FD(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out rear-side adjustment. 	6.If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 4 and 5 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.
 4. Une fois le réglage de la surface effectué, diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le bas et placer l'original en introduisant en premier dans le DP le côté sur lequel F et R sont indiqués. 5. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FD(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage du côté arrière. 	 6. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 4 et 5 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
 4. Una vez hecho el ajuste del anverso, dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia abajo y coloque el original insertando en el DP, en primer lugar, el lado en el que están marcados F y R. 5. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FD(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de reverso. 	 6. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 4 y 5 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
 4. Nach dem Abschluss der Oberflächeneinstellung F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach unten zeigen und das Original einstellen, indem die mit F und R markierte Seite zuerst in den DP eingeführt wird. 5. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FD(ChartB)] und die StartTaste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Rückseiteneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 	 6. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 4 und 5, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
 4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione della superficie, orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso il basso e disporre l'originale inserendo nel DP prima il lato su cui sono contrassegnati F e R. 5. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FD(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione del lato posteriore. 	6.Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 4 e 5 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
 4. 完成正面调整后,将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向下,并首先将标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。 5. 设置维护模式 U411,按顺序按 [DP FD(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行反面的 调整。 	6. 如果屏幕上出现"OK"(完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现ERROR XX(错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤4和5,直到"OK"(完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。
 4. 표면의 조정완료 후 DP 자동조정원고의 F, R 을 아래로 향하게 해 F, R 이 쓰여져 있는 쪽에서 DP 로 세트합니다. 5. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FD(ChartB)], 시작키 순서로 뒷면조정을 합니다. 	6. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확 인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 4 ~ 5 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조
 4. 表面の調整完了後、DP 自動調整原稿のF、R を下に向け、F、R が書かれている方からDP ヘセットする。 5. メンテナンスモードU411をセットし、[DP FD(ChartB)]、スタートキーの順に押し、裏面の調整を行う。 	 ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順4~5を繰り返す。 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

DP-7120 / (Document processor)

Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

DP-7120





English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 4,Page 9 to Page 28. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 5 to Page 28.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 4,Page 9 à Page 28. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 5 à Page 28.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 4,páginas de la 9 a la 28. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 5 a la 28.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 4,Seiten 9 bis 28.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 5 bis 28.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 4,pagine da 9 a 28. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 5 a 28.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到 MFP(A) 上时,请参见 P1-P4, P9-P28。 安装到 MFP(B) 上时,请参见 P5-P28。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 . MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~4 페이지 ,9 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오 . MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 5 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 MFP(A) に設置する場合;1ページ~4ページ、9ページ~28ページ MFP(B) に設置する場合;5ページ~28ページ



- ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- (IT) Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- **CN** 如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- **JP** 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。









































[Operation check]

- 1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
- 2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
- 3.Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

[Vérification du fonctionnement]

- 1.Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
- 2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
- 3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

[Verifique el funcionamiento]

- 1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
- 2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
- 3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

[Funktionsprüfung]

- 1.Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
- 2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
- 3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

[Verifica del funzionamento]

- 1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
- 2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
- 3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

[动作确认]

- 1. 若要检查机器动作,准备一张 A3 原稿(a),距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线(b)并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线(c)。
- 2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
- 3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印,确认机器动作和复印样本。

[동작확인]

- 1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서 , A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비 .
- 2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다 .
- 3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플를 확인합니다.

[動作確認]

- 1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
- 2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.

NOTICE: If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart. <u>Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.</u> <u>REMARQUE:</u>Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio. AVISO: Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung. ANMERKUNG: Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento. <u>Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.</u>

AVVISO: Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a),如果偏移值在标准值以上时,对偏移原稿进行调整。
 <u>对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。</u>
 (注意)如果图像出现底灰,用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置,则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈) 의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다.
 MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것.
 (주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우, U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다. U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다.

4. 原稿(a)とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。 MFPの画像確認及び調整を行ってから DPの画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。 (注意)画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 13.For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 16.For checking the magnification, see page 21.Checking the magnification, see
Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 13. <valeur de="" référence="">Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 16. <valeur de="" référence="">Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max. Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 21. <valeur de="" référence="">±1,5% max.</valeur></valeur></valeur>
Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente. Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 13. <valor de="" referencia="">Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 16. Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 21. <valor de="" referencia="">Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm <valor de="" referencia="">Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm <valor de="" referencia="">Dentro de ±1,5 %</valor></valor></valor></valor>
Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden. Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 13. <bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 16. <bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 21. <bezugswert> Innerhalb ±1,5 %</bezugswert></bezugswert></bezugswert>
Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente. Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 13. <valore di="" riferimento="">Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 16. <valore di="" riferimento="">Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 21. <valore di="" riferimento="">Entro ±1,5%</valore></valore></valore>
必须按照以下步骤进行调整,否则不能达到准确调整的要求。 ・确认前端倾斜度 第 13 页 〈标准值〉 单面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认后端倾斜度 第 16 页 〈标准值〉 单面:±3.0mm 以内,双面:±4.0mm 以内 ・确认等倍值 第 21 页 〈标准值〉 ±1.5% 以内
반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것 . 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다 . •선단경사확인 13 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내 , 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •후단경사확인 16 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±3.0mm 이내 , 양면:±4.0mm 이내 •등배도 확인 21 페이지 <기준치 > ±1.5% 이내
必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。 ・先端斜め確認 13ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内 ・後端斜め確認 16ページ <基準値>片面:±3.0mm以内、両面:±4.0mm以内 ・等倍度確認 21ページ <基準値>±1.5%以内

For checking the leading edge timing, see page 23. <reference value=""> Within ±2.5 mm</reference>
For checking the center line, see page 25. <pre></pre>
When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a
For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 23. <valeur de="" référence=""> ±2,5 mm max.</valeur>
Pour verifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 25. Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; Copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max.
Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le reglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le reglage de l'agrandissement, de la syn- chronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.
Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 23. <valor de="" referencia=""> Dentro de ±2,5 mm</valor>
Copia duplex: dentro de ±2,0 mm
Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo
Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 23. <bezugswert> Innerhalb ±2,5 mm</bezugswert>
Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 25. Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittel-
Inie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden. Angeben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originale auf Seite 27
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 23. <valore di="" riferimento=""> Entro ±2,5 mm</valore>
Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 25. Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±3,0 mm
Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e
Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.
·····································
 ・确认中心线 第 25 页 〈标准值〉 单面:±2.0mm 以内, 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3. 3
双面: 工 3. 0000 以内 使用调整用的原稿时, 可以同时自动进行等倍值, 前端定时以及中心线的调整。
·通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页
•선단 타이밍 확인 23 페이지 <기준치> ±2.5mm 이내
·센터 라인확인 25 페이지 <기준치 > 단면:±2.0mm 이내 , 양면:±3.0mm 이내
조정용 원고를 사용하면 등배도 조정 , 선단타이밍 조정 , 센터 라인조정의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다 .
•소성용원고에 의한 사동소성 27 페이지
 ・先端タイミング確認 23 ページ <基準値> ±2.5mm 以内
・センターライン確認 25 ページ <基準値>片面:±2.0mm 以内、 両面:±3.0mm 以内
調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。 ・調整用原稿によろ自動調整 97 ページ

В

A



[Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±3.0 mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±4.0 mm.

[Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±3,0 mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±4,0 mm.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±3,0 mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±4,0 mm.

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1.Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±3,0 mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±4,0 mm liegen.

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3,0 mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ±4,0 mm.

[确认前端倾斜度]

 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值,则按照下列步骤进行调整 <标准值>单面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±3.0mm以内。 双面复印时,线(2)的左右偏移值:±4.0mm以内。

[선단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다 . <기준체 > 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이 : ±4.0mm 이내

[先端斜め確認]

1. 原稿(a)の線(1)とコピーサンプルの線(2)の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:±4.0mm 以内





2.Open the DP cover (4).

3. Remove the inner cover (5).

4.Lift up the lever (6).

In case of copy sample (d):Turn the dial (7) towards the direction of the arrow d. In case of copy sample (e):Turn the dial (7) towards the direction of the arrow e. Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1.0 mm (8) **5.**Perform a test copy.

2. Ouvrez le capot du DP (4). 3. Retirez le capot interne (5) 4. Soulevez le levier (6) Dans le cas de l'exemple de copie (d):Tournez le cadran (7) dans la direction de la flèche d. Dans le cas de l'exemple de copie (e):Tournez le cadran (7) dans la direction de la flèche e. Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 1,0 mm (8) 5. Effectuer une copie de test. 2. Abra la cubierta del DP (4). 3. Quite la cubierta interna (5). 4.Levante la palanca (6). En caso de muestra de copia (d): Gire el selector (7) en la dirección de la flecha d. En caso de muestra de copia (e): Gire el selector (7) en la dirección de la flecha e. Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 1,0 mm (8) Haga una copia de prueba. 2. Öffnen Sie die Abdeckung des DP (4). 3. Entfernen Sie die innere Abdeckung (5). 4. Heben Sie den Hebel (6) an. Bei Verwendung der Kopiervorlage (d):Drehen Sie das Rad (7) in Pfeilrichtung d. Bei Verwendung der Kopiervorlage (e):Drehen Sie das Rad (7) in Pfeilrichtung e. Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 1,0 mm (8)

5. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

2. Aprire il coperchio del DP (4).

3. Rimuovere il coperchio interno (5).

4. Sollevare la leva (6).

Nel caso dell'esempio copia (d):Ruotare il selettore (7) in direzione della freccia d. Nel caso dell'esempio copia (e):Ruotare il selettore (7) in direzione della freccia e.

Variazione graduale: Circa 1,0 mm (8)

5. Eseguire una copia di prova.

2. 打开 DP 盖板(4)。 3. 取下内部盖板(5)。 4. 提起杆(6)。 当处于样张(d)时:把拨盘(7)向d方向旋转。 当处于样张(e)时:把拨盘(7)向e方向旋转。 每1格的移动量:约1.0mm(8) 5. 进行测试复印 2. DP 커버 (4) 를 엽니다. 3. 내부 커버 (5) 를 제거합니다. 4. 레버 (6) 를 위로 올립니다 복사 샘플 (d) 의 경우 : 다이얼 (7) 을 화살표 d 방향으로 돌립니다. 복사 샘플 (e) 의 경우 : 다이얼 (7) 을 화살표 e 방향으로 돌립니다. 1개 변화량:약1.0mm (8) 벨크로를 합니다 5 2. DP カバー(4) を開ける。 3. インナーカバー(5)を外す。 **4**. レバー(6) を上げる。 コピーサンプル(d)の場合:ダイヤル(7)をd方向に回す。 コピーサンプル (e) の場合:ダイヤル (7) を e 方向に回す。





[Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment. <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

[Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max. Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

 Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters pr
üfen.
Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuf
ühren.

<Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1.Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

[确认后端倾斜度]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值。如果超过标准值时,必须进行调整。 <标准值>单面时:±3.0mm以内

双面时:±4.0mm 以内

[후단 경사확인]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 > 단면의 경우:±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우:±4.0mm 이내

[後端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>片面の場合:±3.0mm 以内

両面の場合:±4.0mm 以内





В



ENG

Adjust the height of DP. Loosen the nut (3). For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (4). For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (4). Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (5) Retighten the nut (3).

FR

Réglez la hauteur du DP. Desserrez l'écrou (3). Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (4). Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (4). Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm (5) Resserrez l'écrou (3).

ES

Ajuste la altura del DP. Afloje la tuerca (3). Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (4). Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (4). Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (5) Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (3).

DE

Die Höhe des DP einstellen. Lösen Sie die Mutter (3). Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (4). Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (4) festziehen. Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm (5) Ziehen Sie die Mutter (3) wieder fest.



Regolazione dell'altezza del DP Allentare il dado (3). Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (4). Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (4). Variazione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm (5) Stringere di nuovo il dado (3).

CN

调整DP的高度。 松驰螺母(3)。 复印样张(f)时:松弛调整螺丝(4)。 复印样张(g)时:紧固调整螺丝(4)。 每1格的移动量:约0.5mm(5) 将螺母(3)按原样紧固好。

(KO)

DP의 높이를 조정합니다. 너트(3)를 느슨하게 합니다. 벨크로(f)의 경우 : 조정나사(4)를 느슨하게 합니다. 벨크로(g)의 경우 : 조정나사(4)를 조입니다. 1개 변화량 : 약0.5mm(5) 너트(3)를 원래대로 조입니다.

JP

DPの高さを調整する。 ナット(3)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(f)の場合:調整ビス(4)をゆるめる。 コピーサンプル(g)の場合:調整ビス(4)を締める。 1目盛り当たりの変化量:約0.5mm(5) ナット(3)を元通り締める。




15. Make a proof copy again.

16. Repeat steps 1 to 15 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.

<Reference value> For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

15.Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

16.Répétez les étapes 1 à 15 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.

Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

15. Haga otra copia de prueba.

16. Repita los pasos 1 a 15 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mmPara copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

15. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

16.Die Schritte 1 bis 15 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

15. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

16.Ripetere i passi da 1 a 15 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento. <Valore di riferimento>Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm

Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

15. 再次进行测试复印。

16. 反复操作步骤 1[~]15, 直至复印样张的线(2)为标准值内。 <标准值>单面时:±3.0mm以内 双面时:±4.0mm以内

 15. 다시 벨크로를 합니다.
 16. 벨크로 선 (2) 이 기준치내로 될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 15 을 반복합니다.
 <기준치 > 단면의 경우:±3.0mm 이내 양면의 경우:±4.0mm 이내

15. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

16. コピーサンプルの線(2)が基準値内になるまで、手順1~15を繰り返す。
 <基準値>片面の場合:±3.0mm以内
 両面の場合:±4.0mm以内



副走査方向の場合、線(2)の上下ずれ:±1.5%以内 主走査方向の場合、線(3)の左右ずれ:±1.5%以内 Α

В



	m
[Checking the leading edge timing] Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure. <reference value=""></reference> Vertical gap of line (2): within ±2.5 mm 	2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing. Front Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (surface) Front Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (surface) Back Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (rear side) Back Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing(rear side)
[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant] 1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exem- ple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante. <valeur de="" référence=""> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ±2,5 mm</valeur>	2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071. Front Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (surface) Front Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (surface) Back Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (arrière) Back Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (arrière)
 [Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior] 1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento. <valor de="" referencia=""></valor> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±2,5 mm 	 2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071. Front Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (anverso). Front Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (anverso). Back Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (reverso). Back Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (reverso).
 [Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings] 1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen. <bezugswert></bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±2,5 mm 	2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden. Front Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Oberfläche) Front Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Oberfläche) Back Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Rückseite) Back Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Rückseite)
 [Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale] 1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura. <valore di="" riferimento=""></valore> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra ±2,5 mm 	 2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione. Front Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (superficie) Front Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (superficie) Back Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (lato posteriore) Back Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (lato posteriore)
[确认前端定时调整] 1.确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值,则按照下列步骤进行调整。 〈标准值〉 线(2)的上下偏移值:±2.5mm以内	OE). 2. 使用维修模式 U071 调整定时。 Front Head:调整前端对位(正面) Front Tail:调整后端对位(正面) Back Head:调整前端对位(反面) Back Tail:调整后端对位(反面)
[선단 타이밍확인] 1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 . <기준치 > 선 (2) 의 상하차이 : ±2.5mm 이내	2. 메인터넌스 모드 U071 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다 . Front Head :선단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다 . Front Tail :후단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다 . Back Head :선단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다 . Back Tail :후단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다 .
 [先端タイミング確認] 1. 原稿(a)の線(1)とコピーサンプルの線(2)のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。 <基準値> 線(2)の上下ずれ:±2.5mm以内 	 メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。 Front Head:先端タイミング(表面)を調整する Front Tail:後端タイミング(表面)を調整する Back Head:先端タイミング(裏面)を調整する Back Tail:後端タイミング(裏面)を調整する

A B



	a	2mm/ 3mm2	n	2mm/ 3mm *	2 0		
[Checking the cente 1.Check the gap bet (2) of copy examp gap according to t <reference value:<br="">Horizontal differen Horizontal differen</reference>	r line] tween center line (1) on o le. If the gap exceeds the he following procedure. ce of center line (2) for th ce of center line (2) for th	riginal (a) and center line reference value, adjust th e single copying: ±2.0 mi e duplex copying: ±3.0 m	2.Use the Front: A ne Back: A m	maintenance djusts the cen djusts the cent	mode U072 to adju ter line (surface) ter line (rear side)	ist the timing	
[Vérification de la lig 1. Vérifier l'écart entr copie. Si l'écart ext dure suivante. <valeur de="" référer<br="">Différence horizon Différence horizon</valeur>	ne médiane] e l'axe (1) de l'original (a) ceède la valeur de référen nce> tale de l'axe (2) pour la c tale de l'axe (2) pour la c	et l'axe (2) de l'exemple o ce, le régler selon la proc opie recto : ±2,0 mm opie recto-verso : ±3,0 m	2.Pour rég de Front: P sé- Back: P m	gler la ligne me ermet de régle ermet de régle	édiane, utiliser le m er l'axe (surface) er l'axe (arrière)	ode entretier	n U072.
[Verificación de la lín 1.Compruebe la sep la línea de centro valor de referencia <valor de="" referencion<br="">Diferencia horizon cara: ±2,0 mm</valor>	nea central] paración entre la línea de (2) del ejemplo de copia. a, ajústela siguiendo este cia> tal de la línea de centro (centro (1) del original (a) Si la separación supera e procedimiento. 2) para el copiado por un	Diference y ±3,0 mm el 2. Para aju Front: a Back: aj a	cia horizontal c n istar la línea c justa la línea c usta la línea c	de la línea de centr entral utilice el moc central (anverso). entral (reverso).	o (2) para el	copiado dúplex nimiento U072.
[Überprüfen der Mitt 1. Den Abstand zwis tellinie (2) des Kop Bezugswert ist, de <bezugswert> Horizontaler Unters Horizontaler Unters</bezugswert>	ellinie] chen der Mittellinie (1) der ierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn n Abstand mit dem folger schied der Mittellinie (2) für schied der Mittellinie (2) für	s Originals (a) und der Mi der Abstand größer als d den Verfahren einstellen. die Einzelkopie: ±2,0 mm die Duplexkopie: ±3,0 mr	2.Zum Eir t- Front: Z er Back: Z n n	nstellen der Mi ur Einstellung ur Einstellung	ttellinie den Wartur der Mittellinie (Obe der Mittellinie (Rüc	ngsmodus U(erfläche) kseite))72 verwenden.
[Controllo della linea 1. Verificare lo scostar centrale (2) dell'ese riferimento, regolar <valore di="" riferime<br="">Differenza orizzonta Differenza orizzonta</valore>	a centrale] mento fra la linea centrale (empio di copia. Se lo scost e lo scostamento stesso se into> ale della linea centrale (2) p ale della linea centrale (2)	(1) sull'originale (a) e la line amento supera il valore di eguendo questa procedura per la copia singola: ±2,0 n per la copia duplex: ±3,0 m	2.Usare la ea Front: R Back: R nm	a modalità di m Legola la linea egola la linea	nanutenzione U072 centrale (superficie centrale (lato poste	per regolare e) eriore)	a linea centra
[确认中心线] 1.确认原稿(a)中心 移值超过标准值, <标准值>单面复[双面复	线(1)和复印样本中心线 则按照下列步骤进行调整。 印时,中心线(2)的左右值 印时,中心线(2)的左右值	(2)之间的偏移值。如果(高移值:±2.0mm 以内 扇移值:±3.0mm 以内	2. 使用维信 扁 Front: Back: F	§模式 U072 调 中心位置(正正 中心位置(反面	整中心线。 缸)的调整)的调整		
[센터 라인 확인] 1. 원고 (a) 센터라인 차이가 기준치 외 < 기준치 > 단면의 양면의	(1) 과 벨크로 센터라인 (의 경우 다음 순서로 조정 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌9	2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 합니다 . 우차이 : ±2.0mm 이내 우차이 : ±3.0mm 이내	2. 메인터노 . Front:선 Back:선	년스 모드 U07/ 11터 위치 (표면 11터 위치 (뒷면	2 을 세트하고 조정 1) 의 조정 1) 의 조정	을 합니다 .	
[センターライン確認 1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 る。ずれが基準値タ <基準値>片面の 両面の	2] (1) とコピーサンプルの トの場合、次の手順で調整 場合、中心線 (2) の左右す 場合、中心線 (2) の左右す	中心線 (2) のずれを確認 を行う。 [*] れ : ±2. 0mm 以内 [*] れ : ±3. 0mm 以内	2. メンテラ す Front:† Back:セ	トンスモード U zンター位置(ンター位置(裏	072 をセットし、調 表面)の調整 【面)の調整	整を行う。	

25



^{4.} テストコピーを行う。



 [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment] If there is no DP auto adjustment origina 1. Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the adjustment original. 2. Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key. 	 3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out surface adjustment. 4. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 2 and 3 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.
 [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage] Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP 1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer l'original de réglage. 2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la touche Start. 	 Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la touche Start pour procéder au réglage de la surface. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé.Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
 [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste] Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP 1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste. 2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start. 	 3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de anverso. 4. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 3 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
 [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals] Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist 1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken. 2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätigen. 	 3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 4. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 3, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
 [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale] Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per stampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione. 2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start. 	 3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 4. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 3 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
[通过调整用原稿进行自动调整] 没有 DP 调整用原稿时 1. 进入维修保养模式 U411,选择 [DP Auto Adj],输出测试原稿。 2. 将输出的原稿放在稿台上,按 Start 键。	 3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上,按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。 4. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤 2 和 3,直到 "OK" (完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。
[조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정] DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다. 2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작 키를 누릅니다.	 3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 본체로 세트하고 시작 키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다. 4. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 3를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조
 [調整用原稿による自動調整] DP 調整用原稿が無い場合 1.メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP Auto Adj] を押し原稿を出 力する。 2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、Start キーを押す。 	 原稿を FaceUp で DP ヘセットし、Start キーを押し、表面の調整を行う。 ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順2~3を繰り返す。 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

A

В

Z	ł	
ł		

F A(149×5mm)	149±1mm 74±1mm
	<u> </u>
 Using a DP auto adjustment original 1.Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked. 2.Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment. 	3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.
 Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP 1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R. 2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface. 	 3. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
 Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP 1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R. 2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso. 	 3. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
 Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP 1.F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle set- zen. 2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start- Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen. 	3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlos- sen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstel- lung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
 Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP 1.Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R. 2. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie. 	 3. Se "OK"appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
 使用 DP 自动调整用稿时 1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上,并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。 2. 设置维护模式 U411,按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。 	3. 如果屏幕上出现"OK"(完成),则表示调整完成。 如果出现ERROR XX(错误 XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并 重复步骤1和2,直到"OK"(完成)出现。 详细内容请参照维修手册。
 DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우 1. DP 자동조정원고 F, R 을 위로 향하게 하고 F, R 이 쓰여져 있는 쪽에 서 DP 본체로 세트합니다. 2. 메인터넌스 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작 키의 순서 로 눌러 표면 조정을 합니다. 	3. 디스플레이에 "OK"가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확 인하고 "OK"가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.
 DP 自動調整原稿を使用する場合 1. DP 自動調整原稿のF、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP へ セットする。 2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP FU(ChartB)]、Start キーの 順に押し、表面の調整を行う。 	 ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確 認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順1~2を繰り返す 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

PF-791 / (500 x 2 Paper feeder) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書





English Supplied parts A. Paper feeder 1 B. Pin 2 C. Retainer 1 D. S Tite screw M3 × 12 2	E. Stopper R	Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
Français Pièces fournies A. Chargeur de papier	E. Butée R	Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhé- sive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
Español Partes suministradas A. Depósito de papel B. Clavija 2 C. Retén 1 D. Tornillos S Tite M3 × 12	E. Tope R 1 F. Tope L 1 G. Tornillo S Tite M4 × 20 4 H. Placa de tamaño de papel 2	Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o mate- rial amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
Deutsch Enthaltene Teile A. Papiereinzug	E. Anschlag R 1 F. Anschlag L 1 G. S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 20	Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
Italiano Parti fornite A. Unità di alimentazione della carta B. Perno 2 C. Fermo 1 D. Vite S Tite M3 × 12	E. Fermo R	Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
简体中文 附属品 A. 供纸盒	E. 防止倾斜工具 R	如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭 下。
한국어 동봉품 A. 급지대	E. 스토퍼 R 1 F. 스토퍼 L 1 G. 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 4 H. 용지 사이즈 플레이트2	동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경 우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .
日本語 同梱品 A. ペーパーフィーダー1 B. ピン2 C. 取付板1 D. ビス M3×12 Sタイト2	E. 転倒防止金具 R1 F. 転倒防止金具 L1 G. ビス M4×20 S タイト4 H. 用紙サイズプレート2	同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。





下段カセット(3)を機械本体に挿入する。

る。





Adjusting the leading edge timing

The reference value for the leading edge timing is 20 ±2.5 mm at position (1) in the sample image (a). If the timing is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

- 1.Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Top] and [Cassette(L)].
- Adjust the values.
- b<20mm : Increase the setting value. b>20mm : Decrease the setting value.
- 3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de la synchronisation du bord de tête

La valeur de référence pour la synchronisation du bord de tête est de 20 ±2,5 mm à la position (1) sur l'image d'exemple (a). Si la synchronisation est hors de cette plage, procéder au réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Top] et [Cassette(L)].

2. Régler les valeurs.

b<20mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage. b>20mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Cómo ajustar la sincronización del borde superior

El valor de referencia para la sincronización del borde anterior es 20 ±2,5 mm en la posición (1) en la imagen de muestra (a). Si la sincronización estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Top] y [Cassette(L)].

- Ajuste los valores.
- b<20mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. b>20mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.
- 3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timing

Der Bezugswert des Vorderkantenabstands beträgt 20 ±2,5 mm an Position (1) des Beispieldokuments (a). Falls das Timing außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

- 1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Top] und [Cassette(L)].
- Die Werte einstellen.
- b<20mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. b>20mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
- 3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Il valore di riferimento per la sincronizzazione del bordo superiore è pari a 20 ±2,5 mm sulla posizione (1) nell'immagine di esempio (a). Se la sincronizzazione è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

- 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Top] e [Cassette(L)].
- 2. Regolare i valori.

b<20mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. b>20mm Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

前端对位调节

前端对位的基准值在图像样张(a)的(1)位置为20±2.5mm。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

- 1. 设置维护模式 U034, 选择 [LSU Out Top]、[Cassette(L)]。
- 2. 调整设定值。
- b<20mm:调高设定值。 b>20mm :调低设定值。
- 3. 按 Start 键,以确定设定值。

선단 타이밍 조정

선단 타이밍은 샘플화상 (a) 의 (1) 위치에서 기준치는 20±2.5mm. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다 .

- 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Top], [Cassette(L)] 을 선택합니다 .
- 2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
- b<20mm :설정치를 높입니다 . b>20mm :설정치를 내립니다 .
- 3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

先端タイミング調整

- 先端タイミングは、サンプルイメージ (a)の(1)の位置で基準値は20±2.5mm。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。
- 1. メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、[LSU Out Top]、[Cassette(L)] を選択する。
- 2. 設定値を調整する。
- b<20mm :設定値を上げる。 b>20mm :設定値を下げる。
- 3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



Adjusting the center line

The reference value for the center line(2) is ±2.0 mm or less at position (3) in the sample image (c). If the center line position is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

- 1.Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Left] and [Cassette3] or [Cassette4].
- Adjust the values.
- d<0mm : Increase the setting value. d>0mm : Decrease the setting value.
- 3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de l'axe

La valeur de référence pour l'axe (2) est de ±2,0 mm ou moins à la position (3) sur l'image d'exemple (c). Si la position de l'axe est hors de cette plage, effectuez le réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Left] et [Cassette3] ou [Cassette4].

2. Régler les valeurs.

d<0mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage. d>0mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3.Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la línea central

El valor de referencia para la línea central (2) es ±2,0 mm o menos en la posición (3) en la imagen de muestra (c). Si la posición de la línea central estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Left] y [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].

2. Ajuste los valores.

d<0mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. d>0mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen der Mittenlinie

Der Bezugswert der Mittellinie (2) beträgt ±2,0 mm oder weniger an Position (3) des Beispieldokuments (c). Falls die Mittenlinie außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

- 1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Left] und [Cassette3] oder [Cassette4].
- Die Werte einstellen.
- d<0mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. d>0mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
- 3.Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della linea centrale

Il valore di riferimento per la linea centrale (2) è pari a ±2,0 mm o inferiore sulla posizione (3) nell'immagine di esempio (c). Se la posizione della linea centrale è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

- 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Left] e [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
- 2.Regolare i valori.

d<0mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. d>0mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中心线调节

中心线的基准值在图像样张(c)的(3),基准值是纸张中线位置(2)两端 ±2.0mm 以内。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

- 1. 设置维护模式 UO34, 选择 [LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3] 或 [Cassette4]。
- 2. 调整设定值。
- d<0mm:调高设定值。d>0mm :调低设定值。
- 3. 按 Start 键, 以确定设定值。

센터라인 조정

센터라인 (2) 은 샘플화상 (c) 의 (3) 위치에서 기준치는 ±2.0mm 이내 . 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다 .

- 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Left], [Cassette3] 또는 [Cassette4] 를 선택합니다 .
- 2. 설정치를 조정합니다.
- d<0mm:설정치를 높입니다 . d>0mm :설정치를 내립니다 .
- 3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

センターライン調整

センターラインは、サンプルイメージ (c)の(3)の位置で、基準値は紙のセンター(2)から±2.0mm以内。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。 1.メンテナンスモードU034をセットし、[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3]または [Cassette4]を選択する。

- 2. 設定値を調整する。
- d<0mm :設定値を上げる。d>0mm :設定値を下げる。
- 3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

PF-810 / (3000-sheet deck)

Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書





		арта дата фило дата G(M4x20) H
English Supplied parts A. Paper feeder 1 B. Pin 2 C. Retainer 1 D. S Tite screw M3 × 12 2	E. Stopper R 1 F. Stopper L 1 G. S Tite screws M4 × 20 4 H. Paper size plate 2	Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
Français Pièces fournies A. Chargeur de papier	E. Butée R	Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhé- sive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
Español Partes suministradas A. Depósito de papel B. Clavija 2 C. Retén 1 D. Tornillos S Tite M3 × 12	E. Tope R 1 F. Tope L 1 G. Tornillo S Tite M4 × 20 4 H. Placa de tamaño de papel 2	Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o mate- rial amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
Deutsch Enthaltene Teile A. Papiereinzug	E. Anschlag R 1 F. Anschlag L 1 G. S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 20	Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
ItalianoParti forniteA. Unità di alimentazione della cartaB. Perno2C. Fermo1D. Vite S Tite M3 × 12	E. Fermo R	Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
简体中文 附属品 A.供纸盒	 E. 防止倾斜工具 R	如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭 下。
한국어 동봉품 A. 급지대	E. 스토퍼 R 1 F. 스토퍼 L 1 G. 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 4 H. 용지 사이즈 플레이트 2	동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경 우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .
 日本語 同梱品 A. ペーパーフィーダー1 B. ピン2 C. 取付板1 D. ビス M3×12 Sタイト2 	E. 転倒防止金具 R1 F. 転倒防止金具 L1 G. ビス M4×20 S タイト4 H. 用紙サイズプレート2	同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合 は、必ず取り外すこと。

Procedure Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.	 1.Place the machine (2) on the paper feeder (A) so that the pins (1) at the rear left and rear right of the paper feeder (A) are aligned with the holes in the base of the machine. *Before placing the machine (2), be sure to check that the guide (3) of paper feeder (A) is in the horizontal position. 	2.Remove the lower paper cassette (4) from the machine.
Procédure Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.	 Montez la machine (2) sur le chargeur de papier (A) de sorte que les broches (1) à l'arrière gauche et à l'arrière droit du chargeur de papier (A) soient alignés avec les trous dans la base du machine. *Avant de placer la machine (2), assurez-vous de vérifier que le guide (3) du chargeur de papier (A) est en position horizontale. 	 Retirer le magasin de papier inférieur (4) de la machine.
Procedimiento Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.	 Coloque la máquina (2) sobre el depósito de papel (A) de forma que las clavijas (1) en los lados posteriores izquierdo y derecho del depósito de papel (A) estén alineadas con los orificios de la base de la máquina. *Antes de colocar la máquina (2), asegúrese de comprobar que la guía (3) del depósito de papel (A) está en posición horizontal. 	2.Quite la bandeja de papel inferior (4) de la máquina.
Vorgehensweise Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeu- gen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.	 Setzen Sie das Gerät (2) so auf den Papiere- inzug (A), dass die Stifte (1) hinten links und hinten rechts am Papiereinzug (A) auf die Öff- nungen im Boden des Geräts ausgerichtet sind. *Bevor Sie das Gerät (2) absetzen, überprüfen Sie, ob die Führung (3) des Papiereinzugs (A) sich in horizontaler Position befindet. 	2.Entfernen Sie die untere Papierkassette (4) aus dem Gerät.
Procedura Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.	 Posizionare la macchina (2) sull'alimentatore carta (A) in modo che i perni (1) sul lato sinistro posteriore e sul lato destro posteriore dell'ali- mentatore carta (A) siano allineati con i fori pre- senti sulla base della macchina. *Prima di installare la macchina (2), assicurarsi che la guida (3) dell'alimentatore carta (A) sia in posizione orizzontale. 	 Rimuovere il cassetto carta inferiore (4) dalla macchina.
安装步骤 安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关,并从墙壁插 座拔下电源插头。	 供纸盒(A)的左右后面的各插销(1)分别对 准机器 主机底面的孔后,将机器主机(2)放 在供纸盒(A)上。 *在放下供纸盒(A)的导板(3)的状态下,将 机器主机(2)放在供纸盒上。 	2. 取出机器的下部纸盒(4)。
설치순서 설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스 위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리 하십시오 .	 용지 급지대 (A) 의 후면 좌측과 후면 우측에 있는 핀 (1) 이 본체의 바닥면에 있는 구멍에 맞도록 본체 (2) 를 용지 급지대 (A) 위에 놓습니다. * 본체 (2) 를 배치하기 전에 용지 급지대 (A) 의가이드 (3) 가 수평 위치인지 확인하십시오. 	2. 하단 용지 카세트 (4) 를 본체에서 꺼냅니다 .
取付手順 必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機 械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業するこ と。	 ペーパーフィーダー(A)の左右後方の各ピン(1)と機械本体のベースの穴が合うように、ペーパーフィーダー(A)に機械本体(2)を載せる。 ペーバーフィーダー(A)のガイド(3)が倒れた状態で機械本体(2)を載せること。 	 2. 機械本体の下段カセット(4)を引き出す。



フィーダー(A) に固定する。

4. 下段カセット(4)を機械本体に挿入する。

- 5. イラストの位置に取付板(C)をビス M3× タイト(D)2本で取り付ける。
- 6. 機械本体の右下カバー(5) を開く。 7. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(6) を開く。

8 .Remove the strap (7) from the shaft (8) and remove lower right cover (5).	 9.Lift up the guide (3) until it clicks into place. 10.Close the paper feeder right cover (6) and replace the lower right cover (5) on the machine 11.Close the lower right cover (5) on the machine. 	12. Turn the adjusters on each corner (9) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.
 Déposer la courroie (7) de l'arbre (8) et déposer le capot inférieur droit (5). 	 9. Soulevez le guide (3) jusqu'à ce qu'il s'enclenche en position. 10. Fermer le capot droit du chargeur de papier (6) et reposer le capot inférieur droit (5) sur la machine. 11. Fermez le capot inférieur droit (5) de la machine. 	12. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (9) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le chargeur de papier.
8.Quite la correa (7) del eje (8) y quite la cubi- erta frontal inferior (5).	 9.Levante la guía (3) hasta que encaje en su sitio con un clic. 10.Cierre la cubierta derecha del depósito de papel (6) y vuelva a colocar la cubierta derecha inferior (5) en la máquina. 11.Cierre la cubierta derecha inferior (5) de la máquina. 	12. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (9) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el depósito de papel.
 8.Den Riemen (7) von der Welle (8) abnehmen und dann die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) abnehmen. 	 9.Heben Sie die Führung (3) an, bis diese in der korrekten Position einrastet. 10.Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (6) des Papiereinzugs und setzen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) wieder im Gerät ein. 11.Schließen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) des Geräts. 	12. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (9) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.
 8.Rimuovere la cinghietta (7) dall'asta (8) e quindi rimuovere il pannello destro inferiore (5). 	 9.Alzare la guida (3) fino a sentire il clic di blocco in posizione. 10.Chiudere il pannello destro (6) dell'alimentatore carta e rimontare il pannello destro inferiore (5) sulla macchina. 11.Chiudere il coperchio destro inferiore (5) sulla macchina. 	12. Ruotare i regolatori (9) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavi- mento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazi- one della carta.
8. 将带子 (7) 从轴 (8) 上拆除, 拆下右下部盖板 (5)。	 4. 提起导板(3)直到听到咔哒音。 10. 关闭供纸盒的右部盖板(6),按原样安装机器的右下部盖板(5)。 11. 关闭机器主机的右下部盖板(5)。 	12. 转动四角上的调节器 (9) 直至与地面接触, 然后再固定供纸盒。
8. 스트랩 (7) 을 축 (8) 에서 분리하고 우측 하 단 커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .	 9. 제자리에 장착될 때까지 가이드 (3) 를 위로 올립니다. 10. 급지대 오른쪽 커버 (6) 를 닫고 본체의 오른 쪽 하단 커버 (5) 를 다시 부착합니다. 11. 본체의 오른쪽 하단 커버 (5) 를 닫습니다. 	12. 각 모서리에 위치하는 어져스터 (9) 를 맨 안 쪽에 닿을 때까지 돌려 급지대를 고정합니다 .
8. ストラップ (7) を軸 (8) から外し、右下カ バー(5) を取り外す。	 9. カチッと音がするまでガイド (3) を立てる。 10. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(6) を閉じ、 機械本体の右下カバー(5) を元通りに取り 付ける。 11. 機械本体の右下カバー(5) を閉じる。 	12. 四隅のアジャスター(9) を床に接触する位 置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダーを固定す る。



13. Pull out the right cassette (10) and the left cassette (11) from the paper feeder (A). Remove the lift plate stopper (12) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.
14. Gently close each cassette.



15.Select holes (13) and install each stopper (E,F) with 2 S Tite screws M4 × 20 (G) so that the stoppers will be grounded on the floor.

 13. Sortez le magasin droit (10) et le magasin gauche (11) du chargeur de papier (A). Retirez la butée de la plaque de levage (12) de chaque magasin et fixez-la dans l'emplacement de stockage . 14. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir. 	15.Sélectionner les trous (13) et installer chaque butée (E,F) avec 2 vis S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de sorte que les butées reposent sur le sol.
 13. Extraiga el depósito derecho (10) y el depósito izquierdo (11) del depósito de papel (A). Quite el tope de placa de elevación (12) de cada depósito y póngalo en el espacio reservado para guardarlo . 14. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja. 	15.Seleccione los orificios (13) e instale cada tope (E,F) con los 2 tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de manera que los topes se conecten a tierra en el suelo.
 13. Ziehen Sie die rechte Kassette (10) und die linke Kassette (11) aus dem Papiereinzug (A) heraus. Entfernen Sie die Verriegelung des Papier- lifts (12) aus jeder Kassette und setzen Sie die Verriegelung in die Parkposition ein. 14. Alle Kassetten sachte schließen. 	15.Wählen Sie die Öffnungen (13) und befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (E,F) mit den 2 S-Tite- Schrauben M4 × 20 (G) so an, dass die Anschläge am Boden aufsitzen.
 13. Estrarre il cassetto destro (10) e il cassetto sinistro (11) dall'unità di alimentazione carta (A). Rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (12) da ogni cassetto e fissarlo sulla posizione a riposo . 14. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto. 	15.Selezionare i fori (13) ed installare ogni fermo (E,F) con le 2 viti S Tite M4 × 20 (G) in modo che i fermi siano posti a terra sul pavimento.
 13. 从供纸盒(A)拉出右侧纸盒(10)以及左侧纸 盒(11)。 在每个纸盒上各拆下1个升降板限位器 (12),并安装在保管场所。 14. 轻轻地推入各纸盒。 	15. 在孔 (13) 处各用 2 颗 M4×20 紧固型 S 螺丝 (G) 安装防止倾斜工具 (E, F), 使之和地板接触。
 13. 급지대 (A) 에서 우측 카세트 (10) 와 좌측 카세트 (11) 를 꺼낸다. 각 카세트에서 리프트 플레이트 스토퍼 (12) 를 제거하고 보관장소에 부착합니다. 14. 각 카세트를 부드럽게 밀어 넣습니다. 	15. 구멍 (13) 을 선택해 스토퍼 (E,F) 가 바닥면에 닿도록 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 (G) 2 개를 사용하 여 설치합니다 .
 ペーパーフィーダー(A)のカセット右(10) およびカセット左(11)を引き出す。リフト 板ストッパー(12)各1個を外して保管場所 に取り付ける。 4.各カセットを静かに押し込む。 	15. 転倒防止金具 (E, F) が床面に接地するように、穴(13)を選択してビス M4×20 Sタイト (G) 各 2 本で取り付ける。

H		
Setting paper size plate Insert the paper size plate (H) into the size dis- play slot.	Changing paper size (metric specifications only) At shipment, Letter is set for inch models and A4 is set for metric models. Use the procedure below to change the size to B5.	 Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder. Turn the front lock lever (14) 90° and remove the front deck cursor (15).
Réglage de la plaquette du format de papier Insérez la plaquette de format de papier (H) dans le logement d'affichage du format.	Modification du format du papier (pour spécifications métriques seulement) À expédition, les modèles à mesure en pouces sont réglés sur le format Letter et les modèles à mesure métrique sur le format A4. Pour passer au format B5, procéder de la manière suivante.	 Tirer le magasin du chargeur de papier vers soi. Faire tourner le levier de verrouillage avant (14) de 90° et déposer le curseur de platine avant (15).
Ajuste de la placa de tamaño de papel Inserte la placa de tamaño de papel (H) en la ranura de visualización de tamaño.	Cómo cambiar el tamaño de papel (sólo para las especificaciones métricas) En el momento de salida de fábrica, se config- ura Carta para los modelos en pulgadas y A4 para los modelos en sistema métrico. Siga este procedimiento para cambiar el tamaño a B5.	 Abra el casete del depósito de papel. Gire la palanca de bloqueo frontal (14) 90° y quite el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15).
Einsetzen der Papierformatkarte Setzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (H) in den Schlitz der Formatanzeige ein.	Ändern des Papierformats (nur metrische Spezifikationen) Beim Werksversand ist bei Modellen mit Zoll- maß das Format Letter voreingestellt und bei Modellen mit metrischem Maß das Format A4. Das Format kann wie folgend auf B5 umge- schaltet werden.	 Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiere- inzug. Den vorderen Verriegelungshebel (14) um 90° drehen und den vorderen Konsole-Cur- sor (15) abnehmen.
Inserimento della piastra formato carta Inserire la piastra di formato carta (H) nello slot di indicazione formato.	Cambio del formato della carta (solo per le specifiche metriche) Al momento della spedizione, Letter è impostato per le specifiche in pollici e A4 è impostato per le specifiche metriche. Usare la procedura riportata sotto per cambiare il formato a B5.	 Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta. Ruotare la leva frontale di blocco (14) di 90° e rimuovere il cursore frontale del deck (15).
设定纸张尺寸插片 将纸张尺寸插片(H)插入到尺寸表示插槽内。	纸张尺寸更改(仅限公制规格) 产品出厂时,英制规格设定为Letter、公制规格 设定为A4。要将尺寸更改为B5时,请按以下步骤 进行操作。	 拉出供纸盒的纸盒。 将前部锁定杆 (14) 旋转 90°, 拆下堆纸板前 部游标 (15)。
용지 사이즈 플레이트 세팅 용지 사이즈 플레이트 (H) 를 해당 사이즈 디스 플레이 슬롯에 삽입합니다 .	용지크기 변경 (센치 사양만) 출하시, 인치사양은 Letter, 센치사양은 A4 로 설정되어 있습니다 . 크기를 B5 로 변경하는 경 우에는 다음 순서를 진행해 주십시오 .	1. 급지대 카세트를 빼 냅니다 . 2. 프론트 잠금 레버 (14) 을 90° 회전시켜 프론 트 데크커서 (15) 을 제거합니다 .
用紙サイズプレートのセット 用紙サイズプレート (H) を、サイズ表示スロッ トに挿入する。	用紙サイズ変更(センチ仕様のみ) 出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを B5 に変更する場 合は次の手順をおこなってください。	 ペーパーフィーダーのカセットを引き出す。 ロックレバー前(14)を90°回転させ、デッキカーソル前(15)を取り外す。



5. 同様にデッキカーソル後(18)を移動させる。



3. Insert a Philips-head screwdriver into the 2 long slots (25) in the front deck cursor (15) and loosen the 2 adjusting screws (26). Then move the front deck cursor (15).	 4. Retighten the 2 adjusting screws (26). 5. Check that the gap between the front deck cursor (15) and the paper is between 0.5 and 1.5 mm.
3. Insérer un tournevis cruciforme dans les 2 longues fentes (25) du curseur de platine avant (15) et desserrer les 2 vis de réglage (26). Déplacer ensuite le curseur de platine avant (15).	 4.Resserrer les 2 vis de réglage (26). 5.Vérifier que l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (15) et le papier est entre 0,5 et 1,5 mm.
3. Inserte un destornillador de cabeza Philips en las dos ranuras largas (25) en el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) y afloje los 2 tornillos de ajuste (26). Después, mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15).	 4. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos de ajuste (26). 5. Verifique que la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) y el papel sea de entre 0,5 y 1,5 mm.
3. Einen Kreuzschlitzschraubendreher in die 2 langen Öffnungen (25) im vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) stecken und die 2 Einstellschrauben (26) lösen. Danach den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) verschieben.	 4. Die 2 Einstellschrauben (26) wieder anziehen. 5. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) und dem Papier im Bereich 0,5 bis 1,5 mm liegt.
3. Inserire un cacciavite con testa a croce tipo Philips nelle 2 fessure lunghe (25) nel cursore fron- tale del deck (15) e allentare le 2 viti di regolazione (26). Quindi spostare il cursore frontale del deck (15).	 4. Ristringere le 2 viti di regolazione (26). 5. Controllare che lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (15) e la carta sia compreso nella gamma tra 0,5 e 1,5 mm.
 将十字螺丝刀从堆纸板前部游标 (15) 的 2 处长孔 (25) 处插入, 拧松 2 颗调节螺丝 (26), 移动堆 纸板前部游标 (15)。 	 拧紧 2 颗调节螺丝 (26)。 确认堆纸板前部游标 (15) 与纸张的间隙在 0.5~1.5mm 的范围内。
3. 프론트 데크커서 (15) 의 두 군데의 긴 구멍 (25) 에서 십자 드라이버 삽입하고 조정 나사 (26) 2 개를 풀어 프론트 데크 커서 (15) 를 이동시킵니다 .	4. 조정나사 (26) 2 개를 조입니다 . 5. 데크커서 앞 (15) 과 용지의 틈이 0.5 ~ 1.5 mm 범위내가 되어 있는 것을 확인합니다 .
3. デッキカーソル前 (15) の 2 箇所の長穴 (25) からプラスドライバー挿入し、調整ビス (26)2 本を 緩め、デッキカーソル前 (15) を移動させる。	 調整ビス (26)2 本を締め付ける。 デッキカーソル前 (15) と用紙の隙間が 0.5 ~ 1.5mm の範囲内になっていることを確認 する



Adjusting the leading edge timing

The reference value for the leading edge timing is 20 ±2.5 mm at position (1) in the sample image (a). If the timing is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

- 1.Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Top] and [Cassette(L)].
- Adjust the values.
- b<20mm : Increase the setting value. b>20mm : Decrease the setting value.
- 3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de la synchronisation du bord de tête

La valeur de référence pour la synchronisation du bord de tête est de 20 ±2,5 mm à la position (1) sur l'image d'exemple (a). Si la synchronisation est hors de cette plage, procéder au réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Top] et [Cassette(L)].

2. Régler les valeurs.

b<20mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage. b>20mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Cómo ajustar la sincronización del borde superior

El valor de referencia para la sincronización del borde anterior es 20 ±2,5 mm en la posición (1) en la imagen de muestra (a). Si la sincronización estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Top] y [Cassette(L)].

2. Ajuste los valores.

b<20mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. b>20mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timing

Der Bezugswert des Vorderkantenabstands beträgt 20 ±2,5 mm an Position (1) des Beispieldokuments (a). Falls das Timing außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Top] und [Cassette(L)].

- Die Werte einstellen.
- b<20mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. b>20mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
- 3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Il valore di riferimento per la sincronizzazione del bordo superiore è pari a 20 ±2,5 mm sulla posizione (1) nell'immagine di esempio (a). Se la sincronizzazione è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

- 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Top] e [Cassette(L)].
- 2. Regolare i valori.

b<20mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. b>20mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

前端对位调节

前端对位的基准值在图像样张(a)的(1)位置为20±2.5mm。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

- 1. 设置维护模式 U034, 选择 [LSU Out Top]、[Cassette(L)]。
- 2. 调整设定值。
- b<20mm :调高设定值。 b>20mm :调低设定值。
- 3. 按 Start 键,以确定设定值。

선단 타이밍 조정

선단 타이밍은 샘플화상 (a) 의 (1) 위치에서 기준치는 20±2.5mm. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다.

- 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Top], [Cassette(L)] 을 선택합니다 .
- 2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
- b<20mm :설정치를 높입니다 . b>20mm :설정치를 내립니다 .
- 3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

先端タイミング調整

- 先端タイミングは、サンプルイメージ (a)の(1)の位置で基準値は20±2.5mm。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。
- 1. メンテナンスモードU034をセットし、[LSU Out Top]、[Cassette(L)]を選択する。

2. 設定値を調整する。

- b<20mm :設定値を上げる。 b>20mm :設定値を下げる。
- 3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



Adjusting the center line

The reference value for the center line (2) is ±2.0 mm or less at position (3) in the sample image (c). If the center line position is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

1.Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Left] and [Cassette3] or [Cassette4].

2. Adjust the values.

d<0mm : Increase the setting value. d>0mm : Decrease the setting value.

3.Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de l'axe

La valeur de référence pour l'axe (2) est de ±2,0 mm ou moins à la position (3) sur l'image d'exemple (c). Si la position de l'axe est hors de cette plage, effectuez le réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Left] et [Cassette3] ou [Cassette4].

2. Régler les valeurs.

d<0mm: Augmentez la valeur de réglage. d>0mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3.Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la línea central

El valor de referencia para la línea central (2) es ±2,0 mm o menos en la posición (3) en la imagen de muestra (c). Si la posición de la línea central estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Left] y [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].

2. Ajuste los valores.

d<0mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. d>0mm Reduzca el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen der Mittenlinie

Der Bezugswert der Mittellinie (2) beträgt ±2,0 mm oder weniger an Position (3) des Beispieldokuments (c). Falls die Mittenlinie außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

- 1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Left] und [Cassette3] oder [Cassette4].
- 2. Die Werte einstellen.
- d<0mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. d>0mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
- 3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della linea centrale

Il valore di riferimento per la linea centrale (2) è pari a ±2,0 mm o inferiore sulla posizione (3) nell'immagine di esempio (c). Se la posizione della linea centrale è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

- 1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Left] e [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
- 2. Regolare i valori.

d<0mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. d>0mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中心线调节

中心线的基准值在图像样张(c)的(3),基准值是纸张中线位置(2)两端±2.0mm以内。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

- 1. 设置维护模式 UO34, 选择 [LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3] 或 [Cassette4]。
- 2. 调整设定值。
- d<Omm :调高设定值。d>Omm:调低设定值。
- 3. 按 Start 键, 以确定设定值。

센터라인 조정

센터라인 (2) 은 샘플화상 (c) 의 (3) 위치에서 기준치는 ±2.0mm 이내 . 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다 .

- 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Left], [Cassette3] 또는 [Cassette4] 를 선택합니다.
- 2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
- d<0mm :설정치를 높입니다 . d>0mm:설정치를 내립니다 .
- 3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

センターライン調整

センターラインは、サンプルイメージ (c)の(3)の位置で、基準値は紙のセンター(2)から±2.0mm以内。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。 1.メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3] または [Cassette4] を選択する。

設定値を調整する。

3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

d<0mm :設定値を上げる。 d>0mm :設定値を下げる。

DF-791 / (3000-sheet finisher) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

DF-791



		F(M4x8) G(M4x20)
English	E. Staple cartridge1 F. M4 × 8 screw1	Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
Supplied parts A. Document finisher1	G. M4 × 20 screw 2	
B. Eject tray	AA.Earth Plate1	
Français	E. Cartouche d'agrafes 1	Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhé-
Pièces fournies	F. Vis M4 × 81 G. Vis M4 × 20	sive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
A. Finisseur de document 1 B. Bac d'élection		
C. Plaque de connexion	AA.Plaque de terre 1	
D. Cache de connecteur 1		
Español	E. Cartucho de grapas 1	Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o mate-
Partes suministradas	F. Tornillo M4 × 8 1 G. Tornillo M4 × 20 2	rial amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
A. Finalizador de documentos 1		
C. Placa de conexión 1	AA.Placa de conexión a tierra 1	
D. Cubierta del conector 1		
Deutsch	E. Heftklammer-Magazin 1	Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder
Enthaltene Teile	F. M4 × 8 Schraube 1 G. M4 × 20 Schraube 2	und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden
A. Finisher		
C. Verbindungsplatte	AA.Grundplatte 1	
D. Stecker-Abdeckung 1		
Italiano	E. Contenitore punti 1	Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di
Parti fornite	F. Vite M4 × 8	protezione dalle parti fornite.
A. Finisher documenti		
C. Piastra di connessione 1	AA.Piastra di messa a terra 1	
D. Copri connettore 1		
	E. 装订针盒1	如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭
附属品	F. M4×8 螺丝1	下。
A. 装订器1	U.mTA20 弥兰	
B. 排纸比盘 1 C. 连接板 1	AA.接地板1	
D. 接插件盖板 1		
한국어	E. 스테이플 카트리지1	동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경
동봉품	r. 나사 M4×81 G. 나사 M4×202	우메는 만드시 세거하십시오 .
A. 도큐먼트 피니셔1 B. 배축 트레이 1		
C. 연결판	AA.곕시판1	
D. 커넥터 커버1		
日本語	E. ステープルカートリッジ1	同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合 は、必ず取りぬすこと
	F. ビス M4 × 01 G. ビス M4 × 202	は、
A. トキュメントノイニッシャー1 B. 排出トレイ1		
C. 連結板		
υ. コイソツールハー		



NOTICE The Attachment Kit (AK-740) must be installed before the document finisher is installed.	Procedure Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.	1. Install eject tray (B) to document finisher (A) by inserting the 2 hooks (1) on the back of the tray in the holes (2) of the finisher lift plate.
REMARQUE Le kit de fixation (AK-740) doit être installé avant d'installer le finisseur de document.	Procédure Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.	 Installez le bac d'éjection (B) sur le finisseur de document (A) en insérant les 2 crochets (1) au dos du bac d'éjection (B) dans les trous (2) du dispositif de levage du finisseur.
AVISO El Kit de conexión (AK-740) se debe instalar antes de instalarse el finalizador de documen- tos.	Procedimiento Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.	 Instale la bandeja de salida (B) en el finaliza- dor de documentos (A); para ello, inserte los 2 enganches (1) de la parte posterior de la bandeja en los orificios (2) de la placa de elevación del finalizador.
ANMERKUNG Das Attachment Kit (AK-740) muss installiert werden, bevor der Finisher installiert wird.	Vorgehensweise Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeu- gen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.	 Setzen Sie das Ausgabefach (B) in den Fin- isher (A), indem Sie die 2 Haken (1) auf der Rückseite des Fachs in die beiden Löcher (2) der Finisher-Lift-Platte einsetzen.
AVVISO Installare l'unità Attachment Kit (AK-740) prima di collegare il finisher documenti.	Procedura Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.	1. Installare il vassoio di uscita (B) sul finisher documenti (A) inserendo i 2 ganci (1) sul retro del vassoio nei fori (2) della piastra di elevazione del finisher.
注意 安装装订器前,必须先安装连接组件(AK-740)。	安装步骤 安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关,并从墙壁插 座拔下电源插头。	1. 将排纸托盘(B) 内侧的 2 个挂钩(1) 装入装 订器(A)的升降板的孔(2)中。
주의 도큐먼트 피니셔를 설치하기 전에 어태치먼트 키트 (AK-740) 를 설치해야 합니다 .	설치순서 설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스 위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리 하십시오 .	1. 배출 트레이 (B) 의 후면 후크 (1) 2 개를 문 서 피니셔 (A) 의 리프트 플레이트 구멍 (2) 에 장착합니다 .

注意 ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける前 に、アタッチメントキット(AK-740)の取り付け をおこなうこと。 取付手順 必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機 械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業するこ と。

1.排出トレイ (B) の裏側のフック (1)2 個をド キュメントフィニッシャー(A)の昇降板の 穴(2)に入れて、取り付ける。



If PF-810 is installed

2. Install earth plate (AA) to the bottom center of document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (F). Secure the plate at the location marked "PF-810". Earth plate (AA) is supplied with AK-740.

Proceed to step 3.If PF-791 is installed, see the next.



If PF-791 is installed

2. Install earth plate (AA) to the bottom center of document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (F). Secure the plate at the location marked "PF-791". Earth plate (AA) is supplied with AK-740.

ment à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F). Fixez la plaque à l'emplacement

Si le PF-791 est installé

2. Installez la plaque de terre (AA) en bas au centre du finisseur de docu-2. Installez la plaque de terre (AA) en bas au centre du finisseur de document à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F). Fixez la plaque à l'emplacement marqué "PF-810".

La plaque de terre (AA) est fournie avec l'AK-740.

Passer à l'étape 3. Si le PF-791 est installé, voir ci-après.

Si está instalado PF-810

Si le PF-810 est installé

2. Instale la placa de conexión a tierra (AA) a la parte central inferior del finalizador de documentos con un tornillo M4 × 8 (F). Fije la placa a la ubicación con la marca "PF-810".

Con AK-740 se proporciona la placa de conexión a tierra (AA). Vaya al paso 3. Si está instalado PF-791, consulte lo siguiente.

Falls der PF-810 installiert ist

2. Installieren Sie die Grundplatte (AA) mit der Schraube M4 × 8 (F) unten in die Mitte des Finishers. Sichern Sie die Platte an der Stelle, die mit "PF-810" markiert ist.

Die Grundplatte (AA) wird mit dem AK-740 geliefert.

Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 3. Falls der PF-791 installiert ist, folgen Sie den weiteren Schritten.

Quando è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-810

2. Installare la piastra di messa a terra (AA) al centro della base del finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F). Fissare la piastra nella posizione contrassegnata con "PF-810". La piastra di mesa a terra (AA) viene fornita con AK-740.

Procedere al passo 3. Se invece è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-791, vedere più avanti.

当安装了 PF-810 的情况时

2. 使用 M4×8(F) 螺丝,将接地板(AA)安装至装订器下部中央位置。将接 地板固定在刻有"PF-810"印记的位置。 接地板(AA)是随附在AK-740内的。 进至步骤 3。 当安装了 PF-791 的情况时。参考如下内容。

PF-810 이 설치되어 있는 경우

2. 나사 M4 × 8(F)을 이용하여 도큐먼트 피니셔 하부 중앙에 접지판 (AA) 을 설치합니다 . "PF-810" 으로 표시된 곳에 플레이트를 고정하 십시오. 접지판 (AA) 은 AK-740 과 함께 제공됩니다. 스텝 3 을 진행합니다 .PF-791 이 설치되어 있는 경우 다음을 참조하 십시오.

PF-810 が装着されている場合

2. アース板 (AA) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターにビス M4×8(F)で取り付ける。PF-810の刻印のある位置で固定する。 アース板 (AA) は AK-740 の同梱品。 手順3に進む。PF-791が装着されている場合は次に記載しています。

Si está instalado PF-791

marqué "PF-791".

2. Instale la placa de conexión a tierra (AA) a la parte central inferior del finalizador de documentos con un tornillo M4 × 8 (F). Fije la placa a la ubicación con la marca "PF-791". Con AK-740 se proporciona la placa de conexión a tierra (AA).

Falls der PF-791 installiert ist

2. Installieren Sie die Grundplatte (AA) mit der Schraube M4 × 8 (F) unten in die Mitte des Finishers. Sichern Sie die Platte an der Stelle, die mit "PF-791" markiert ist.

Die Grundplatte (AA) wird mit dem AK-740 geliefert.

La plaque de terre (AA) est fournie avec l'AK-740.

Quando è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-791

2. Installare la piastra di messa a terra (AA) al centro della base del finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F). Fissare la piastra nella posizione contrassegnata con "PF-791". La piastra di mesa a terra (AA) viene fornita con AK-740.

当安装了 PF-791 的情况时

2. 使用 M4×8(F) 螺丝,将接地板(AA)安装至装订器下部中央位置。将接 地板固定在刻有 "PF-791" 印记的位置。 接地板(AA)是随附在AK-740内的。

PF-791 이 설치되어 있는 경우

2. M4 × 8 나사 (F) 를 사용하여 접지판 (AA) 을 도큐먼트 피니셔의 하부 중앙에 부착합니다 "PF-791" 이 표시된 지점에 플레이트를 고정합니다. 접지판 (AA) 은 AK-740 과 함께 제공됩니다.

PF-791 が装着されている場合

2. アース板 (AA) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターにビス M4×8(F)で取り付ける。PF-791の刻印のある位置で固定する。 アース板 (AA) は AK-740 の同梱品。


6. Connect the signal line connector (5) to the connector (6) on the machine. Hook the signal line wire (7) onto the hook (8).	7. Fit the connector cover (D) in the connecting plate (C). Take care not to get the cable pinched by objects. Attach it at the point as shown above. Check that the signal line connector is covered by the connector cover (D).	8.Open the document finisher upper front cover (9). Remove the screw (10). Pull the lock frame (11) frontwards.
6 .Raccorder le connecteur de ligne de signal (5) sur le connecteur (6) de la machine. Accrocher le fil de ligne de signal (7) sur le crochet (8).	7. Placer le couvercle de connecteur (D) dans la plaque de connexion (C). Prendre soin à ne pas pincer le câble. Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus. Vérifier que le con- necteur de ligne de signal est couvert par le couvercle de connecteur (D).	 8. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur du finis- seur de document (9). Retirez la vis (10). Tirer le cadre de verrouillage (11) vers le bas.
6. Conecte el conector de línea de señales (5) al conector (6) de la máquina. Enganche el cable de la línea de señales (7) en el enganche (8).	7.Acople la cubierta del conector (D) en la placa de conexión (C). Tenga cuidado de que el cable no quede atrapado por objetos. Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba. Compruebe que el conector de la línea de señales quede cubierto por la cubierta del conector (D).	 8. Abra la cubierta frontal superior del finaliza- dor de documentos (9). Quite el tornillo (10). Empuje el marco de cierre (11) hacia del- ante.
 6. Verbinden Sie den Stecker der Signalleitung (5) mit dem Steckverbinder im Gerät (6). Hängen Sie das Kabel der Signalleitung (7) in den Befestigungshaken (8) ein. 	7.Setzen Sie die Stecker-Abdeckung (D) in die Verbindungsplatte (C) ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an. Überprüfen Sie, ob der Stecker der Signalleitung von der Stecker- Abdeckung (D) abgedeckt ist.	 8. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung des Finishers (9). Entfernen Sie die Schraube (10). Ziehen Sie die Verriegelung (11) nach vorne.
6. Collegare il connettore di linea del segnale (5) al connettore (6) sulla periferica. Aggan- ciare il cavo di linea del segnale (7) al gancio (8).	7. Inserire il copri connettore (D) nella piastra di connessione (C). Fare attenzione a non impigliare il cavo. Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata. Controllare che il connettore della linea del segnale sia coperto dal copri connettore (D).	 8. Aprire il coperchio frontale superiore del fin- isher documenti (9). Togliere la vite (10). Tirare in avanti la frame di blocco (11).
 6. 把信号线的接插件(5)和机器本体的接插件 (6)相连接。把信号线(7)挂到挂钩(8)上。 	7. 将接插件盖板 (D) 嵌入到连接板 (C)。 请注 意不要夹住电线。 按图示位置来安装。请确 认信号线的接插件是否完全隐藏在接插件盖 板中 (D)。	8. 打开装订器的前上盖板(9)。取下螺丝(10)。 向身体前侧拉出固定架(11)。
6. 시그널 라인 연결 커넥터 (5) 를 본체의 커넥 터 (6) 에 연결합니다 . 시그널 라인 와이어 (7) 를 후크 (8) 에 겁니다 .	7. 커넥터 커버 (D) 를 연결판 (C) 에 맞추어 끼 웁니다 . 케이블이 커넥터 커버 (D) 에 끼이 지 않도록 주의합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 . 시그널라인 커넥터가 커넥터 커버 (D) 에 덮여있는지 확인합니다 .	8. 도큐먼트 피니셔의 상단 프론트 커버 (9) 를 엽니다 . 나사 (10) 를 제거합니다 . 잠금 프 레임 (11) 을 앞으로 뺍니다 .
6.信号線のコネクター(5)を機械本体のコネ クター(6)に接続する。信号線(7)は、フッ ク(8)に掛けること。	7. コネクターカバー(D) を連結板(C) にはめ 込む。電線を挟み込まない様注意すること。 図の位置で取り付けること。信号線のコネク ターがコネクターカバー(D) で隠れている ことを確認する。	8. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (9) を開く。ビス (10) を外す。ロックフレー ム (11) を手前に引く。





Adjusting the height

 Check that the respective heights of the pins (12) on the connecting plate installed on the machine and the connecting holes (13) on the document finisher comply with the references below.



Compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (12) is within the height range (b) of the curved section (21). Non-compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (12) is extends beyond the height range (b) of the curved section (21).

If the heights are non-compliant, use the procedure below to adjust the height.

Réglage de la hauteur

 Vérifiez que les hauteurs respectives des ergots (12) sur la plaque de connexion installée sur la machine et les trous de connexion (13) sur le finisseur de document sont conformes aux références ci-dessous. Bon : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (12) est dans les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21). Mauvais : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (12) dépasse les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21). Si la hauteur n'est pas conforme, l'ajuster en procédant comme indiqué ci-dessous.

 Ajuste de la altura 1. Compruebe que las alturas correspondientes de las clavijas (12) de la placa de fijación instaladas en la máquina y los orificios de conexión (13) del finalizador de documentos cumplen las referencias de abajo. 	Cumple: el diámetro (a) de la clavija (12) está dentro del rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21). No cumple: el diámetro (a) de la clavija (12) sobrepasa el rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21). Si las alturas no cumplen con las especificaciones, utilice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la altura.
 Einstellen der Höhe 1. Überprüfen Sie, dass die jeweilige Höhe der Stifte (12) der am Gerät installierten Verbind- ungsplatte und Verbindungsöffnungen (13) des Finishers mit den unten angegebenen Werten übereinstimmen. 	Korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (12) befindet sich im Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenabschnitts (21). Nicht korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (12) ragt über den Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenab- schnitts (21) hinaus. Falls die Höhen nicht korrekt sind, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.
 Regolazione dell'altezza 1. Controllare che le rispettive altezze dei perni (12) sulla piastra di connessione installata sulla macchina e i fori di connessione (13) sulla finisher documenti corrispondano ai riferimenti mostrati sotto. 	Conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (12) è compreso nella gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21). Non conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (12) si estende oltre la gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21). Se le altezze sono non corrispondenti, utilizzare la procedura riportata sotto per regolare l'altezza.
高度调节 1.确认机器主机上安装的连接板的销钉(12)和 装订器的连接用的孔(13)的高度是否符合以 下标准。	符 合: 销钉 (12) 的直径 (a) 在弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围内。 不符合: 销钉 (12) 的直径 (a) 超出了弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围。 不符合时,通过以下步骤进行调节。
높이조정 1. 본체에 설치된 연결판의 핀 (12) 과 도큐먼트 피니셔의 연결용 구멍 (13) 의 각 높이가 아 래의 기준에 부합하는지 확인합니다 .	적 합 :핀 (12) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위에 들어간다 . 부적합:핀 (12) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위를 넘는다 . 부적합의 경우에는 이하의 순서대로 조정합니다 .

高さ調整

 1.機械本体に取り付けた連結板のピン (12) と ドキュメントフィニッシャーの連結用の穴 (13)の高さが以下の基準に適合するか確認 する。 適 合:ピン (12)の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21)の高さ (b)の範囲に収まっている。 不適合:ピン (12)の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21)の高さ (b)の範囲からはみだしている。 不適合の場合は、以下の手順で調整する。



3. ビス (22)3 本を外し、前下カバー(23) を取り外す。

4. ビス (24)3 本を外し、後下カバー(25) を取り外す。





12.Retighten each of the 2 screws (32).

13. Reinstall the lower front cover (23) and lower rear cover (25).

12. Resserrer les 2 vis (32).

13.Reposez le couvercle avant inférieur (23) et le couvercle arrière inférieur (25).

12. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos (32).

13. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta frontal inferior

(23) y la cubierta posterior inferior (25).

12.Ziehen Sie die 2 Schrauben (32) nach.13.Setzen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (23) und die untere hintere Abdeckung (25) wieder ein.

12. Ristringere ciascuna delle 2 viti (32).

13.Reinstallare il coperchio frontale inferiore (23) e il coperchio posteriore inferiore (25).

12. 拧紧各 2 颗螺丝 (32)。

13. 按原样安装前部下盖板 (23)、后部下盖板 (25)。

12. 나사 (32) 각 2 개를 조입니다 . 13. 프론트 하단 커버 (23), 리어 하단 커버 (25) 를 원래 자리에 장착합니다 .

12. ビス (32) 各 2 本を締め付ける。

13.前下カバー(23)、後下カバー(25)を元通り

に取り付ける。



Adjusting the stapling position

1.Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.

- 2. Make a test copy using staple mode (double stapled).
- **3.** Check whether the stapling position is off-center. If the staple position is off-center, follow the procedure below to adjust the position. <Reference value> 78.5 mm ±2.5 mm from the center of the paper

Ajustement de la position d'agrafage

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.

- 2. Procéder à une copie d'essai en mode agrafage (double agrafage).
- 3. Vérifier que la position d'agrafage n'est pas en décalage. Si la position d'agrafage est décalée, la régler en procédant de la manière suivante. <Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.

Ajuste de la posición de grapado

1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina al receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.

2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapado (grapado doble).

- Compruebe si la posición de grapado está descentrada. Si la posición de grapado está descentrada, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
- <Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel

Justage der Heftposition

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Hauptschalter ein.

2. Erstellen Sie eine Probekopie im Heftmodus (doppelt geheftet).

- 3. Prüfen Sie, ob die Heftposition außermittig ist Falls die Heftposition außermittig ist, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.
- <Bezugswert> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

Regolazione della posizione di pinzatura

1. Collegare la spina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.

- 2. Eseguire una copia di prova utilizzando la modalità di spillatura con punti metallici (spillatura doppia).
- 3. Verificare che la posizione di spillatura non sia fuori centro. Se la posizione di spillatura è fuori centro, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.

<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

调节装订位置

- 1.将机器上的电源插头插入电源插座中,打开主电源开关。
- 2. 在装订模式(2点固定)下进行测试复印。
- 3. 确认装订位置的中心偏差。装订位置偏离中心时,按以下步骤进行调节。
- <基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm± 2.5mm

스테이플 위치 조정

- 1. 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다.
- 2.스테이플 모드 (더블 스테이플) 에서 테스트 카피를 합니다 .
- 3. 스테이플 위치의 센터 어긋남을 확인합니다. 스테이플 위치가 중심에서 벗어난 경우다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.
- <기준치> 용지 센터에서 78.5mm± 2.5mm

ステープル位置の調整

- 1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 2. ステープルモード(2箇所止め)でテストコピーを行う。
- 3. ステープル位置のセンターずれを確認する。ステープル位置が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
- <基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm± 2.5mm

	(a)	(b)	
			J
 4. Set maintenance mode U246, select Finisher, Staple HP. 5. Adjust the values. If the paper is stapled too close to the front of the machine (a): Increase the setting value. If the paper is stapled too close to the rear of the machine (b): Decrease the setting value. 		 6.Perform a test copy. 7.Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the staple position is within the reference value. <reference value=""> 78.5 mm ±2.5 mm from the center of the paper</reference> 	
 4. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Staple HP. 5. Régler les valeurs. Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'avant de la machine (a): augmenter la valeur de réglage. Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'arrière de la machine (b): réduire la valeur de réglage. 		 6. Effectuer une copie de test. 7. Recommencer les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la position d'agrafe soit conforme à la valeur de référence <valeur de="" référence=""> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.</valeur> 	
 4. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Staple HP. 5. Ajuste los valores. Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina (a): aumente el valor de configuración. Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte posterior de la máquina (b): disminuya el valor de configuración. 		 6.Haga una copia de prueba. 7.Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que la posición de grapado se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia. <valor de="" referencia=""> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel</valor> 	
 4. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Staple HP. 5. Die Werte einstellen. Falls das Papier zu nahe am vorderen Rand des Geräts (a) abgesta- pelt wird: Vergrößern Sie den Stellwert. Falls das Papier zu nahe am hinteren Rand des Geräts (b) abgestapelt wird: Verkleinern Sie den Stellwert. 		 6. Eine Testkopie erstellen. 7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Heftposition im Bereich des Bezugswerts liegt. <bezugswert> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm von der Blattmitte</bezugswert> 	
 4. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Staple HP. 5. Regolare i valori. Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte anteriore della macchina (a): Aumentare il valore di impostazione. Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte posteriore della macchina (b): Diminuire il valore di impostazione. 		 6. Eseguire una copia di prova. 7. Ripetere i passi 4 to 6 finché la posizione di spillatura risulta all'interno del valore di riferimento. <valore di="" riferimento=""> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio</valore> 	
 4.设置维护模式 U246,选择 Finisher、Staple HP。 5.调整设定值。 装订位置向机器前部偏移时 (a):调高设定值。 装订位置向机器后部偏移时 (b):调低设定值。 		 6.进行测试复印。 7.重复步骤4~6,直到装订位置在基准范围内为止。 <基准值>距离纸张中心78.5mm±2.5mm 	
 4. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 설정하고 Finisher, Staple HP 를 선택합니다. 5. 설정값을 조정합니다. 스테이플 위치가 기기앞측으로 벗어난 경우 (a): 설정치를 높입니다. 스테이플 위치가 기기뒷측으로 벗어난 경우 (b): 설정치를 내입니다. 		6.테스트 카피를 합니다. 7.스테이플 위치가 기준치 이 내로 될 때까지 스텝 4 ~ 6 을 반복합니다. <기준치 > 용지 센터에서 78.5mm± 2.5mm	
 4. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Staple HP を選択する。 5. 設定値を調整する。 ステープル位置が機械前側にずれている場合 (a):設定値を上げる。 ステープル位置が機械後側にずれている場合 (b):設定値を下げる。 		6.テストコピーを行う。 7.ステープル位置が基準値内になるまで、手順4 ~ 6 を繰り返す。 <基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm ± 2.5mm	

DF-7120 / (1000-sheet finisher) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書







English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 5,Page 14 to Page 15. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 6 to Page 15.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 5,Page 14 à Page 15. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 6 à Page 15.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 5,páginas de la 14 a la 15. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 6 a la 15.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 5,Seiten 14 bis 15.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 6 bis 15.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 5,pagine da 14 a 15. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 6 a 15.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到 MFP(A) 上时,请参见 P1-P5, P14-P15。 安装到 MFP(B) 上时,请参见 P6-P15。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 . MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~5 페이지 ,14 페이지 ~15 페이지를 참조하십시오 . MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 6 페이지 ~15 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 MFP(A) に設置する場合;1ページ~5ページ、14ページ~15ページ MFP(B) に設置する場合;6ページ~15ページ



- $\overbrace{\text{ENG}}$ Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- (IT) Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- **CN** 如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- **JP** 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。















Α















1

- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- (JP) 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。









В

































A B



English

Adjusting the stapling position

- 1. Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.
- 2. Make a test copy using staple mode (double stapled).
- **3.** Check whether the stapling position is off-center. If the staple position is off-center, follow the procedure below to adjust the position. <Reference value> 78.5 mm ± 2.5 mm from the center of the paper

Français

Ajustement de la position d'agrafage

- 1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
- 2. Procéder à une copie d'essai en mode agrafage (double agrafage).
- 3. Vérifier que la position d'agrafage n'est pas en décalage. Si la position d'agrafage est décalée, la régler en procédant de la manière suivante. <Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier

Español

Ajuste de la posición de grapado

- 1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina al receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.
- 2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapado (grapado doble).
- 3. Compruebe si la posición de grapado está descentrada. Si la posición de grapado está descentrada, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
 - <Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel

Deutsch

Justage der Heftposition

- 1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Gauptschalter ein.
- 2. Erstellen Sie eine Probekopie im Heftmodus (doppelt geheftet).
- 3. Prüfen Sie, ob die Heftposition außermittig ist. Falls die Heftposition außermittig ist, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.
- <Bezugswert> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

Italiano

Regolazione della posizione di pinzatura

- 1. Collegare la spina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.
- 2. Eseguire una copia di prova utilizzando la modalità di spillatura con punti metallici (spillatura doppia).
- 3. Verificare che la posizione di spillatura non sia fuori centro. Se la posizione di spillatura è fuori centro, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.
 - <Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

简体中文

调节装订位置

- 1. 将机器上的电源插头插入电源插座中, 打开主电源开关。
- 2. 在装订模式(2点固定)下进行测试复印。
- 3. 确认装订位置的中心偏差。装订位置偏离中心时,按以下步骤进行调节。
- <基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm±2.5mm

한국어

스테이플 위치 조정

- 1. 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다.
- 2. 스테이플 모드 (2 곳) 에서 시험복사를 합니다.
- 3. 스테이플 위치의 센터 어긋남을 확인합니다 . 스테이플 위치가 중심에서 벗어난 경우 , 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .
- <기준치> 용지 센터에서 78.5mm±2.5mm

日本語

ステープル位置の調整

- 1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 2. ステープルモード(2箇所止め)でテストコピーを行う。
- 3. ステープル位置のセンターずれを確認する。ステープル位置が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。 <基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm±2.5mm

(a)	(b)	
 4. Set the maintenance mode U246 and select [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. 5. Adjust the values. If the paper is stapled too close to the front of the machine (a): Increase the setting value. If the paper is stapled too close to the rear of the machine (b): Decrease the setting value. Amount of change per step: 0.1 mm 	 6. Press the [Start] key to confirm the setting value. 7. Perform a test copy. 8. Repeat steps 4 to 7 until the staple position is within the reference value. < Reference value> 78.5 mm ± 2.5 mm from the center of the paper 	
 4. Passez en mode maintenance U246 et sélectionnez [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. 5. Régler les valeurs. Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'avant de la machine (a): augmenter la valeur de réglage. Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'arrière de la machine (b): réduire la valeur de réglage. Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,1 mm 	 6. Appuyer sur la touche de [Départ] pour confirmer la valeur de réglage. 7. Effectuer une copie de test. 8. Recommencer les étapes 4 à 7 jusqu'à ce que la position d'agrafe soit conforme à la valeur de référence. <valeur de="" référence=""> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier</valeur> 	
 4. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U246 y seleccione [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. 5. Ajuste los valores. Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina (a): aumente el valor de configuración. Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte posterior de la máquina (b): disminuya el valor de configuración. Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,1 mm 	 6. Pulse la tecla de [Inicio] para confirmar el valor de configuración. 7. Haga una copia de prueba. 8. Repita los pasos 4 a 7 hasta que la posición de grapado se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia. <valor de="" referencia=""> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel</valor> 	
 4. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 und wählen Sie [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. 5. Die Werte einstellen. Falls das Papier zu nahe am vorderen Rand des Geräts (a) abgestapelt wird: Vergrößern Sie den Stellwert. Falls das Papier zu nahe am hinteren Rand des Geräts (b) abgestapelt wird: Verkleinern Sie den Stellwert. Änderung pro Schrift: 0.1 mm 	 6. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der [Start]-Taste bestätigen. 7. Eine Testkopie erstellen. 8. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 7, bis die Heftposition im Bereich des Bezugswerts liegt. <bezugswert> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm von der Blattmitte</bezugswert> 	
 4. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, quindi selezionare [Fin- isher] > [Staple HP]. 5. Regolare i valori. Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte anteriore della mac- china (a): Aumentare il valore di impostazione. Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte posteriore della mac- china (b): Diminuire il valore di impostazione. Entità modifica per passo: 0,1 mm 	 6. Premere il tasto di [Avvio] per confermare il valore dell'impostazione. 7. Eseguire una copia di prova. 8. Ripetere i passi 4 to 7 finché la posizione di spillatura risulta all'interno del valore di riferimento. <valore di="" riferimento=""> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio</valore> 	
 4. 进入维修保养模式 U246, 把 [Finisher]>[Staple HP]。 5. 调整设定值。 装订位置向机器前部偏移时 (a):调高设定值。 装订位置向机器后部偏移时 (b):调低设定值。 设定值的一个调整单位变化量:0.1mm 	 6. 按[开始]键, 以确定设定值。 7. 进行测试复印。 8. 重复步骤4~7,直到装订位置在基准范围内为止。 <基准值> 距离纸张中心78.5mm±2.5mm 	
 4. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 설정하고 [Finisher] > [Staple HP] 를 선택 합니다. 5. 설정치를 조정합니다. 스테이플 위치가 기기앞측으로 벗어난 경우 (a):설정치를 높입니다. 스테이플 위치가 기기뒷측으로 벗어난 경우 (b):설정치를 낮춥니다. 1 스텝당 변화량:0.1mm 	 6. [복사 / 시작] 키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다. 7. 시험복사를 합니다. 8. 스테이플 위치가 기준치내가 될 때까지 순서 4 ~ 7 을 반복합니다. <기준치 > 용지 센터에서 78.5mm±2.5mm 	
 メンテナンスモードU246 をセットし、[Finisher] > [Staple HP] を 選択する。 設定値を調整する。 ステープル位置が機械前側にずれている場合(a):設定値を上げる。 ステープル位置が機械後側にずれている場合(b):設定値を下げる。 1 ステップ当たりの変化量:0.1mm 	 6. [スタート]キーを押し、設定値を確定する。 7. テストコピーを行う。 8. ステープル位置が基準値内になるまで、手順4~7を繰り返す。 <基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm±2.5mm 	

A B

AK-740 / (Bridge unit) Installation Guide



MT-730 / (Mailbox) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

MT-730(B)



English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages. When installing to a document finisher, see Page 1 to Page 6. When installing to a Printer, see Page 7 to Page 12.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Lors de l'installation sur un module finition de documents, voir Page 1 à Page 6. Lors de l'installation sur une imprimante, voir Page 7 à Page 12.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un finalizador de documentos, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 6. Para la instalación con una impresora, consulte las páginas de la 7 a la 12.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem Dokumentenfinisher siehe Seiten 1 bis 6.

Bei Installation an einem Drucker siehe Seiten 7 bis 12.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Quando si installa un finisher documenti, vedere le pagine da 1 a 6. Quando si installa una stampante, vedere le pagine da 7 a 12.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到装订器时,请参见第1~6页。 安装到打印机时,请参见第7~12页。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 . 문서 피니셔에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~6 페이지를 참조하십시오 . 프린터에 설치하는 경우 7 페이지 ~12 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 ドキュメントフィニッシャーに設置する場合;1 ページ~6 ページ プリンターに設置する場合;7 ページ~12 ページ

		E (M4x12) D
English Supplied parts A. Mailbox 1 B. Front mounting plate cover 1 C. Rear mounting plate cover 1 D. Copy eject bins 7	E. M4 × 12 screw2 F. Tray name label (for users)1	Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
Français Pièces fournies A. Boîte à lettres 1 B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant1 C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière D. Case d'éjection de copies	 E. Vis M4 × 12	Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhé- sive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
Español Partes suministradas A. Buzón de correo	 E. Tornillo M4 × 12	Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o mate- rial amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
Deutsch Enthaltene Teile A. Mailbox 1 B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1 C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1 D. Kopienausgabefächer 7	E. Schraube M4 × 122 F. Fachnamenaufkleber (für Benutzer) 1	Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
Italiano Parti fornite A. Mailbox 1 B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore 1 C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore. 1 D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie 7	E. Vite M4 × 122 F. Etichetta di nome del vassoio (per utenti)1	Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
简体中文 附属品 A. 邮箱	E. M4×12 螺丝 2 F. 托盘名称标贴(用户用) 1	如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭 下。
한국어 동봉품 A. 메일박스	E. 나사 M4 × 122 F. 트레이 명칭 씰 (사용자용)1	동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .
日本語 同梱品 A. メールボックス	E. ビス M4×122 F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用)1	ーープ、緩衝材が付いている場合 は必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1.Remove the front top cover (2) and rear top cover (3) at the top of the finisher (1) using a flatblade screwdriver or the like.

Procédure

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Procedimiento

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared. 1.Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (2) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (3) situés en haut du retoucheur (1) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

1.Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (2) y la cubierta superior trasera (3) en la parte superior del finalizador (1) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

1. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (2) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (3) an der

1. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (2) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (3) dalla parte

superiore del finitore (1) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

Oberseite des Finishers (1) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

Verfahren

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

Procedura

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

安装步骤

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关,并从墙壁插 座拔下电源插头。 1. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器(1)上部的顶罩前盖板(2)和顶罩后盖板(3)。

설치순서

설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스 위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리 하십시오 . 1. 피니셔 (1) 상부의 윗커버 앞 덮개 (2), 윗커버 뒤 덮개 (3) 를 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 제거합니 다.

取付手順

必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機 械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業するこ と。 1. フィニッシャー(1)上部の天カバー前フタ(2)、天カバー後フタ(3) をマイナスドライバーな どで取り外す。



2. Fit the hooks (4) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (5) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (1) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (1).
 Note:

Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.

2. Insérer les crochets (4) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (5) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (1) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (1).

Remarque:

Nota:

Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine.

2. Coloque los ganchos (4) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (5) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (1), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (1). Nota:

Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.

2.Setzen Sie die Haken (4) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (5) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (1) an. Hinweis:

Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet.

2. Inserire i ganci (4) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della mailbox (A), negli incavi (5) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (1) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la mailbox (A) al finitore (1).

Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina.

2. 如图所示,将位于邮箱(A)底部前后侧的卡扣(4)嵌入位于装订器(1)顶部前后侧的凹口(5),并将邮箱(A)安装至装订器(1)。注:

轻轻向上提升邮箱(A)的前后侧,确保邮箱(A)未处于悬浮状态。

2. 메일박스 (A) 하부의 앞뒤에 있는 후크 (4) 를 피니셔 (1) 상부의 앞뒤에 있는 파인 홈에 (5) 에 일러스트와 같이 삽입하고 메일박스 (A) 를 피니셔측에 장착합니다 . 주

메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합니다 .

メールボックス(A)の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス(A)が浮かないことを確認する。

メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (4) をフィニッシャー(1) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (5) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー(1) に取り付ける。
 注意






9. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (10) into the round holes (11) at the front and rear of the mailbox.	10. Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.
9. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut. Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légèrement cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (10) dans les trous ronds (11) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.	10. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.
9. Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (10) en los orificios redondos (11) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.	10. Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.
 9. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten. Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (10) in die Rundlöcher (11) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen. 	10.Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.
 9. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto. Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (10) nei fori rotondi (11) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox. 	10. Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.
9. 从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(D)。 按住接纸盘(D)的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂,通过将前后的销钉(10)插入邮箱前后的圆孔(11) 中来安装接纸盘。	10. 将机器的电源插头插入插座, 然后打开主电 源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。
9. 배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 . 배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (10) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (11) 에 삽입합니다 .	10. 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합 니다 .
9. 排出ビン (D)7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。 排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (10) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (11) に挿入する。	10. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し 込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確 認する。

		E (M4x12) D
English Supplied parts A. Mailbox	E. M4 × 12 screw	Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
B. Front mounting plate cover 1 C. Rear mounting plate cover 1 D. Copy eject bins 7	B and C are not used.	
Français Pièces fournies A. Boîte à lettres1 B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant1	E. Vis M4 × 122 F. Étiquette de nom de plateau (pour les utilisateurs)1	Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhé- sive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière 1 D. Case d'éjection de copies	B et C ne sont pas utilisés.	
Español Partes suministradas A. Buzón de correo	E. Tornillo M4 × 12	Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o mate- rial amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
Deutsch Enthaltene Teile A. Mailbox 1 B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1 C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1 D. Kopienausgabefächer 7	 E. Schraube M4 × 12	Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
Italiano Parti fornite A. Mailbox B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore 1	 E. Vite M4 × 12	Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
 C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore. 1 D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie	B e C non sono utilizzati.	
简体中文 附属品 A. 邮箱	 E. M4×12 螺丝	如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭 下。
D. 文律秋前血板 1 C. 支撑板后盖板 1 D. 接纸盘 7	个使用 B 和 C。	
한국어 동봉품 A. 메일박스1 B. 부착파커버 앞 1	E. 나사 M4 × 122 F. 트레이 명칭 씰 (사용자용)1	동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .
C. 부착판커버 뒤 1 D. 배출핀	ㅂ꽈 C 는 사용되시 않습니나 .	
日本語 同梱品 A. メールボックス1	E. ビス M4×122 F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用)1	同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合 は、必ず取り外すこと。
 B. 取付板カバー前	B,Cは使用しない。	

Note

The Attachment Kit(AK-736) must be installed before the mailbox is installed.

Procedure

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

Remarque

L'Attachment Kit (AK-736) doit être installé avant d'installer la boîte à lettres.

Procédure Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Nota

El Attachment Kit (AK-736) se debe instalar antes de la instalación del buzón de correo.

Procedimiento

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

Hinweis

Vorgehensweise

Das Attachment Kit (AK-736) muss vor der Installation der Mailbox installiert werden.

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

Nota	Procedura
Installare l'Attachment Kit (AK-736) prima di	Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.
installare il vassoio mailbox.	

注

在安装邮箱前,请先安装连接组件(AK-736)。

安装步骤 安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关,并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

	۰.	-	
-	r		

메일박스를 설치하기 전에 부착 키트 (AK-736) 를 설치해야 합니다 .

설치순서

取付手順

설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십 시오.

注意

メールボックスを取付ける前にアタッチメント キット (AK-736) の取付けをおこなうこと。

必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。



Insert the hooks (1) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (2) of the machine and attach the mailbox (A) to the machine.
 Note

Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.



2.Secure the mailbox (A) using the two screws M4x12 (E).

 1. Insérer les crochets (1) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière du fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (2) de la machine et fixer la boîte aux lettres (A) à la machine. Remarque Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine. 	2. Fixer la boîte à lettres (A) à l'aide de deux vis M4x12 (E).
 1. Inserte los enganches (1) que se encuentran en la parte frontal y trasera de la parte inferior del buzón de correo (A) en las hendiduras (2) de la máquina y acople el buzón de correo (A) a la máquina. Nota Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.	2.Fije el buzón de correo (A) con dos tornillos M4x12 (E).
 1.Führen Sie die Haken (1), die sich hinten und vorne an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aufnahmen (2) des Geräts ein und befestigen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Gerät. Hinweis Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet. 	2.Sichern Sie die Mailbox (A) mit zwei Schrauben M4x12 (E).
 1. Inserire i ganci (1) posti sul fronte e sul retro della sezione inferiore della mailbox (A) negli incavi (2) presenti sulla macchina e fissare la mailbox (A) sulla macchina. Nota Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina. 	2.Fissare la mailbox(A) utilizzando le due viti M4x12 (E).
 将位于邮箱(A)底部前、后侧的挂钩(1)插入机器的凹槽(2),然后将邮箱(A)安装至机器。 注 轻轻向上提升邮箱(A)的前后侧,确保邮箱(A)未处于悬浮状态。 	2. 使用两个螺丝 M4x12(E)固定邮箱(A)。
 메일박스 (A) 의 전후면 하단에 있는 후크 (1) 를 본체의 노치 (2) 에 삽입하여 메일박스 (A) 를 본 체에 부착합니다. 주 메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합 니다. 	2. M4x12 나사 (E) 두 개를 사용하여 메일박스 (A) 를 고정합니다 .
 メールボックス(A)下部の前後にあるフック(1)を機械本体の切り欠き(2)に挿入し、メールボックス(A)を機械本体に取り付ける。 注意 メールボックス(A)の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス(A)が浮かないことを確認する。 	2. ビス M4×12(E)2 本で、メールボックス (A) を固定する。

3. Remove the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).	 4. Remove the wire saddle (4). 5. Plug the connector (5) of the mailbox (A) into the connector (6) of the machine body. 6. Install the wire saddle (4) in the position as shown in the figure. 7. Reinstall the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).
3. Retirer le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).	 4. Retirer le serre-câble (4). 5. Brancher le connecteur (5) de la boîte à lettres (A) dans le connecteur (6) du corps de la machine. 6. Installer le serre-câble (4) dans la position illustrée sur la figure. 7. Remonter le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).
3. Quite la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).	 4. Retire la abrazadera del cable (4). 5. Enchufe el conector (5) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (6) del cuerpo de la máquina. 6. Instale la abrazadera del cable (4) en la posición que se muestra en la imagen. 7. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).
3.Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A).	 4. Entfernen Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4). 5. Stecken Sie den Stecker (5) der Mailbox (A) in die Steckbuchse (6) des Gerätegehäuses. 6. Installieren Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4) an der im Bild gezeigten Position. 7. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A) wieder an.
3.Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).	 4. Rimuovere l'unità sella (4). 5. Collegare il connettore (5) della mailbox (A) al connettore (6) del corpo macchina. 6. Installare l'unità sella (4) nella posizione indicata in figura. 7. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).
3. 拆下邮箱(A)的后部盖板(3)。	 4. 取下束线夹(4)。 5. 将邮箱(A)的接插件(5)插入机器的接插件(6)。 6. 把束线夹(4)安装到图示位置。 7. 重新安装邮箱(A)的后盖板(3)。
3. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 떼어냅니다 .	4. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 분리합니다 . 5. 메일박스 (A) 의 커넥터 (5) 를 본체의 커넥터 (6) 에 연결합니다 . 6. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 그림에 표시된 위치에 설치합니다 . 7. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 다시 장착합니다 .
3. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(3) を取り 外す。	4. ワイヤーサドル (4) を外す。 5. メールボックス (A) のコネクター(5) を機械本体のコネクター (6) に接続する。 6. ワイヤーサドル (4) を図の位置に取り付ける。 7. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(3) を元通りに取り付ける。

8.Install the left cover (Y) in place.	 9. Using the two screws (102) removed in step 2 in the installation guide for the AK-736, install the right cover (Z). *While pressing the right cover(Z) downwards, fix the right cover(J).
8.Monter le couvercle gauche (Y) en position.	 9. À l'aide des deux vis (102) retirées à l'étape 2 du guide d'installation pour l'AK-736, installer le capot droit (Z). *Fixer le capot droit (Z) en le maintenant enfoncé vers le bas.
8. Instale la cubierta izquierda (Y) en la ubicación prevista.	 9. Con los dos tornillos (102) que quitó en el paso 2 de la guía de instalación para AK-736, instale la cubierta derecha (Z). *A la vez que ejerce presión sobre la cubierta derecha (Z), fije la cubierta derecha (Z).
8.Installieren Sie die linke Abdeckung (Y).	 9. Mit den zwei Schrauben (102), die Sie in Schritt 2 der Installationsanleitung für das AK-736 entfernt haben, bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) wieder an. *Drücken Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) leicht nach unten, während Sie diese befestigen.
8.Installare il coperchio di sinistra (Y) in posizione.	 9. Utilizzando le due viti (102) rimosse al punto 2 della procedura descritta nella guida di installazione del kit AK-736, installare il coperchio destro (Z). *Premere verso il basso il coperchio destro (Z) per fissarlo in posizione.
8. 将左盖板 (Y) 安装到位。	 9.请用 AK-736 安装手册步骤 2 中取下的 2 颗螺丝(102)来安装右盖板(Z)。 *把右盖板(Z) 边向下按,边固定。
8. 좌측 커버 (Y) 를 제자리에 장착합니다 .	9. AK-736 설치 설명서의 2 단계에서 분리한 나사 (102) 두 개를 사용하 여 우측 커버 (Z) 를 장착합니다 . * 우측 커버 (Z) 를 아래쪽으로 누르는 동시에 우측 커버 (Z) 를 고정하 십시오 .
8. 左カバー(Y) を取り付ける。	 9. AK-736 設置手順書の手順2で外したビス(102)2本で、右カバー(Z)を 取付ける。 * 右カバー(Z)を下方向に押さえながら、固定する。



10. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.

Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (7) into the round holes (8) at the front and rear of the mailbox.



11.Close the paper conveying unit(101).

12. Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.

10	Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut. Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légère- ment cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (7) dans les trous ronds (8) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.	 11. Fermer l'unité de transport du papier (101). 12. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.
10	Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (7) en los orificios redondos (8) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.	 11. Cierre la unidad de transporte de papel(101). 12. Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.
10	Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten. Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (7) in die Rundlöcher (8) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen.	 11. Schließen Sie die Papierführung (101). 12. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.
10	Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto. Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da pie- garlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (7) nei fori rotondi (8) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox.	 11. Chiudere l'unità trasporto carta (101). 12. Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.
10.	从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(D)。 按住接纸盘(D)的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂,通过将前后的销钉(7)插入邮箱前后的圆孔(8)中 来安装接纸盘。	 11. 关闭纸张传输单元(101)。 12. 将机器的电源插头插入插座,然后打开主电源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。
10.	배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 . 배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (7) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (8) 에 삽 입합니다 .	11. 반송 유니트 (101) 를 닫습니다 . 12. 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합 니다 .
10.	排出ビン (D)7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。 排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (7) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (8) に挿入する。	 11. 搬送ユニット(101)を閉じる。 12. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを 0N にして動作を確認する。

PH-7A/C/D / (Punch unit) Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

PH-7A/PH-7B/PH-7C/PH-7D





English Supplied parts A. Punch quide	E. Spring	L. Large clamp (for DF-790)
B. Hole punch unit	H. M3 × 8 tap Tight S screw	material from supplied parts.
Français Pièces fournies A. Guide de perforatrice B. Perforatrice 1 C. Moteur 1 D. Bague d'arrêt	E. Ressort 1 F. PWB de la perforatrice. 1 G. Bac de récupération de la perforatrice. 1 H. Vis S taraudée M3 × 8 3 I. Feuillet d'étiquettes. 1 J. Film 1 K. Petit collier (pour DF-770). 1	L. Grand collier (pour DF-790)
Español Partes suministradas A. Guía de perforación	E. Resorte 1 F. PWB de perforación 1 G. Caja para desechos de la perforación 1 H. Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 3 I. Hoja con etiqueta 1 J. Película 1 K. Sujetador pequeño (para DF-770) 1	L. Sujetador grande (para DF-790) 1 M. Núcleo de ferrita 1 Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministra- das.
Deutsch Gelieferte Teile A. Locherführung B. Lochereinheit 1 C. Motoreinheit 1 D. Anschlagring	E. Feder 1 F. Locher-PWB 1 G. Lochungsabfallbehälter 1 H. M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 3 I. Aufkleberbogen 1 J. Film 1 K. Kleine Klemme (für DF-770) 1	L. Große Klemme (für DF-790)
Italiano Parti di fornitura A. Guida perforazione B. Unità di perforazione 1 C. Unità motore 1 D. Anello di bloccaggio	E. Molla1F. Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione1G. Scarto perforazione1H. Viti con testa a croce S M3 × 83I. Foglio di etichette1J. Pellicola1K. Morsetto piccolo (per DF-770)1	L. Morsetto grande (per DF-790)1 M. Nucleo di ferrite1 Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
简体中文 附属品 A. 打孔导向板	E. 弹簧 1 F. 打孔单元电路板 1 G. 打孔纸屑盒 1 H. M3 X 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 3 I. 标签纸 1 J. 胶片 1	 K. 固定夹 小 (DF-770 用)
한국어 동봉품 A. 펀치가이드	E. 스프링	K. 클램프 소 (DF-770 용) 1 L. 클램프 대 (DF-790 용) 1 M. 페라이트 코어 1 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경 우에는 반드시 제거할 것.



If installing on the DF-790, proceed to step 1 on

1.Remove the screw (1) and remove the small

page 3.

rear cover (2).



upper rear cover (4).

Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

Procédure

Dépose du couvercle (DF-770) 2. Déposer les 2 vis (3) et déposer le couvercle Avant d'installer la perforatrice, s'assurer que Pour l'installation sur le modèle DF-790, passer supérieur arrière (4). l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est à l'étape 1 de la page 3. hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est 1. Déposer la vis (1) et déposer le petit couverdébranché de la prise secteur. cle arrière (2). Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice. Procedimiento Extracción de la cubierta (DF-770) 2. Quite los 2 tornillos (3) y, después, quite la Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que Si realiza la instalación en el DF-790, vaya al cubierta trasera superior (4). el interruptor principal de la alimentación paso 1 de la página 3. del MFP esté desconectado y de que el cable de ali-1. Quite el tornillo (1) y, después, quite la cubimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corrierta trasera pequeña (2). ente de la pared. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora. Entfernen der Abdeckung (DF-770) Verfahren 2. Die 2 Schrauben (3) entfernen und die obere Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit Zur Installation des DF-790 weitergehen zu hintere Abdeckung (4) abnehmen. beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Schritt 1 auf Seite 3 Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und 1.Die Schraube (1) entfernen und die kleine das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. hintere Abdeckung (2) abnehmen. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an. Procedura Rimozione del coperchio (DF-770) 2. Rimuovere le 2 viti (3) e quindi rimuovere il Prima di installate l'unità di perforazione, assicu-Se si installa sull'unità DF-790, procedere al pannello superiore posteriore (4). rarsi che l'interruttore principale dell'MFP sia passo 1 a pagina 3. 1.Rimuovere la vite (1) e quindi rimuovere il spento e che il cavo di alimentazione sia scollegato dalla presa di corrente. pannello posteriore piccolo (2). Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione. 安装步骤 拆下盖板 (DF-770 时) 2. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (3), 拆下后上部盖板 (4)。 安装打孔单元时,必须事先关闭 MFP 主机的主电 安装到 DF-790 上时, 跳至 P3 的步骤 1。 1. 拆除1颗螺丝(1),拆下后部小盖板(2)。 源开关,并拔下电源插头后再进行作业。 首先安装装订器,然后安装打孔单元。 2. 나사 (3) 2 개를 제거하고 뒷 상커버 (4) 를 설치순서 커버제거 (DF-770 의 경우) 펀치유니트를 부착할 때에는 반드시 MFP 본체 DF-790 에 장착하는 경우에는 P3 의 순서 1 로 제거합니다. 의 주 전원 스위치를 OFF 로 하고 전원플러그를 진행합니다 1. 나사 (1) 1 개를 제거하고 뒷 소커버 (2) 를

뺀 다음 작업을 할 것 . 문서 피니셔를 설치 후 , 펀치유니트를 설치 할 것.

取付手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本 体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを 抜いてから作業すること。 ドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置後、パンチ ユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し(DF-770の場合) DF-790に装着の場合は、P3の手順1へ進む。 1. ビス (1)1 本を外し、後小カバー(2) を取り 外す。

제거합니다.

2. ビス (3)2 本を外し、後上カバー(4) を取り 外す。





4. After using alcohol to clean the shaded portion (38) of the motor shown for adhering the film (J), adhere the film.

4. Après avoir utilisé de l'alcool pour nettoyer la partie du moteur hachurée (38) sur laquelle le film (J) est apposé, coller ce film.

4. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la parte sombreada (38) del motor mostrada en la ilustración para pegar la película (J), pegue la película.

4. Den in der Abbildung grau dargestellten Teil (38) des Motors zum Anbringen des Films (J) mit Alkohol reinigen und dann den Film anbringen.

4. Dopo aver usato l'alcool per pulire la parte ombreggiata (38) del motore, illustrata per l'adesione della pellicola (J), far aderire la pellicola.

4. 用酒精清洁电机斜侧处(38)的粘贴位置后,粘贴胶片(J)。

4. 모터 사선부 (38) 의 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 필름 (J) 을 부착합니다 .

4. モーター斜線部(38)の貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、フィルム(J)を貼り付ける。



5.Install the punch guide (A) so that the leading edge of the guide (11) is below the document fin-isher frame (12).



6.Insert the hole punch unit (B) into the document finisher.

5. Monter le guide de la perforatrice (A) de sorte que le bord d'attaque du guide (11) se trouve sous le bâti du retoucheur de document (12).	 Insérer la perforatrice (B) dans le retoucheur de document.
5.Instale la guía de perforación (A) de forma tal que el borde delantero de la guía (11) quede debajo de la carcasa del finalizador de documentos (12).	 6.Inserte la perforadora (B) en el finalizador de documentos.
 5.Die Locherführung (A) so einsetzen, dass die Vorderkante der Führung (11) unter dem Rahmen (12) des Dokument-Finishers liegt. 	6.Die Lochereinheit (B) in den Dokument-Fin- isher einsetzen.
 Installare la guida perforazione (A) in modo che il bordo principale della guida (11) sia sotto il telaio (12) della finitrice di documenti. 	6. Inserire l'unità di perforazione (B) nella fini- trice di documenti.
5. 将打孔导向板 (A) 的前端 (11) 安装在装订器的框架 (12) 的下部。	6. 将打孔单元 (B) 插入到装订器中。
5. 펀치가이드 (A) 의 끝 (11) 이 문서 피니셔의 프레임 (12) 밑으로 되도록 장착합니다 .	6. 펀치유니트 (B) 를 문서 피니셔에 삽입합니 다
5. パンチガイド (A) の先端 (11) がドキュメントフィニッシャーのフレーム (12) の下になるよう	6. パンチユニット (B) をドキュメントフィ



7.Raise the hole punch unit (B) slightly and fit the hook (13) on the motor unit (C) into the groove (14) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the rod (15) on the motor unit (C) into the hole (16) in the hole punch unit (B).





7.Lever légèrement la perforatrice (B) et insérer le crochet (13) du moteur (C) dans la rainure (14) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la tige (15) du moteur (C) dans le trou (16) de la perforatrice (B).	8. Fixer le moteur (C) à l'aide de 2 vis (H).
7.Levante ligeramente la perforadora (B) y encaje el gancho (13) de la unidad motriz (C) en la ranura (14) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte la varilla (15) de la unidad motriz (C) en el orificio (16) de la perforadora (B).	8.Asegure la unidad motriz (C) con los 2 tornil- los (H).
7.Die Lochereinheit (B) leicht anheben und den Haken (13) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Nut (14) des Dokument-Finishers einsetzen. Dabei auch die Stange (15) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Öffnung (16) der Lochereinheit (B) einstecken.	8.Die Motoreinheit (C) mit den 2 Schrauben (H) sichern.
7.Sollevare leggermente l'unità di perforazione (B) ed inserire il gancio (13) sull'unità motore (C) nella scanalatura (14) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire l'asta (15) sull'unità motore (C) nel foro (16) dell'unità di perforazione (B).	8.Fissare l'unità motore (C) con le 2 viti (H).
7. 稍稍抬起打孔单元 (B),将电机单元 (C) 的卡扣 (13) 嵌入装订器的沟槽 (14) 内。与此同时,将电 机单元 (C) 的轴 (15) 插入打孔单元 (B) 的孔 (16) 中。	8. 使用 2 颗螺丝 (H) 来固定电机单元 (C)。
7. 펀치유니트 (B) 를 조금 들면서 모터유니트 (C) 후크 (13) 를 문서 피니셔의 구 (14) 에 꽂습니다 . 이것과 동시에 모터유니트 (C) 의 축 (15) 을 펀치유니트 (B) 구멍 (16) 에 삽입합니다 .	8. 나사 (H) 2 개로 모터유니트 (C) 를 고정합니 다 .
7. パンチユニット (B) を少し持ち上げながら、モーターユニット (C) のフック (13) をドキュメン トフィニッシャーの溝 (14) にはめ込む。これと同時に、モーターユニット (C) の軸 (15) をパン チユニット (B) の穴 (16) に挿入する。	8. ビス (H)2 本で、モーターユニット (C) を固 定する。

9. Fit the stop ring (D) over the motor unit rod (15) and fit the spring (E) between the hole punch unit and motor unit.	 10. Run the hole punch unit wire (17) through the motor unit edging (18). 11. Plug the wire from the hole punch unit motor into the connector on the motor unit (19). 	
9.Monter la bague d'arrêt (D) sur la tige du moteur (15) et insérer le ressort (E) entre la perforatrice et le moteur.	 10.Faire passer le câble de la perforatrice (17) dans le passage de câbles du moteur (18) 11.Raccorder le câble du moteur de la perforatrice au connecteur du moteur (19). 	
 9. Coloque el anillo de tope (D) sobre la varilla de la unidad motriz (15) y coloque el resorte (E) entre la perforadora y la unidad motriz. 	 10. Tienda el cable de la perforadora (17) a través de la pestaña de la unidad motriz (18). 11. Enchufe el cable del motor de la perforadora al conector de la unidad motriz (19). 	
9. Den Anschlagring (D) auf die Stange (15) der Motoreinheit setzen und die Feder (E)	10. Das Kabel (17) der Lochereinheit durch den Kantenschutz (18) der Motoreinheit führen.	
zwischen Lochereinneit und Motoreinneit einsetzen.	 Das Kabel vom Motor der Lochereinheit an den Steckverbinder der Motoreinheit (19) anschließen. 	
 2Wischen Lochereinneit und Motoreinneit einsetzen. 9.Inserire l'anello di bloccaggio (D) sull'asta (15) dell'unità motore ed inserire molla (E) tra l'unità di perforazione e l'unità motore. 	 11. Das Kabel vom Motor der Lochereinheit an den Steckverbinder der Motoreinheit (19) anschließen. 10. Far passare il cavo dell'unità di perforazione (17) attraverso il bordo (18) dell'unità motore. 11. Collegare il cavo dal motore dell'unità di per- forazione nel connettore sull'unità motore (19). 	
 2Wischen Löchereinneit und Motoreinneit einsetzen. 9. Inserire l'anello di bloccaggio (D) sull'asta (15) dell'unità motore ed inserire molla (E) tra l'unità di perforazione e l'unità motore. 9. 将止动环 (D) 嵌入到电机单元的轴 (15) 上, 在打孔单元与电机单元之间安装弹簧 (E)。 	 11. Das Kabel vom Motor der Lochereinheit an den Steckverbinder der Motoreinheit (19) anschließen. 10. Far passare il cavo dell'unità di perforazione (17) attraverso il bordo (18) dell'unità motore. 11. Collegare il cavo dal motore dell'unità di perforazione nel connettore sull'unità motore (19). 10. 将打孔单元的电线 (17) 穿过电机单元的包边 孔 (18)。 11. 将来自打孔单元的电机的电线与电机单元的 接插件 (19) 相连接。 	
2Wischen Lochereinneit und Motoreinneit einsetzen. 9. Inserire l'anello di bloccaggio (D) sull'asta (15) dell'unità motore ed inserire molla (E) tra l'unità di perforazione e l'unità motore. 9. 将止动环 (D) 嵌入到电机单元的轴 (15) 上, 在打孔单元与电机单元之间安装弹簧 (E)。 9. 모터유니트 축 (15) 에 스톱링 (D) 을 꽂고 편 치유니트와 모터유니트 사이에 스프링 (E) 을설치합니다.	 Das Kabel vom Motor der Lochereinheit an den Steckverbinder der Motoreinheit (19) anschließen. Far passare il cavo dell'unità di perforazione (17) attraverso il bordo (18) dell'unità motore. Collegare il cavo dal motore dell'unità di per- forazione nel connettore sull'unità motore (19). 将打孔单元的电线 (17) 穿过电机单元的包边 孔 (18)。 将来自打孔单元的电机的电线与电机单元的 接插件 (19) 相连接。 更치유니트의 전선 (17) 을 모터유니트의 에 징 (18) 에 지나가게 합니다. 更치유니트 모터에서의 전선을 모터유니트 커넥터 (19) 에 접속합니다. 	



12. パンチ基板 (F) のフック (20)2 箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (21) に引っ掛け る。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (22) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (23) に入れる。

13. ビス(H)1本で、パンチユニットのアース線(24)とパンチ基板(F)を共締めする。





18. Replace the upper rear cover (4) and small	19. Open the upper front cover (28) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).
rear cover (2).	

18.Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (4) et le petit couvercle arrière (2).	19. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (28) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).
18. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior	19. Abra la cubierta delantera superior (28) e inserte la caja para desechos de la perforación (G).
(4) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (2).	
18. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (4) und die kle- ine hintere Abdeckung (2) wieder einsetzen.	19. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.
18. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (4) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (2).	19. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (28) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).
 18. 按原样安装后上部盖板(4)与后部小盖板(2)。 	19. 打开前上部盖板 (28), 插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。
18. 뒷 상커버 (4) 와 후 소커버 (2) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .	19. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .
18. 後上カバー(4) と後小カバー(2) を元通り取	19. 前上カバー(28) を開き、パンチくずボックス (G) を挿入する。

り付ける。



20. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet

 20. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: B, C..
 21. Close the upper front cover (28).

d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : B, C.		
21. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (28).		
21.Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) schließen.		
21. Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (28).		
21 . 关闭前上部盖板 (28)。		
21. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 닫습니다 .		

20. ラベルシート (J) 内の B、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。

21. 前上カバー(28) を閉じる。

21. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (28).



Installing the punch PWB and waste hole punch box (DF-790)

12. Fit the 2 hooks (29) in the punch PWB (F) into the cut (30) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the projection (32) on the document finisher into the hole (31) in the punch PWB (F).

13. Using the screw (H), tighten the hole punch unit ground wire (33) and the punch PWB (F) together.



14. Plug the 6 hole punch unit wires into the connectors (34) on the punch PWB (F).

 Installation de la PWB de la perforatrice et du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (DF-790). 12. Insérer les 2 crochets (29) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F) dans la découpe (30) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la saillie (32) du retoucheur de document dans le trou (31) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F). 13. Fixer le câble de terre de la perforatrice (33) à la PWB de la perforatrice (F) à l'aide d'une vis (H). 	14. Raccorder les 6 câbles de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (34) de la PWB de la perfora- trice (F).
 Instalación del PWB de perforación y la caja para desechos de la perforación (DF-790) 12. Coloque los 2 ganchos (29) del PWB de perforación (F) en el corte (30) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte el resalto (32) del finalizador de documentos en el orificio (31) del PWB de perforación (F). 13. Usando el tornillo (H), apriete juntos el cable de conexión a tierra de la perforadora (33) y el PWB de perforación (F). 	14. Enchufe los 6 cables de la perforadora a los conectores (34) del PWB de perforación (F).
 Installation der Locher-PWB und des Lochungsabfallbehälters (DF-790) 12. Die 2 Haken (29) in der Locher-PWB (F) in die Aussparung (30) am Dokument-Finisher einsetzen. Dabei auch den Vorsprung (32) am Dokument-Finisher in die Öffnung (31) auf der Locher-PWB (F) einsetzen. 13. Mit der Schraube (H) das Massekabel (33) der Lochereinheit an der Locher-PWB (F) festziehen. 	14. Die 6 Kabel der Lochereinheit an die Steck- verbinder (34) der Locher-PWB (F) anschließen.
 Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione e dello scarto perforazione (DF-790) 12. Inserire i 2 ganci (29) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F) nell'intaglio (30) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire la sporgenza (32) sulla finitrice di documenti nel foro (31) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F). 13. Utilizzando la vite (H), stringere insieme il cavo di terra (33) dell'unità di perforazione e la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F). 	14.Collegare i 6 cavi dell'unità di perforazione nei connettori (34) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).
 安装电路板与打孔纸屑盒(DF-790时) 12. 将打孔电路板(F)的2个卡扣(29)挂在装订器的缺口(30)上。同时,将打孔电路板(F)的孔(31)卡入装订器的突出部(32)。 13. 使用1颗螺丝(H)将打孔单元的接地线(33)与打孔电路板(F)一起固定。 	14. 将打孔单元的6根电线与打孔电路板(F)的接插件(34)相连接。
 기판과 펀치폐기박스의 부착 (DF-790 의 경우) 12. 펀치기판 (F) 의 후크 (29) 2 곳을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (30) 에 겁니다 . 동시에 펀치기판 (F) 구멍 (31) 을 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (32) 에 넣습니다 . 13. 나사 (H) 1 개로 펀치유니트의 접지선 (33) 과 펀치기판 (F) 을 함게 조입니다 . 	14. 펀치유니트의 전선 6 선을 펀치기판 (F) 커넥 터 (34) 에 접속합니다 .
基板とパンチくずボックスの取り付け(DF-790の場合) 12. パンチ基板 (F) のフック (29)2 箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (30) に引っ掛け	14 . パンチユニットの電線 6 本を、パンチ基板 (F) のコネクター(34) に接続する。

12. パンチ基板 (F) のフック (29)2 箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (30) に引っ掛ける。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (31) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (32) に入れる。
 13. ビス (H)1本で、パンチユニットのアース線 (33) とパンチ基板 (F) を共締めする。





18.Replace the upper rear cover (8) and small rear cover (6). **19.**Open the upper front cover (37) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).

18. Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (8) et le petit couvercle arrière (6).	19. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (37) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).
19 Vuelue e colocor la subjette tracere superior	10 Abra la subjerte delentere superior (27) e incerte la seja para desenhos de la perferección (C)
(8) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (6).	
 Die obere hintere Abdeckung (8) und die kle- ine hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder einsetzen. 	19. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.
18. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (8) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (6).	19. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (37) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).
18. 按原样安装后上部盖板 (8) 与后部小盖板 (6)。	19. 打开前上部盖板 (37), 插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。
18. 뒷 상커버 (8) 와 후 소커버 (6) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .	19. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .

18. 後上カバー(8) と後小カバー(6) を元通り取 19. 前上カバー(37) を開き、パンチくずボックス(G) を挿入する。 り付ける。



20. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: A, C. **21.** Close the upper front cover (37).

20. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : A, C.

21. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (37).

20. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (J) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: A, C.

21. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (37).

20. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (J) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: A, C.

21. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) schließen.

20. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (J) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: A, C. **21.** Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (37).

20. 用酒精清洁各区域后,请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上(J) 撕下的下列标签 A、C。 21. 关闭前上部盖板(37)。

20. 라벨 시트 (J) 내의 하기 라벨을 일러스트의 위치에 알코올청소 후 붙입니다:A, C. 21. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 닫습니다.

20. ラベルシート (J) 内の A、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。 **21**. 前上カバー(37) を閉じる。



[Adjusting the hole punch position]

1.Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on. 2. Make a test copy in punch mode.

3. If any off-centering is observed, follow the

procedure below to adjust the hole position.

Adjusting the hole punch entry registration

- 1.Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Regist. 2.Adjust the values.
- - When the paper fed in skewed copy example (a): Increase the setting value.
 - When the paper crimped copy example (b): Decrease the setting value.
- **3.**Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

 [Réglage de la position des perforations] 1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension. 2. Effectuer une copie d'essai en mode perforation. 3. Si les perforations sont décentrées, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation. 	 Réglage de l'enregistrement de l'entrée des perforations 1.Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Regist. 2.Régler les valeurs. Si le papier est alimenté de travers exemple de copie (a): Augmentez la valeur de réglage. Si le papier est froissé exemple de copie (b): Diminuez la valeur de réglage. 3.Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage. 	
 [Ajuste de la posición de perforación] 1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP. 2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de perforación. 3. Si observa descentrado, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero. 	 Ajuste del registro de entrada de perforación 1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Regist. 2. Ajuste los valores. Cuando el papel alimentado está torcido copia de muestra (a): Aumente el valor de configuración. Cuando el papel se dobló copia de muestra (b): Reduzca el valor de configuración. 3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración. 	
 [Einstellen der Lochungsposition] 1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein. 2. Eine Testkopie im Lochungsmodus erstellen. 3. Falls eine außermittige Lochung erfolgte, ist die Lochungsposition wie folgend nachzustellen. 	 Einstellen der Lochungsregistrierung 1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Regist. 2. Die Werte einstellen. Wenn Papier verkantet eingezogen wird Kopiebeispiel (a): Den Einstellwert erhöhen. Wenn Papier verknittert wird Kopiebeispiel (b): Den Einstellwert verringern. 3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen. 	
 [Regolazione di posizione dei fori di perforazione] 1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione. 2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità di perfora- zione. 3. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione. 	 Regolazione del registro del foro di perforazione 1.Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Regist. 2.Regolare i valori. Quando l'alimentazione della carta risulta obliqua esempio di copia (a): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. Quando la carta risulta increspata esempio di copia (b): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione. 3.Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione. 	
[打孔位置的调节] 1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中, 打开主电源开关。 2. 在打孔模式下进行测试复印。 3. 打孔位置有偏差时,按以下步骤进行调节。	 打孔装入定位调节 1. 设置维护模式 U246,选择 Finisher、Punch Regist。 2. 调整设定值。 纸张斜向搬运时的复印样本 (a): 调高设定值。 纸张作 Z 字折时的复印样本 (b): 调低设定值。 3. 按 Start 键,以确定设定值。 	
[펀치위치의 조정] 1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다. 2. 펀치모드에서 시험복사를 합니다. 3. 펀치위치가 벗어난 경우에는 다음 순서로 조 정합니다.	펀치반입 레지스트 조정 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Regist 를 선택합니다. 2. 설정치를 조정합니다. 용지가 경사로 반송되는 경우의 복사샘플 (a):설정치를 높입니다. 용지가 Z 꺾임이 있는 경의 복사샘플 (b):설정치를 내립니다. 3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.	
	パンチ搬入レジスト調整	

- 1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し 込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- 2. パンチモードでテストコピーを行う。
- 3. パンチ位置がずれていた場合、次の手順で調 整を行う。
- 用紙が斜めに搬送される場合コピーサンプル(a):設定値を上げる。

1. メンテナンスモードU246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Regist を選択する。

- 用紙が Z 折れする場合コピーサンプル(b):設定値を下げる。
- 3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

2. 設定値を調整する。

 Adjusting the hole punch position feed 1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Feed. 2. Adjust the values. If the punch hole position is closer to the edge than the reference value (c): Increase the setting value. If the punch hole position is further from the edge than the reference value (c): Decrease the setting value. 	3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value. <reference (c)="" value=""> Metric specification: 13 mm; Inch specification: 9.5 mm</reference>
 Réglage de la position du point de perforation 1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Feed. 2. Régler les valeurs. Si la perforation est plus proche du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Augmentez la valeur de réglage. Si la perforation est plus loin du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Diminuez la valeur de réglage. 	3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage. <valeur (c)="" de="" référence=""> Spécifications métriques: 13 mm; Spécifications en pouces: 9,5 mm</valeur>
 Ajuste de la alimentación de la posición de perforación 1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Feed. 2. Ajuste los valores. Si la posición de perforación está más cerca del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Aumente el valor de configuración. Si la posición de perforación está más alejada del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Reduzca el valor de configuración. 	 3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración. <valor (c)="" de="" referencia=""></valor> Sistema métrico: 13 mm; en pulgadas: 9,5 mm
 Einstellen des Transports der Lochungsposition 1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Feed. 2. Die Werte einstellen. Falls die Lochungsposition näher an der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert erhöhen. Falls die Lochungsposition ferner von der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert verringern. 	 Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen. <bezugswert (c)=""></bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand: 13 mm; Abstand in Zoll: 9,5 mm
 Regolazione spostamento di posizione dei fori di perforazione 1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Feed. 2. Regolare i valori. Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più vicina al bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più lontana dal bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione. 	 3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione. <valore (c)="" di="" riferimento=""></valore> Specificazione in unità metrica: 13 mm; Specificazione in pollici: 9,5 mm
 打孔位置搬运调节 1. 设置维护模式 U246,选择 Finisher、Punch Feed。 2. 调整设定值。 打孔位置比基准值 (c) 短时:调高设定值。 打孔位置比基准值 (c) 长时:调低设定值。 	 按 Start 键, 以确定设定值。 <基准值 (c) > 公制规格: 13mm、英制规格: 9.5mm
 펀치위치 반송조정 1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Feed 를 선택합니다. 2. 설정치를 조정합니다. 펀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 짧은 경우:설정치를 높입니다. 펀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 긴 경우:설정치를 내립니다. 	3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 . <기준치 (c) > 센치사양:13mm, 인치사양:9.5mm
 パンチ位置搬送調整 1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Feed を選択する。 2. 設定値を調整する。 パンチ穴の位置が基準値(c)より短い場合:設定値を上げる。 パンチ穴の位置が基準値(c)より長い場合:設定値を下げる。 	 スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。 <基準値(c) > センチ仕様:13mm、インチ仕様:9.5mm



NOTICE

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field. Machine: DF-770, DF-790

AVIS

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ. Modèle: DF-770, DF-790

AVISO

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente. Modelo: DF-770, DF-790

HINWEIS

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld. Modell: DF-770, DF-790

NOTIFICA

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio. Modello: DF-770, DF-790

注意

本产品适用于以下选购件。 安装时,请参照附带的说明书。 式样:DF-770,DF-790

주의

본 제품은 이하의 기종에 적용됩니다 . 설치할 때에는 동봉된 안내문을 참조해 주십시오 . 기종:DF-770,DF-790

注意 本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。 設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。 機種:DF-770, DF-790

DT-730(B) / (Document tray) Installation Guide





- (ENG) (I), (J) and (K) are not used. 1 piece of (D) will be left.
- (I), (J) et (K) ne sont pas utilisés. Une pièce de (D) sera laissée inutilisée.
- (I), (J) y (K) no se utilizan. Una parte de (D) debe dejarse.
- (DE) (I), (J) und (K) werden nicht verwendet. 1 Stück von (D) bleibt übrig.
- (I), (J) e (K) non vengono utilizzati. Rimarrà 1 pezzo di (D).
- **CN** 不使用(I),(J),(K)。 会剩余(D)1 个。
- (I),(J) 및 (K)가 사용되지 않습니다. (D) 피스 하나가 남게 됩니다.
- JP (I), (J), (K)は使用しません。 (D)は、1本余ります。





FAX System 12

Installation Guide

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

FAX System 12





English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 4.

For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 5 to Page 8.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 4. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 5 à Page 8.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 4. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 5 a la 8.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 4.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 5 bis 8.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 4. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 5 a 8.

简体中文

根据安装对象,安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。 安装到 MFP(A) 上时,请参见 P1-P4。 安装到 MFP(B) 上时,请参见 P5-P8。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다. MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~4 페이지를 참조하십시오. MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 5 페이지 ~8 페이지를 참조하십시오.

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。 MFP(A) に設置する場合;1ページ~4ページ MFP(B) に設置する場合;5ページ~8ページ


	100V	120V	230V	240V	110V	220V	220-240V
	Japan	North America/ Latin America	Europe	Australia/ New Zea- land	Taiwan	China	Asia/ Korea
Α	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
В	1	1	-	1	-	1	-
С	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
D	-	1	1	1	1	1	1
Е	-	-	-	1	-	-	-
F	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
G	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
Н	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
I	-	-	-	-	1	-	-
J	-	-	-	-	-	1	-









D					_	ABC	DEF
0	ABC	DEF			$\overline{\frown}$	\cap	$\overline{\frown}$
2 GHI	JKL	MNO					
3 PRS	TUV TUV	WXY	<u> </u>	\square			
©	OPER		<u> </u>		PRS		WXY
						OPER	\square
					\exists	\square	\square

- (Only when NK-7110/NK-7100 is installed) (Excluding 100 V models)
- (Iniquement lors de l'installation de NK-7110/NK-7100) (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V)
- (ES) (Solo si está instalada la unidad NK-7110/NK-7100) (A excepción de los modelos de 100 V)
- DE (Nur wenn NK-7110/NK-7100 installiert ist) (Ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle)
- (**r**) (Solo quando è installato NK-7110/NK-7100) (Esclusi i modelli da 100 V)
- CN (当设置 NK-7110/NK-7100 时) (100V 规格以外)
- ඟ (NK-7110/NK-7100 이 설치된 경우만) (100V사양 이외)



(When installing the Multiport)

(7)

- (FR) (En cas d'installation de la deuxième ligne de fax)
- (ES) (Al instalar la segunda línea de fax)
- (Wenn Sie eine zweite Fax-Karte installieren)
- (T) (Quando si installa la seconda linea Fax)
- (安装了多功能端口)
- (멀티포트를 설치하는 경우)
- (マルチポートを設置する場合)









(ENG)

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

- 1.If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to ini-tialize the FAX PWBs.
- 2.If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX ircuit board in OPT2)

Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the [Start] key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized. For details, see the service manual.

(FR)

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

- 1.Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
- 2.Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)

Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche [Départ] dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

ES

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1.Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se ini-cializan todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.

2.Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)

Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de [Inicio] en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

(DE)

Δ

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

- Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
- 2.Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leit-erplatte in OPT2 zu in7itialisieren)

OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die [Start]-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung

П

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

- 1.Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
- 2.Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inzializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)

Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto [Avvio] in guesto ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 e de eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

(CN)

传真电路板的初始化

- 1.当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时(全部的传真电路板初始化),执 行维修保养模式 U600, 初始化传真电路板。
- 2.在 OPT2 上增设时

(0PT2 的传真电路板初始化) 因此有关系的研究的机构的,因此有关的机构的。 月进行 0PT2 初始化时,在维修保养模式 U698 状态下,按顺序按下 [PORT2]、 [开始]键,执行维修保养模式 U600。在 U698 状态下设定 [ALL]时,会使 0PT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。有关详细信息,请参见维修手册。

KO

- FAX 회로기판의 초기화
- 1.OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 (모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨), 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다
- 2.OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화) 메인터넌스모드 U698 에서 [PORT2], [시작]키 순으로 누릅니다. 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .U698 에서 [ALL]을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

(JP)

FAX 基板の初期化

- 1. OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合(すべての FAX 基板を初期化)
- PF11 と 0P12 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合(すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
 OPT2 に増設した場合(0PT2 の FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U608 で [PORT2]、[スタート]キーの順に押す。メンテ ナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。U698 で [ALL] を設定 すると 0PT1 と 0PT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマ ニュアルを参照のこと。



	100V	120V	230V	240V	110V	220V	220-240V
	Japan	North America/ Latin America	Europe	Australia/ New Zea- land	Taiwan	China	Asia/ Korea
Α	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
В	1	1	-	1	-	1	-
С	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
D	-	1	1	1	1	1	1
Е	-	-	-	1	-	-	-
F	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
G	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
Н	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
I	-	-	-	-	1	-	-
J	-	-	-	-	-	1	-







- (ENG) (Only when NK-7110/NK-7100 is installed)
- (FR) (Uniquement lors de l'installation de NK-7110/NK-7100)
- (ES) (Solo si está instalada la unidad NK-7110/NK-7100)
- (DE) (Nur wenn NK-7110/NK-7100 installiert ist)
- (IT) (Solo quando è installato NK-7110/NK-7100)
- **CN**(当设置 NK-7110/NK-7100 时)
- (NK-7110/NK-7100 이 설치된 경우만)



(7) (When installing the Multiport)

(FR) (En cas d'installation de la deuxième ligne de fax)

Ε

G

I

- (ES) (Al instalar la segunda línea de fax)
- (DE) (Wenn Sie eine zweite Fax-Karte installieren)
- (IT) (Quando si installa la seconda linea Fax)

D

- (CN)(安装了多功能端口)
- (Ю) (멀티포트를 설치하는 경우)
- (**JP**)(マルチポートを設置する場合)



В





Initialize the FAX circuit board.

- 1.If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to ini-tialize the FAX PWBs.
- 2.If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX ircuit board in OPT2)

Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the [Start] key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized. For details, see the service manual.

(FR)

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

- 1.Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
- 2.Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)

Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche [Départ] dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

ES

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1.Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se ini-cializan todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.

2.Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)

Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de [Inicio] en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

(DE)

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

- Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
- 2.Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leit-erplatte in OPT2 zu in7itialisieren)

OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die [Start]-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung

П

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

- 1.Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
- 2.Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inzializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)

Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto [Avvio] in guesto ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 e de eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

(CN)

传真电路板的初始化

- 1.当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时(全部的传真电路板初始化),执 行维修保养模式 U600, 初始化传真电路板。
- 2.在 OPT2 上增设时

(0PT2 的传真电路板初始化) 因此有关系的研究的机构的,因此有关的机构的。 月进行 0PT2 初始化时,在维修保养模式 U698 状态下,按顺序按下 [PORT2]、 [开始]键,执行维修保养模式 U600。在 U698 状态下设定 [ALL]时,会使 0PT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。有关详细信息,请参见维修手册。

KO

- FAX 회로기판의 초기화
- 1.OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 (모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨), 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다
- 2.OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화) 메인터넌스모드 U698 에서 [PORT2], [시작]키 순으로 누릅니다. 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .U698 에서 [ALL]을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

(JP)

FAX 基板の初期化

- 1. OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合(すべての FAX 基板を初期化)
- PF11 と 0P12 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合(すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
 OPT2 に増設した場合(0PT2 の FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U608 で [PORT2]、[スタート]キーの順に押す。メンテ ナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。U698 で [ALL] を設定 すると 0PT1 と 0PT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマ ニュアルを参照のこと。

KYOCERA Document Solutions America, Inc.

Headquarters

225 Sand Road, Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008, USA Phone: +1-973-808-8444 Fax: +1-973-882-6000

Latin America

8240 NW 52nd Terrace Dawson Building, Suite 100 Miami, Florida 33166, USA Phone: +1-305-421-6640 Fax: +1-305-421-6666

KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd.

6120 Kestrel Rd., Mississauga, ON L5T 1S8, Canada Phone: +1-905-670-4425 Fax: +1-905-670-8116

KYOCERA Document Solutions

Mexico, S.A. de C.V.

Calle Arquimedes No. 130, 4 Piso, Colonia Polanco Chapultepec, Delegacion Miguel Hidalgo, Distrito Federal, C.P. 11560, México Phone: +52-555-383-2741 Fax: +52-555-383-7804

KYOCERA Document Solutions Brazil, Ltda.

Alameda África, 545, Pólo Empresarial Consbrás, Tamboré, Santana de Parnaíba, State of São Paulo, CEP 06543-306, Brazil Phone: +55-11-2424-5353 Fax: +55-11-2424-5304

KYOCERA Document Solutions Chile SpA

Jose Ananias 505, Macul. Santiago, Chile Phone: +562-2350-7000 Fax: +562-2350-7150

KYOCERA Document Solutions

Australia Pty. Ltd.

Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road North Ryde N.S.W, 2113, Australia Phone: +61-2-9888-9999 Fax: +61-2-9888-9588

KYOCERA Document Solutions New Zealand Ltd.

Ground Floor, 19 Byron Avenue, Takapuna, Auckland, New Zealand Phone: +64-9-415-4517 Fax: +64-9-415-4597

KYOCERA Document Solutions Asia Limited

Unit 3 & 5, 16/F.,Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle Peak Road Tsuen Wan, New Territories, Hong Kong Phone: +852-2496-5678 Fax: +852-2610-2063

KYOCERA Document Solutions

(China) Corporation

8F, No. 288 Nanjing Road West, Huangpu District, Shanghai,200003, China Phone: +86-21-5301-1777 Fax: +86-21-5302-8300

KYOCERA Document Solutions

(Thailand) Corp., Ltd.

335 Ratchadapisek Road, Wongsawang, Bangsue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand Phone: +66-2-586-0333 Fax: +66-2-586-0278

KYOCERA Document Solutions

Singapore Pte. Ltd.

12 Tai Seng Street #04-01A, Luxasia Building, Singapore 534118 Phone: +65-6741-8733 Fax: +65-6748-3788

KYOCERA Document Solutions Hong Kong Limited

Unit 1,2,4,6,8 & 10, 16/F.,Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle Peak Road Tsuen Wan, New Territories, Hong Kong Phone: +852-3582-4000 Fax: +852-3185-1399

KYOCERA Document Solutions

Taiwan Corporation

6F., No.37, Sec. 3, Minquan E. Rd., Zhongshan Dist., Taipei 104, Taiwan R.O.C. Phone: +886-2-2507-6709 Fax: +886-2-2507-8432

KYOCERA Document Solutions Korea Co., Ltd.

#10F Daewoo Foundation Bldg 18, Toegye-ro, Jung-gu, Seoul, Korea Phone: +822-6933-4050 Fax: +822-747-0084

KYOCERA Document Solutions India Private Limited

Second Floor, Centrum Plaza, Golf Course Road, Sector-53, Gurgaon, Haryana 122002, India Phone: +91-0124-4671000 Fax: +91-0124-4671001

KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V.

Bloemlaan 4, 2132 NP Hoofddorp, The Netherlands Phone: +31-20-654-0000 Fax: +31-20-653-1256

KYOCERA Document Solutions Nederland B.V.

Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk, The Netherlands Phone: +31-20-5877200 Fax: +31-20-5877260

KYOCERA Document Solutions (U.K.) Limited

Eldon Court, 75-77 London Road, Reading, Berkshire RG1 5BS, United Kingdom Phone: +44-118-931-1500 Fax: +44-118-931-1108

KYOCERA Document Solutions Italia S.p.A.

Via Monfalcone 15, 20132, Milano, Italy, Phone: +39-02-921791 Fax: +39-02-92179-600

KYOCERA Document Solutions Belgium N.V.

Sint-Martinusweg 199-201 1930 Zaventem, Belgium Phone: +32-2-7209270 Fax: +32-2-7208748

KYOCERA Document Solutions France S.A.S.

Espace Technologique de St Aubin Route de l'Orme 91195 Gif-sur-Yvette CEDEX, France Phone: +33-1-69852600 Fax: +33-1-69853409

KYOCERA Document Solutions Espana, S.A.

Edificio Kyocera, Avda. de Manacor No.2, 28290 Las Matas (Madrid), Spain Phone: +34-91-6318392 Fax: +34-91-6318219

KYOCERA Document Solutions Finland Oy

Atomitie 5C, 00370 Helsinki, Finland Phone: +358-9-47805200 Fax: +358-9-47805390

KYOCERA Document Solutions

Europe B.V., Amsterdam (NL) Zürich Branch

Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich, Switzerland Phone: +41-44-9084949 Fax: +41-44-9084950

KYOCERA Bilgitas Document Solutions Turkey A.S.

Gülbahar Mahallesi Otello Kamil Sk. No:6 Mecidiyeköy 34394 Şişli İstanbul, Turkey Phone: +90-212-356-7000 Fax: +90-212-356-6725

© 2017 KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc.

KYOCERA Document Solutions Deutschland GmbH

Otto-Hahn-Strasse 12, 40670 Meerbusch, Germany Phone: +49-2159-9180 Fax: +49-2159-918100

KYOCERA Document Solutions Austria GmbH

Altmannsdorferstraße 91, Stiege 1, 2. OG, Top 1, 1120, Wien, Austria Phone: +43-1-863380 Fax: +43-1-86338-400

KYOCERA Document Solutions Nordic AB

Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista, Sweden Phone: +46-8-546-550-00 Fax: +46-8-546-550-10

KYOCERA Document Solutions Norge Nuf

Olaf Helsetsv. 6, 0619 Oslo, Norway Phone: +47-22-62-73-00 Fax: +47-22-62-72-00

KYOCERA Document Solutions Danmark A/S

Ejby Industrivej 60, DK-2600 Glostrup, Denmark Phone: +45-70223880 Fax: +45-45765850

KYOCERA Document Solutions Portugal Lda.

Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisboa, Portugal Phone: +351-21-843-6780 Fax: +351-21-849-3312

KYOCERA Document Solutions South Africa (Pty) Ltd.

KYOCERA House, Hertford Office Park, 90 Bekker Road (Cnr. Allandale), Midrand, South Africa Phone: +27-11-540-2600 Fax: +27-11-466-3050

KYOCERA Document Solutions Russia LLC.

Building 2, 51/4, Schepkina St., 129110, Moscow, Russia Phone: +7(495)741-0004 Fax: +7(495)741-0018

KYOCERA Document Solutions Middle East

Dubai Internet City, Bldg. 17, Office 157 P.O. Box 500817, Dubai, United Arab Emirates Phone: +971-04-433-0412

KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc.

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku Osaka 540-8585, Japan Phone: +81-6-6764-3555 http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com

KYOCERA is a trademark of KYOCERA Corporation